

# An Introduction to Persian

# An Introduction to Persian

Revised Fourth Edition

Wheeler M. Thackston



lbex Publishers, Bethesda, Maryland An Introduction to Persian Revised Fourth Edition by Wheeler M. Thackston

Copyright © 2009 Ibex Publishers, Inc. '

ISBN-10: 1-58814-055-5 ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-055-5

Calligraphy on cover (16th-17th Centuries) courtesy of the Sackler Gallery of Art.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or retransmitted in any manner whatsoever except in the form of a review, without permission from the publisher.

Manufactured in the United States of America

The paper used in this book meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Information Services—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48–1984

A CD set of the Persian sections of this book is available. (ISBN-10: 1-58814-057-1 / ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-057-9 ),

A Key to Exercises is available. (ISBN-10: 1-58814-054-7 / ISBN-13: 978-1-58814-054-8)

Ibex Publishers, Inc.
Post Office Box 30087
Bethesda, Maryland 20824
Telephone: 301–718–8188
Facsimile: 301–907–8707
www.ibexpublishers.com

#### LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOGING-IN-PUBLICATION INFORMATION

Thackston, W. M. (Wheeler McIntosh), 1944-An introduction to Persian / Wheeler M. Thackston. — Rev. 4th ed. p. cm. ISBN 978-1-58814-055-5 (alk. paper) Persian language—Grammar. I. Tirle.

PK6235.T47 2007 491'.55—dc22

# فهرست مندرجات Contents

Pṛefaceix
Introduction: Phonology and Scriptxi
The Phonology of Persianxiii
Syllabificationxvi
Stress xvii
The Persian Alphabetxviii
Pronunciation Exercisexxxiv
Reading Exericisexxxv
Part One: The Grammar of Modern Persian1
Lesson One
§ 1 Word Order. § 2 Stress. §3 Gender. § 4 State of the noun. § 5 Orthography of the indefinite enclitic. § 6 Adjectival order. § 7 The plural. § 8 The non-specific plural.
Lesson Two
§ 9 Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns. § 10 Verbal agreement
with the plural. § 11 Co-ordination. § 12 Adverbs. § 13 Interrogative
sentences. Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases.
Lesson Three
§ 14 The ezâfe. § 15 The noun in the predicate position.
Lesson Four
§ 16 Pronouns. § 17 Present copulas. § 18 The negative copula.
§ 19 کیست kist and چیست chist. Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy phrases.

Lesson Five
§ 20 The vocative. § 21 The possessive ezâfe. § 22 The long copula.
Review I
Lesson Six
§ 23 The infinitive. § 24 The past stem and the past absolute tense. § 25 The specific direct-object marker $\sqrt{-r\hat{a}}$ . Supplementary Vocabulary: Countries, Peoples, and Languages.
Lesson Seven41
§ 26 Compound verbs. § 27 the continuous prefix. § 28 The past participle. § 29 The past narrative tense.
Lesson Eight
§ 30 Uses of چه che and کدام kodâm. § 31 Comparison of adjectives.
Lesson Nine55
§ 32 Other plurals. § 33 Pronominal possessives.
Lesson Ten60
§ 34 The present stem. § 35 The present indicative.
Review II66
Lesson Eleven68
§ 36 Pronominal enclitics. § 37 Reflexive pronouns.
Lesson Twelve
§ 38 Cardinal numbers. § 39 Ordinal numbers. Supplementary vocabulary: Weights and Measures.
Lesson Thirteen82
§ 40 Relative clauses. § 41 The past perfect tense. § 42 The past perfect narrative tense.
Lesson Fourteen90
§ 43 The future tense. § 44 Other numerical expressions. Supplementary Vocabulary: Family Relationships.
Lesson Fifteen 97
§ 45 The imperative. § 46 Resumptive-sentence construction. Supplementary Vocabulary: Foodstuffs.
Review III105
Lesson Sixteen

§ 47 On the nature of compounds. § 48 The present subjunctive. § 49 Uses of the present subjunctive I. Supplementary Vocabulary: Articles of Clothing.
Lesson Seventeen 115
§ 50 Impersonal constructions. § 51 Uses of the present subjuctive II.
Lesson Eighteen
<ul><li>§ 52 Totally impersonal constructions.</li><li>§ 53 The participial absolute.</li><li>§ 54 Reported speech and verbs of sense perception.</li></ul>
Lesson Nineteen 127
§ 55 The past subjunctive. § 56 Back-formation of infinitives and denominative verbs. § 57 Temportal use of $\sqrt[3]{ke}$ . § 58 Impersonals with $\sqrt[3]{\hat{a}dam}$ .
Lesson Twenty
§ 59 Uses of the subjunctive III: Adjectival clauses. § 60 Uses of the infinitive. Supplementary Vocabulary: Common Materials.
Review IV143
Additional Vocabulary: Academic Fields and Related Vocabulary143
Lesson Twenty-One
§ 61 Conditionals. § 62 Other irrealis constructions. § 63 Expressions of temporal duration. Additional Vocabulary: Mishaps.
Lesson Twenty-Two
§ 64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. § 65 Participial forms. Additional Vocabulary: Travel.
Lesson Twenty-Three
§ 66 Abstraction of substantives. § 67 Double-substantive compounds. § 68 Adjectives/adverbs in -âne. § 69 مگر Magar. Supplementary Vocabulary: Parts of the body.
Lesson Twenty-Four
§ 70 "Asas possible." § 71 "The morethe more." § 72 Factitive verbs. § 73 Verbal nouns. § 74 Infinitival adjectives. Supplementary Vocabulary: Animals.
Lesson Twenty-Five
§ 75 The passive. § 76 Uses of the past participle. § 77 Diminutives.
Review V 185

Part Two: Classical and Archaic Usages
§ 78 The <i>majhul</i> vowels. § 79 Euphonic -d § 80 The optative and negative imperative. § 81 The vocative enclitic. § 82 Dative usages. § 83 Circumpositions. § 84 The perfective aspect; the <i>be</i> - prefix. § 85 (ن) چو(ن). § 86 The continuous marker مصنى hami. § 87 The past habitual and conditional. § 88 The archaic present stem of budan. § 89 The archaic negative copula. § 90 The archaic past narrative. § 91 The gnomic past.
Part Three: Colloquial Transformations
§ 92 Phonological transformations. § 93 The copulas. § 94 Verbal inflections. § 95 Reduced, altered, and contracted verbal stems. § 96 The present and past progressive. § 97 Direct-object marker. § 98 The emphasizing particle <i>ke</i> . § 99 Pronominal enclitics. § 100 Prepositions.
Appendix A: The Uses of tâ
Appendix B: Telling Time, Days of the Week, Months of the Year, Reading
Dates, Arithmetical Operations
Examples of Contemporary Persian Prose
(۱) کاشی تر ربو (۲) خسرو شافانی، عینک طبّی (۳) ایرج پزشگزاد، دائی جان ناپلؤن (۴) رضا بابامقدم، مرزبان (۵) فریدون تنکسابنی، جدول کلات متقاطع (۶) ببرام صادقی، اذان
غروب (۷) محد بهمن میکی ، بخارای من ایل من (۸) صادق مدایت، طلب آمرزش Examples of Classical Persian Prose
(۱) امیر عنصر المعالی، قابوسنامه (۲) نظام اللک، سیاستنامه (۳) ابوالمعالی نصر الله، کلیله و
دمن ببرامثابی (۴) تعدی، گلتان (۵) نظامی عروضی، چهار مقاله
Vocabularies
English-Persian248
Persian-English254
Index

خيم. پيسکفيار

#### **Preface**

This book is intended to serve as an introduction on the elementary level to the modern Persian language. A member of the Indo-Iranian branch of the Indo-European family, this language is called New Persian to distinguish it from Old Persian, the language of the Achaemenid Empire (6th—4th centuries B.C.), and from Middle Persian, the language of the Sassanians (3rd—7th centuries A.D.). In its present form Persian emerged during the tenth century of our era and, with the exception of certain items of vocabulary and a very few features of grammar and syntax, has changed remarkably little since then. In its classical form, Persian became the language par excellence of poetry and mystical expression and, especially after the Mongol invasion of the thirteenth century, was the medium of culture and literature throughout the non-Arab Islamic world. From Constantinople to Bengal and from Central Asia to India, Persian reigned for centuries as the language of high culture and belles-lettres.

At present Persian is the official language of Iran. Although there are areas in Iran where Persian is not the mother tongue (Azerbaijan, Kurdistan, Luristan, e.g.), it is spoken by almost everyone. In Afghanistan, where it is often called Dari, it enjoys official status along with Pashto; it is the native language of around half the population and is spoken by all educated persons. Called Tajiki, it is the language of Tajikistan, where until recently it was written in the Cyrillic alphabet.

Persian is remarkably simple in terms of formal grammar: no gender, no noun inflection, no adjectival agreement, and no irregularities in verbal conjugation. However—and rather like English in this respect—for what it lacks in inflection it more than makes up in syntactic and idiomatic complexity; and it is to the syntax and idiom of Persian that the student's attention should be turned from the very beginning. The importance of understanding the proper relationships among the various members of a Persian sentence cannot be overstated (especially in view of the fact that the most important indicator of syntactic relationships is not usually indicated in the writing system), for even the simplest ex-

# The Phonology of Persian

**Vowels and glides**. International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA) equivalents are given in square brackets for those familiar with them.

i	u
e	0
a	â
	ay, aw

- is a high front open vowel, [i], like the 'ea' in 'please' but without the 'y'-glide characteristic of English. Contrast عنى si with 'sea.'
- e is a middle front open vowel [ɛ], like the 'e' in 'bet.' This vowel is in fairly free variation with [ɪ], like the 'i' in 'bit,' i.e. while 'bet' and 'bit' are two different words in English, they would be two variant pronunciations of the same word in Persian. Word-finally this vowel is always realized as [ɛ]. Compare شن shen and 'shin.'
- a is a low front open vowel, IPA [æ], like the 'a' in 'cat' but slightly lower. Word-finally this phoneme is always realized as [ɛ] in modern Iranian pronunciation, which will be reflected in the transcription employed here. Compare غن bad and 'bad,' ج jam and 'jam.'
- u is a high back rounded vowel [u], like the 'oo' of 'moon' but without the off-glide characteristic of English. Compare نسون nun with 'noon' and سود sud with 'sued.'
- o is a middle to high middle back rounded vowel [0] with the quality of the 'o' in 'coat' but considerably shorter and without the 'w' off-glide that accompanies most American pronunciations of 'o.' This vowel is also realized in free variation as [0], like the 'oo' of 'book,' i.e. a word like in bot may be pronounced either [bot], like the English 'boat' (but a much shorter vowel), or [but], rhyming with 'put.' Contrast kot with 'coat' and por with 'poor.'
- is a low back open vowel [p] between the 'a' of 'father' [q] and 'bald' [2] but without the lip-rounding of the English [2]. Compare  $b\hat{a}l$  and 'ball,'  $b\hat{a}m$  and 'balm.'
- ay is a glide [ej] exactly like the 'a' in 'wade.' Compare & may and

'may,' يي pay and 'pay,' سيف sayf and 'safe.'

aw is a 'w'-glide [ow] exactly like the 'o' in 'bone.' Compare و raw and 'row (a boat),' حوض hawz and 'hose,' جو jaw and 'Joe.'

Speakers of English must exercise particular care to distinguish a from  $\hat{a}$ , particularly before r. Contrast the following:

رست rast 'he escaped' راست râst 'straight' راست dar 'in' دار dâr 'gibbet' بار bar 'over' بار bâr 'tar 'wet' تار dâsht 'wasteland' دشت rast 'straight' رست

Similarly, e-ay and o-aw must be distinguished. Contrast the following:

دور daw 'around' دور daw 'around' دور do 'two' عن daw 'run' بن joz 'except' جوز jawz 'walnut' که ke 'that' که ke' 'that' که serr 'mystery' سیر sayr 'travel' سیل sel 'tuberculosis' سیل sayl 'torrent'

When followed in the same syllable by a consonant cluster, the "short" vowel a, e, and o are considerably lengthened, but the quality is unaffected. Contrast the vowel lengths in the following:

shah [ʃæh] 'king' شهر shahr [ʃæ:hr] 'city' ور var [vær] 'and if' ورز var [væ:rz] 'exercise' ورز meh [meh] 'mist' هر por [por] 'full' برس pors [po:rs] 'ask' أ

Vowels in Persian are never reduced. All vowels, even in unstressed syllables, are given their full quality—unlike English, where many unstressed vowels tend to be "slurred over" with an "uh" sound. The sound "uh" [ə] does not exist in educated Iranian speech.

#### Consonants

Stops							
voiceless	p		t		$\boldsymbol{k}$		,
voiced	b		d		g	q	
Fricatives							
voiceless		f	S	sh		kh	h
voiced		v	z	zh			
			xiv				

Affricates

voicelesschvoicedjNasalsmnLaterallFlaprrSemivowel

The stops p, b, t, and d are realized similarly to their English counterparts; p and t, however, are heavily aspirated in all environments. Contrast  $asp \hat{a} n$ 

'horses' with 'Aspen' and باستان bâstân 'ancient' with 'Boston.'

k, and g are pronounced like English k [k] and "hard g" as in 'go' [g]. When syllable-final, k and g are palatalized as [ $k^j$ ] and [ $g^j$ ], i.e. a 'y' sound is heard after the k and g, much like the 'c' in 'cute.' Practice the following words with 'your instructor: مسئل  $p\hat{a}k$  'pure,' دکتر doktor 'doctor,' sag 'dog,' مسئل sag 'rock'.

- q is normally a back velar or front uvular stop [G] and is generally accompanied by a slight trace of voicing. It is pronounced similarly to g but farther back in the throat. When q occurs between two vowels, it tends toward a uvular fricative [ $\gamma$ ] with the two allophones in fairly free variation, i.e.  $\hat{a}q\hat{a}$  'sir' is pronounced either [DGD] or [D $\gamma$ D].
- is the glottal stop [?]. This sound occurs in English between the syllables of 'uh-oh' and in dialect pronunciations of 'bottle' and 'little' as "bo'l" and "li'l." Syllable-final as well as doubled glottal stop is alien to English and must be practiced carefully. Contrast the following:

منيه mani 'egotism' منيع mani' 'impregnable' منه man 'I' منع man' 'prevention' منه jam 'Jamshid' مقد jam' 'collection' مقعر so'âl 'question' مقعر moqa''ar 'concave' مقاط sho'â' 'ray' مشعاع

- v has two conditioned allophones, [v] and [w]. In prevocalic and postconsonantal positions it is realized as [v]. Following a in the same syllable, v becomes the semi-vowel [w] in the glide aw; it is [v] after all other vowels and consonants, as داوطلب 'dâvtalab 'volunteer,' and المواد jozv 'part.'
- f is like the f in 'fish' [f] as in فيل fil 'elephant' and صاف sâf 'flat.'
- s is like the s in 'say' [s] as in سایه  $s\hat{a}ye$  'shadow' and اساس  $as\hat{a}s$  'foundation.'  $sh_i$  is like the sh in 'shine' [ʃ] as in شاد  $sh\hat{a}d$  'happy' and پیش pish 'forward.'

- zh is like the French j and the g in 'beige' [3] as in الله zhâle 'dew' and مسترده mozhde 'good news.'
- kh is like the ch in German Bach or Scottish 'loch.' It is a scraping sound produced against the velar ridge [x] as in خاك khâk 'earth' and خلا khâk 'palace.'
- h is like the English h [h]. Intervocalic h is, as in English, a breathy vibration of the vocal cords. The Persian h occurs in environments unfamiliar to English, such as syllable- and word-final. It also occurs in clusters alien to English. Practice pronouncing the following words:

fahmid فهمید	sohbat صحبت	نه noh	mehr محمر
shâh شاہ	sehhat صحت	نهت boht	sharh شرح
kuh کو ہ	<i>beh</i> به	فهم $fahm$	shahr شهر
bahs بحث	shabih شبيه	dahr دهر	sath سطح

ch is like the ch in 'church' [tf] as in  $\Rightarrow$  che 'what?' and  $\Rightarrow$  gach 'chalk.'

- j is like the j in 'judge' [dʒ] as in  $j\hat{a}$  'place' and tâj 'crown.'
- m is like the m in 'moon' [m] as in ماند  $m\hat{a}nd$  's/he stayed' and سيم sim 'silver.'
- n is like the n in 'noon' [n] as in نان nân 'bread' and خون khun 'blood'. Before b, n is always pronounced 'm,' as in تنبل, spelled tanbal, pronounced tambal [tæmbæl] 'lazy.'
- l is liquid in all environments [1], like the 'l' in "leek," never the dull 'l' [1] of English "all," which does not exist in Persian. Contrast آل âl with 'all," عسلى 'ali with 'alley, عسلى fil with 'feel.'
- r is a flap [r], never the constriction of American English. Doubled rr is trilled like the 'rr' in Spanish [rr]. Contrast در و dare [dærɛ] 'valley' and در و dar [dærræh] 'on the road,' پارو pâru [pɒru] 'oar' and بروو porru [porru] 'cheeky.'
- y is like the y in 'yes' [j] as in ياد yâd 'memory' and موى muy 'hair.'

All doubled consonants in Persian are pronounced doubled. Doubled consonants in English occur only across word boundaries, as in 'pen knife' and 'coat tail.' Contrast the following:

### **Syllabification**

For the purposes of syllabification, Persian sounds represented by two English letters (ch, kh, zh, sh) are counted as one consonant.

All syllables in Persian contain one and only one vowel or glide. There are thus as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or glides. The first syllable in a word may begin with a vowel (1 - i = 1) i = 1 i = 1) i = 1i = 1

For purposes of syllabification, the hyphens that indicate enclitics are ignored (ست  $pedar-am-ast = pe^*da^*ra^*mast$ , کتابی  $ket\hat{a}b-i-r\hat{a}-ke = ke^*t\hat{a}^*bi^*r\hat{a}^*$  ke).

These rules of syllabification apply to modern Persian as it is spoken in Iran. They do not apply to the scansion of Persian poetry or to Persian as it is spoken outside of Iran.

#### Stress

The stress patterns of nouns, adjectives, and prepositions.

All Persian nouns and adjectives are stressed on the last syllable, e.g.: خانسه khâné, بدر pedár, برادر barâdár, خوشمزه dâneshjú, خوشمزه khoshmazé.

When **enclitics** are added, stress remains on the final syllable of the base word, e.g.: خانهایست که *khâné-i-st-ke*, کشورِ *pedár-am*, برادررا *barâdár-râ*, پدرم *dâneshjú-i-râ-ke*.

خانه :When **suffixes** are added, stress is moved to the final syllable of the suffix خانه khâné > خانه khânehấ, پدر pedar پدر pedarâné, برادر barâdár > برادران barâdár خانه dâneshjú > بیدرانه dâneshjú خانگی bachché ؛ bachché دانشجو bachché دانشجو bachché ؛ bachché ؛ bachché

Verbs have their own stress patterns, and they will be taken up along with the various, tenses and moods. The hierarchy of stress in verbs is given here for reference:

- (1) the negative prefix ná- is stressed: نوفتند náraftand 'they did not go.'
- (2) the final syllable of the non-verbal element of compound verbs is stressed: دا negấh-kardam 'I looked,' برداشتم 'bár-dâshtam 'I picked up.'
- (3) the habitual/continuous prefix mi- is stressed: ميرفتيم miraftim 'we used to go, we were going.'
- (4) the subjunctive prefix bé- is stressed: بشنود béshnavad 'let him hear.'
- (5) the final syllable of the stem is stressed: گرفت geréft 'he grabbed.'

#### The Persian Alphabet

Persian is written in a slightly modified form of the Arabic alphabet. This alphabet, written from right to left, has a total of thirty-two characters, all but one of which represent consonants. The Arabic alphabet does not normally represent the "short" vowels a, e, and o; only the "long" vowels  $\hat{a}$ , i, and u and the glides ay and aw have graphic representations.

The alphabet is a "script" in that most letters must be connected one to another. There are no separate letter forms corresponding to Latin-alphabet printing. All letters have at least two forms and at most four.

Those letters that connect on both sides have four forms: (1) the initial form, used when the letter is the first letter of a word and followed by another letter, or when the letter is preceded by a non-connecting letter and followed by another letter; (2) the medial form, used when the letter is both preceded and followed by connecting letters; (3) the final form, used when it is the last letter in a word and is preceded by a connecting letter; and (4) the alone form, used only when it is the last letter in the word and preceded by a non-connecting letter.

The seven letters that do not connect forward—i.e. to the next letter to the left—have only two forms, (1) the initial-alone form and (2) the medial-final form. All non-connecting letters are followed by initial (or alone) forms.

There are three varieties of the Arabic script in common use in Iran today. The first, نستخ naskh, is the base for type fonts and the typewriter; it should not be taken as the model for handwriting. The second style, in nasta'liq, is the basic cursive script and the model for good handwriting. The third variety, actually a variant of nasta'liq, is called شکسته shekaste. In this style many orthographic breaks that are mandatory in naskh and nasta'liq are bridged, certain letters have wildly divergent forms, and "shorthand" ligatures abound. Shekaste script is beyond the scope of this introductory book.

The Alphabet

NAME	LETTER	SOUND	GROUP
alef	1		1
be	ب	b	2
pe	Ų	p	2
te	ت	t	2
se	ث	S	2
jim che	ج	j	3
che	چ	, ch	3

7	h	3
<del>خ</del>	kh	3
د	d	4
ذ	z	4
ر	r	5
ز	z	5
ژ	zh	5
س	s	6
ش	sh	6
ص	s	7
ض	z	7
ط	t	8
ظ	z	8
ع '	,	9
غ	q	9
ف	f	10
ق .	q	10
ک	k	11
گ	g	11
J	1	12
م	m	13
ڹ	n	2
, و	v	14
٥	h	15
ی	У	2
	ر ن م ل گاک ق و بغ ع ظ ط ص ن م ل گاک ق	الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الله

# Additional signs

	lâm-alef	, A	lâ
41èr	alef-tanvin	اً	-an
	alef-madde	Ī	â
	hamze	£	,
).	te-tammat	ö	-atan
r F4	tashdid	w	(doubling)

There are three s's, two t's, four z's, and two h's in the alphabet. There is no differentiation whatsoever in pronunciation, and learning which letter is used in any given word is simply a matter of spelling—not unlike English.

Group by group, the letters of the alphabet will be given in their printed forms. In Arabic there are numerous ligatures (combinations of various letters) that occur in print, but these are not commonly used in printed Persian. They are used, however, in Persian handwriting, and the versions to be imitated in handwriting will also be given. In the observations, what any one letter in a group does, all the letters that share the same shape do likewise.

#### **Group 1**

This group contains only *alef*, a non-connecting letter that stands initially for all initial vowels. Following consonants, *alef* indicates the vowel  $\hat{a}$ . Other uses of *alef* will be treated under the vowels and other signs. In handwriting, the initial/alone *alef* is written with a down-stroke, while the medial/final *alef* is written with an up-stroke. The bottoms of both forms are on the writing line.



#### Group 2

This group consists of be, pe, te, se, nun, and ye. It is a connecting shape. The basic shapes are:

	be	pe	te	se	nun	ye
initial	ب	پ	ت	ثـ	نہ	یـ
medial	<del>-</del> -	<del>-</del>	ت	ث	<u>ن</u> ـ	<u></u>
final	ب	پ	ـت	ـث	ئ	یی
alone	ب	Ų	ت	ث	ن	ی
nastaʻliq	·	پ	ت	ث	ن ان	ى

Handwritten and nasta'liq examples of these letters combined with b follow:



The letter  $\overset{*}{\smile}$  stands for 'th' as in 'thing' in Arabic and is transliterated th or  $\underline{s}$ ; it is the least common of the three letters for  $\underline{s}$  in Persian.

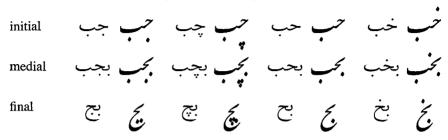
### **Group 3**

This connecting shape consists of *jim*, *che*, *he-jimi*, and *khe*. This *he* is called *he-jimi* or *he-hotti* to distinguish it from the other *he* (*he-havvaz*, Group 15). In Arabic these two *h*'s are quite distinct, but in Persian they are identical. In transliteration *he-jimi* is represented by *h*.

	jim	che	he	khe
initial	ج	چ	<i>&gt;</i>	خ
medial	ج	چ	حـ	خـ
final	ج	چ	ح	<u>خ</u> .
alone	<u>ح</u> ج	چ چ	ح ح	خ خ

In handwriting the connection into any member of this group is from above. A "tooth" preceding any member of this group is raised, e.g. بخت bakht is written as مختب, and بخت, and بخت, and بخت. Any two successive letters from this group are "stacked" in handwriting; thus, نخییر nakhchir is handwritten as

and عجت hojjat is . The "tails" of the final and alone forms descend below the writing line. Examples of this group combined with b are as follows:



### **Group 4**

This non-connecting shape consists of dâl and zâl.

	dâl	zâl	
initial/alone	<b>ر</b> د	<b>ز</b> ذ	
medial/final	ょ	ند	

Zâl occurs, with only a few exceptions, in words of Arabic origin and is usually transliterated dh or  $\underline{z}$ . It is one of the least common of the four letters for z, but it occurs in two very common Persian words. The handwritten form of the medial/final  $d\hat{a}l/z\hat{a}l$  differs slightly from the printed version, e.g. bad is handwritten as a and a and a. The upstroke into the  $d\hat{a}l$  is mandatory. Examples combined with a are as follows:

medial/final	<b>ہ</b> بد	<b>ب</b> د بذ	

#### **Group 5**

This non-connecting shape includes re, ze, and zhe.

	re	ze	zhe .
initial/alone	ر ر	jj	<b>ڙ</b> ژ
medial/final	-ر	, خ	🗘 ـژ
combined with $b$	الم بر	بر بز	الآ بژ

When this shape is preceded by a medial "tooth," the "tooth" is rounded into a "hump" that descends directly into the re, as in babr, which is handwritten as babr, and babr, and babr. The "tail" in which all forms of this shape

end descends slightly below the writing line. In handwriting the re shape goes directly down from the writing line, while  $d\hat{a}l$  goes up and then down, but not as far down as the re. Compare the following: p bar and p bad, p jer and p jed.

#### Group 6

This connecting shape includes sin and shin.

	sin	shin
initial	. سـ	, ش <u>ـ</u>
medial		
final	ــــ	ـشـ
alone	<b>ں</b> س	<b>ش</b> ش
Combined with b:	رب سب	ثب شب
	بسب بسب	ش بشب
	<i>ب</i> س بس	<b>ش</b> بش

Before any jim shape and mim (Group 13), the teeth of the sin/shin are raised in handwriting. Thus, we sahar is written as and and shomord is written as group, as we basi is written as and and and alone forms descend below the writing line, e.g. pas.

### Group 7

A connecting shape, this group includes  $s\hat{a}d$  and  $z\hat{a}d$ , both of which occur exclusively in words of Arabic origin. They are transliterated as s and d (or  $\dot{z}$ ).

	sâd	zâd
inițial		ضہ
		vviii

medial		_ف_
final	ے	. ض
alone	ص ص	ص ض

Final ye and re/ze/zhe come directly off the top of the final "tooth" of this group, as صى s-y is handwritten as بصر basar is handwritten as مصر Sâd and zâd are raised before a jim-shape and mim, as صحبت sohbat is handwritten as مصر , and ضعبت is handwritten as صحبت. The "bowls" of the final and alone forms descend below the writing line, e.g. ممل ما ما hâss and ما ما habs. Examples combined with b are:

initial	صب	صب	ضب	ضب
medial	بصب	بصب	بضب	بضب
final	بص	بص	بض	بض

#### **Group 8**

This is a connecting shape and includes  $t\hat{a}$  (tayn) and  $z\hat{a}$ , again letters that occur mainly in Arabic words. They are transliterated t and z respectively.

	tâ	zâ
initial	ط	ظ
medial	ط	ظ
final	ط	ظ
alone	<b>d</b> d	فر ظ

This shape requires two strokes of the pen. It should never be made in one stroke. The vertical stroke is placed at the same time as the dots, i.e. after completion of the word or graphic unit. All forms sit directly on the writing line unless they are raised before a *jim* or a *mim* (as in *sath* and *latme*. Examples of the forms combined with b are:

final

#### **Group 9**

A connecting shape, ayn (transliterated as ') occurs only in Arabic words. Qayn (transliterated gh) occurs mainly in Arabic but also in some Persian and Turkish words.

	ayn	qayn
initial	عـ	غ
medial	<u>.</u> *	غ
final	ے	، غ
alone	ع ع	غ غ

In handwriting, ayn and ghayn are raised before any jim-shape and mim, e.g. ajam is written as s, and sigham is written as s. The "tails" of the final and alone forms descend below the writing line, e.g. tiq. Examples

combined with b are:

initial	عب عب	غب غب
medial	<i>لعب</i> بعب	<b>نعب</b> بغب
final	. نع بع	بغ بغ

## Group 10

A connecting shape. Qâf is pronounced exactly like qayn.

	fe	qâf	
initial	ف_	ق	
medial	<u>.</u>	ä.	
final	ف	<b>ہ</b> ق	
alone	<b>ن</b> ف	<b>ن</b> ق	,

Initial and medial fe and qâf are round shapes; the round medial fe (ف) must be

distinguished in handwriting from the medial qayn (غد). In handwriting, fe and  $q\hat{a}f$  are raised before any jim-shape and mim, e.g. and and

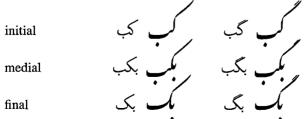


#### **Group 11**

Kâf and gâf are connective. They are never written in one stroke: the diagonal top-strokes of these letters are added in a downward fashion after the word or graphic unit is completed.

	kâf	gâf
initial	5	گ
medial	<u>ح</u>	گ
final	ر ک	ا گ
alone	ك ك	ک گ

In handwriting, kâf and gâf come directly down into the mim, as کمان kamar is written as , and the sequence kâf-mim-alef is written as کمان kamân and کمان . All forms of these letters sit on the writing line. Examples combined with b are as follows:



### Group 12

Lâm, a connector, is the only letter in this shape group. It is a vertical like alef but connects forward. The final and alone forms end in the "bowl" shape of the nun, which descends below the writing line. Lâm takes a special form when followed by alef (lâm-alef, see Additional Signs).

In handwriting, lam comes directly down into mim, e.g. الما lam is handwritten as الما . lam is raised and angled to the left before any jim-shape, e.g. المخت lakht is written as الما lajj is handwritten as الما lajj is handwritten as . Examples

initial بل final بل medial بلب final

### Group 13

combined with b follow:

A connecting letter, *mim* is the only representative of this group. The "tail" of the final and alone forms descend far below the writing line.

initial: \_\_ final
medial \_\_ alone

In print all forms of this letter have a small hollow middle, but in handwriting they do not. In handwriting the initial form is \_\_\_\_, the medial form is \_\_\_\_, and the alone form is \_\_\_\_, Before mim all connecting letters are raised in handwriting; thus,

"tooth" + final mim: i namad + medial mim: + final mim: | z jam ìim + medial mim: sin/shin + final mim: ~ sam + medial mim:  $s\hat{a}d/z\hat{a}d$  + final mim:  $\int sam$ + medial mim: صاك zamân  $t\hat{a}/z\hat{a}$  + final mim:  $\int zam$ + medial mim: ayn/qayn + final mim: | & gam + medial mim: fe/qaf + final mim: | 2 qom + medial mim: 🕈 qamar xxvii

mim + final mim: p mam + medial mim: p momedd

The combinat $A \sim Moham$ handwritten as with $b$ are:	ion <i>mim + jim + mi</i> umad. handwritten a	+ medial <i>mim</i> m is stacked, as occu s محمد . <i>Kâf/gâf</i> and <i>lân</i> المس، محما = كما	rs in the $n$ follow	common name ed by <i>mim</i> are	
initial medial	بمب بمب	final	بم	¢.	
Group 14					
	en ends, like re, in	representative of the a non-connecting "			
initial/alone	<b>و</b> و	medial/final	as ـو	نو بو in	
There is only	a slight difference	khe, as in خويش kh in <i>nastaʻliq</i> betweer dud, handwritten دو	the init	. khâhesh خُواهش ial/alone forms of	
Group 15					
	he-havvaz is the on t connection one wi	ly letter the various th another.	shapes of	f which have little	
. initial	ھ	final	هـ		
medial .	& or -6:	alone	٥		
The handwritten initial $he$ -havvaz consists of two small "teeth" with an inverted comma beneath. Initial $he$ -havvaz is raised before any $jim$ -shape and $mim$ , e.g. $hejri$ is handwritten as $he$ , and $he$ ham is handwritten as $he$ . In handwriting the final $he$ is a very short stroke down from the writing line, e.g. $he$ and $he$ $he$ $he$ $he$ $he$ $he$ $he$ $he$					
and as men ar follows:	e nandwritten as	and . Examples o	omomeo	with b are as	
initial	بب هب	final	به	~	
		xxviii			

medial alone مهب بهب

In nasta'liq the combination initial he + alef(a) has a special form, b, as in خانه khânehâ, handwritten as المائة khânehâ, handwritten as

#### The Vowels

- â is written (1) word-initially with alef-madde as in آن ân
  - (2) elsewhere with alef as in bb bâbâ
- i is written (1) word-initially with alef-ye as in این in
  - (2) elsewhere with ye as in بينى bini
- ut اوت word-initially with alef-vâv as in اوت u is written
  - (2) elsewhere with vâv as in رويوش rupush
- ay is written (1) word-initially with alef-ye as in ايوان ayvân
  - (2) elsewhere with ye as in مسيل sayl
- aw is written (1) word-initially with alef-vâv as in פער awlâd
  - (2) elsewhere with  $v\hat{a}v$  as in  $\rightarrow jaw$

The "short" vowels (a, e, o) are indicated initially by alef:

Word internally the short vowels are not normally written or indicated. Where confusion might arise they can be indicated by the following signs, written over or under the letter they follow in pronunciation:

- $\vec{a}$  (called فتحه fathe or زبر zebar), as in ,  $\vec{b}$  kal
- ع کل cevar), as in ربر ۔۔ e (called کسرہ kasre or زیر zir), as in گل gel gol گُل pish), as in پیش zamme or ضمه gol

Final -e is written with he-havvaz. This purely orthographic convention is called "silent he" to distinguish it from the "real he," which also occurs word-finally.

When the glides ay and aw are indicated with a vowel point, they are indicated, contrary to Arabic usage, with zir and pish respectively.

A consonant followed by no vowel is indicated by a small circle above the consonant. This sign is called  $i \rightarrow sokun$  or jazm. Its use is exceedingly rare.

A  $v\hat{a}v$  at the beginning of a word can only be the consonant v. In the middle of a word  $v\hat{a}v$  can be (1) the consonant v, (2) the vowel u, or (3) the glide aw. At the end of a word  $v\hat{a}v$  can be (1) the consonant v, (2) the vowel u, (3) the glide aw, or (4) the vowel o but only in three words (5) to 'you,' and to 'you,' and to 'like').

A ye at the beginning of a word can only be the consonant y. In the middle or end of a word ye can be (1) the consonant y, (2) the vowel i, or (3) the glide ay.

# Additional signs.

(1) The  $l\hat{a}m$ -alef ligature (Y), handwritten as  $\emptyset$ , is merely an orthographic convention to avoid the shape  $\bigcup$ . Since its second component is alef, it does not connect forward. Examples are given in print and nasta'liq:

- (2) Madde (1, always written on alef) serves as
  - (a) all initial  $\hat{a}$ -, as in آب  $\hat{a}b$  and آمد  $\hat{a}$ mad.
  - (b) internal glottal stop followed by  $\hat{a}$  (i.e. -' $\hat{a}$ ) in most cases (but see 5 below), as in  $ma'\hat{a}ser$ ,  $like ide'\hat{a}l$ , and  $like ide'\hat{a}t$ .
  - (c) Lâm followed by alef-madde is written with the lâm-alef ligature, as in الآل la'âli.
- (3) Te-tammat (5) (the Arabic  $t\bar{a}$ '  $marb\bar{u}ta$ ) is word-final only. It occurs in Arabic loan-constructions and is pronounced -at. It almost always has the tanvin

termination (see next entry). This letter is often replaced in typography by ت.

- (4) The Arabic adverbial termination, called تنوين tanvin and pronounced -an, is "carried" by an alef, as in مثلاً masalan and واقعاً vâqe'an. When tanvin occurs on te-tammat, it does not have the alef bearer, as نسبة nesbatan and مثلاً daf'atan. Many writers of modern Persian, however, treat these words as though the te-tammat were te and write them with alef, as نسبتا nesbatan and دفعتا daf'atan.
- (5) The hamze ( $\epsilon$ ) is the sign of the glottal stop. It is theoretically present and "carried" by alef for all initial vowels except  $\hat{a}$ , although it is very rarely written. If the vowel of the hamze is a or o, the hamze is on top of the alef; if the vowel of the hamze is e, the hamze is beneath the alef.

Non-initially the *hamze* is written in a variety of ways, and there are complicated rules for the bearer of the *hamze* in Arabic words; however, since variant spellings are frequent in Persian, it is considerably less time-consuming for the student simply to learn the spelling of words with *hamze* as they occur. Bearers of the *hamze* are:

- (a) alef, as in مسأله mas'ale
- (b) an undotted "tooth," as in مسائل masâ'el
- so'âl, and سؤال so'âl, and
- (d) nothing, as in شيء shay'

Some modern writers and typesetters put all internal *hamzes* on the undotted "tooth," e.g. مسئوال (for the normal مسئوال , مسئوال , and مسئوال ), and مسئول *mas'ul* (for the normal مسئول).

(6) The tashdid (تشديد, also called شده shadde), which looks like a small w over a letter, indicates gemination, or doubling, of a consonant. The tashdid is usually omitted, although it may be provided occasionally where ambiguity might arise.

The doubling that results from compounding is indicated not by the *tashdid* but by writing both consonants, as in بروو por-ru 'cheeky,' پاک کنن pâk-kon 'eraser,' and تيززبان tiz-zabân 'sharp-tongued.' The difference between tashdid and two letters has to do with word formation, and it will become apparent over

the course of the grammar.

In print the connecting line between letters can be extended indefinitely without affecting the word, as in  $zab\hat{a}n$  and  $h\hat{a}l$ . The extension of the line is used to justify margins in print.

# Summary of the Alphabet (nonconnectors indicated by asterisks):

Summing	or the impliant	(Honcomicotors	marenea of assert	J. 1071
LETTER	ALONE	FINAL	MEDIAL	INITIAL
*alif	1	L	L	1
be	ب	<u> </u>	<del>-</del> -	ب
pe	پ	<u>پ</u>	<del>*</del>	پ ت
te	ت	<u>پ</u> ت	ت	
se	ث	ث	<u> </u>	ثـ
jim	ج	حج	ج	ج
che	چ	<del>-</del>	چ ح	چ
he-hotti			حـ	ح
khe	ح خ	ح خ د	یخہ	خ
*dâl	د		۲.	د
*zâl	ذ	غ	ı i	ذ
*re	ر	~ر	-ر	ر
*ze	j	ڹ	بز	ز
*zhe	ژ	_ژ	ڔٛ	ژ
sin	س	ــس		س
shin	س ش	ــــ ــش	<u></u>	شـ
sâd	ص	ـص ـض ـط		<i>ھ</i> ـ
zâd	ض	_ض	غــ	ضـ
tâ	ط	ط	ط	ط
zâ	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ
ayn	ع	ىخ	*	ع
qayn	ع غ ف	غ	خ	غـ
fe		ف	غ	ف
qâf	ق ک	ع ف ک گ	قـ	ف ق
kâf	ک	ک	ک	5
gâf	گ	گ	گ	گ
		xxxii		

xxxii

lâm	ل	ـل	7	ل
mim	٩	۴	-	مـ
nun	ن	<b>-ن</b>	· ' ÷	نـ
*v,âv	و	۔و	۔و	و
he-havvaz	٥	هـ	-&-	ھے
$_{\iota}ye$	ی	ی	<del>-</del> -	یـ

Additional Combinations and Signs					
*lâm-alif	Y	X	X	X	
handwritten	IJ	Ų.	y.	У	
te-ťammat	ة	ä	<del></del>	_	
handwritten	;	•···	_	-	
alef-madde	ī	الم.	Ţ	Ī	
handwritten	T	ĩ	ĩ	ĩ	
alef-tanvin	-	Ĺ	<u>-</u>	_	
handwritten	Í	Ĺ	_	_	
*vâv + hamze	ؤ	_ؤ	_ؤ	ؤ	
handwritten	j	<i>y</i>	بۇ	j	
ye + hamze	ئ	ۓ	ئ	ئـ	
handwritten	ئ	Ċ.	Ľ.	ب	

# **Numerals**

The Persian numerals are as follows:

0 •	2 Y .	4 4	6 9	8 Λ
1, 1	3 ٣	5 Δ	7 Y	9 9

Compound numerals are written, as in English, from left to right:  $\Upsilon S \Delta = 365$ , YAA = 1789,  $Y \cdot \cdot Y = 2004$ . A European-style comma is commonly used for the decimal mark:  $\Upsilon, \Delta = 2.5$  and  $\Upsilon, \forall \Delta = 3.75$ . The percentage sign is  $\frac{7}{2}$ , and it is normally written to the left of the number (e.g.  $/\Delta \cdot = 50\%$ ).

#### **Punctuation**

Punctuation is a relatively new phenomenon in Persian, and all marks of punctuation were adopted from Europe. The period (.), the comma (.), the colon (:), the semicolon (:), the question mark (?), the exclamation point (!), and the dash (—) are used similarly to their English counterparts. Quotation marks, used much less frequently than in English, are borrowed from the French guillemet («»). Note that the comma (.) differs from the decimal mark (,).

#### **Pronunciation Exercise**

Practice pronouncing the following words. Stress falls on the final syllable except in words to which the unstressed -i has been added, in which case stress falls on the penultimate syllable. Pay particular attention to the difficult clusters and to stress and intonation, and notice the various homophonous letters. Read across from left to right.

$\rightarrow$	/ bar	) bâr	bấr-i باری
	bârí اری	// bârbar	bârbár-i باربری
	bârbarí باربری	serr ,	sérr-i سری
	serrí	qaht فحط	qahti فحط
	bahs بحث	báhs-i بحثی	sahn صحی
	sahnhâ صحبًا	naqs نقص	maks مکث
	jam	jam' جمع	jám'-i
	jam'í جمعی	jam'hâ	jam'há-i خجمعهائی
	latme نظم	dokme	ma'ruf معروف
	qarq غرق	nerkh	qonche
	qâshoq فاثنق	chopoq چتق	qelqelaki قلطاني
	jâme عامہ	jame'	tabe "
	'tabe تأنع	tabé-i مابدای	tabé'-i مانعی
	zhâle ژاکه	mozhzhe	mobl مر
			•

xxxiv

asl اصل	ahl	hosn حن
khashm	javânmard توانر و	sehhat صحت
vajh وحد	solh صلح	fahm فجم
sarv )	مب OZV عصو	porru
pâru بارو	gol کل	gul کو ل
qarz قرض	arz ارز	sharh شرح
arj ارج	gery کر ی	qalb قلب
kahf کہن	barq برق	fesq فق
rezq رزق	eshq عثق	saqf رقيف
rokn קצט	ta'm	zeqn وقق
batn بطن	dafn وفن	asbsavâr اسبوار
mofassal مفصل	jabr	chatr چتر
אנ badr	fekr	qa'r قو
faqr فقر	sefr	tabl
רלן ratl	adl סגל	shekl
الع la'l	shoql	qoft a
vahm وہم	mahd 🕶	sangsâr سركس
dastbord وسنرو	derakhtkâr درخت کار	ردناک dardnâk
dalqpush ولقبوش	ranjbar رنحبر	madhsarâ הכתן
raf رفع	'shar شرع	

# **Reading Exercise**

Read the following words, which contain only the "apparent" vowels  $\hat{a}$ , i, u, and final e. Read across from right to left.

ويلا	وادي	بامدادان	بانو
طاق	شيرواني	صابون	عام
پول	گام	ثانی	دور
موش	زير	آ بی	چيز
گوناگون	پیچید	ل <i>و</i> ليا <i>ن</i>	ديوانه
ساز	گيج	خوب	قاضى
واژگوني	كاشيكاري	عاق	ماچ
موم	حاجي	دير	روئيده
ديو	ياغى	اينجا	حالا
آلوبالو	قير	آقايان	قال
وول	آ فتا <u>ب</u>	تيپ	روح
ميز	هیچگاه	<u>گو</u> شت	زين
خيس	چاپ	روحانيون	واچيديم
بيبال	نوری	داديم	كوچگاه
צע	پور	واگيره	هارون
شاهانی	تور	باطلاق	باغها
وادار	آبدار	چوب	ژاله
واصى	كاخ	کوچي	روباه
گول	گويا	'هامان	داغ
بینی	قو	داشتيم	طو <i>پ</i>

Now read the same words in nasta'liq script:

وملأ	وادى	بامدادان	بانو
طاقء	شيروانى	صابون •	عام

بول م	گام	ثانی	199
پول موش پر پر	A	آبی	چنر
كو ماكون	زیر پیچید کیچ کاشی کاری حاجی	لوليان	د <i>بوانه</i>
زار	کیج	نوب	قاضى
واژکونی	کاشی کاری	عاق	ماچ
موم	ماجی	19	روئيده
د <i>بو</i> ت	ياعي	د <i>بر</i> ایجا ایجا	حالا
آلوبالو	قیر آفتاب	آ قایان	قال
وول	a contract of the contract of	تىپ مۇشت	روح
منر نعیں پیال	میجاباه	محمحكوشت	زین
خس ٔ	چاپ	روحانيون	واچديم کوچک ه
سال	نوري	داديم راديم واکسره	کوچک اه
لال	لور * تور	واكسره	لارون
ثابيني	گور	باطلاق	باخا
وادار	آرار	حوب	ژاله
واصی	كاخ	چوب کوچی کمان	روباه
م کول	كويا	كمان	داغ
مبي مبي	آرار کاخ کویا کویا قو	داسيم داسيم	طوپ

# Part One بخش اول

The Grammar of دستور زبان فارسی معاصر Modern Persian



## **Lesson One**

- § 1 Word Order. Normal word order in Persian is subject-predicate-verb. Finite verbs almost always take their proper place as the last element in a phrase or sentence. However, the copulative verb ('is, are, was, were'), which serves only to express a predicative state and not existence, may be followed by other matter (prepositional phrases, adjective modifiers, etc.) modifying the predicate.
- § 2 Stress and intonation. All nouns and adjectives in Persian are stressed on the final syllable. Primary sentence-stress (), characterized by a very high rising pitch, falls on the last stressed syllable before an affirmative verb.

irân dar mashreqzamín-ast

"Iran is in the east."

Whereas the affirmative copula ('is, are') never receives stress at all, the negative copula, like all negatives, takes primary stress. A secondary stress, characterized by a high falling pitch ('), falls on the preceding stressed syllable.

âmrikâ dar mashreqzamìn níst
"America is not in the east."

- § 3 Gender. Persian lacks gender distinction altogether. There is no grammatical distinction of masculine, feminine, or neuter.
- § 4 State of the noun. There is no definite article ('the') or indefinite article ('a') in Persian. The Persian noun exists instead in two states, (1) the absolute and (2) the non-specific.
  - 4.1 The noun in its absolute state, i.e., with no suffix or enclitic, indicates both

the specific singular and the generic, which is generally rendered in English by the plural ("Libraries contain books"). Thus, *ketâb* means both 'the book' (about which we already know something) and 'books' (in general).

تاب خوب است ketâb khub-ast. The book (specific) is

good. / Books (generic)

are good.

kuh bozorg-ast. The mountain (specific)

is large. / Mountains (generic) are large.

4.2 The non-specific state of the noun is formed by adding the indefinite enclitic, an unstressed -i, to the noun. Because this ending is enclitic, and therefore unstressed, the final syllable of the absolute state retains the stress. The non-specific state indicates 'a certain, a particular' thing or 'one of a class.'

ي ketâb-i (ketấbi) a book, any book, one

book, a certain book, some book or other, some

particular book

a table, any table, one ميزى miz-i (mízi) a table, a certain table

table, a certain table, some table or other, some

particular table

- § 5 Orthography of the indefinite enclitic. The indefinite enclitic is spelled as a ye added directly to nouns ending in consonants (as خطبی ketâb-i above). The ye is joined directly to nouns ending in "connecting" letters but not, of course, to nouns ending in any of the seven non-connecting letters (as ميزى miz-i).
- 5.1 When added to words ending in  $-\hat{a}$  or -u, the indefinite is spelled with hamze—ye (3) or ye—ye (3) (hamze—ye will be preferred in this book).

دانا dânâ > دانائی dânâ-i a sage

dâneshju-i a student دانشجو

5.2 In words ending in the "silent" he and ye, the indefinite enclitic is generally spelled with alef-ye ( $\Diamond$ ).

khâne > خانه ای khâne-i a house

#### LESSON ONE

Care must be taken to distinguish the silent *he*, which is merely an orthographic convention to indicate a final vowel, from the real *he*, which is a true consonant and thus adds the indefinite enclitic directly.

$$kh\hat{a}ne > خانه khane-i$$
 a house  
but خانه khane-i a mountain

§ 6 Adjectival order. Attributive adjectives normally follow the nouns they modify. When the noun is in the non-specific state, the adjective follows immediately. Other constructions will be introduced later.

§ 7 The plural. The plural marker that can be added to all nouns in Persian is  $h\hat{a}$ , which is suffixed directly to the noun in the absolute state; it takes the stress and renders the specific plural.

- 7.1 When the final consonant of the noun can be connected orthographically, the plural suffix is usually joined directly, although it is sometimes left separate (کتابها or کتابها).
- 7.2 When added to a noun ending in the silent he, the plural suffix is never joined, although it may be connected to the real he.

§ 8 The non-specific plural. The non-specific plural is formed by adding the unstressed indefinite enclitic to the plural ( $h\hat{a}-i$ ). The plural suffix retains the stress. The non-specific plural denotes 'some' or 'several.' The orthographic rule given above in §5.2 applies.

khânehấ-i خانەھائى

some houses, several houses

8.1 Adjectives that modify plural nouns do not agree in number but always remain singular, as in English. As in the singular (§6), attributive adjectives follow a non-specific noun directly.

ketâbhấ-i khub كتابهائى خوب كشورهائى قديمى keshvarhấ-i qadimi some good books

some old countries

kuhhá-i bozorg کوههائی بزرگ

some large mountains

## Synopsis of noun states

SINGULAR

PLURAL

ABSOLUTE

ketấb books (generic)

SPECIFIC

ketấb the book

کتابها کتابها ketâbhấ the books کتابها کنده ketâbhấ-i some books

NONSPECIFIC ا

*ketáb-i* a book

## Vocabulary 1

بد bad bad بد bozorg big, large, great بزرگ pâkkon eraset خانه khâne house خوب khub good, well

dar door در

sandali chairr صندلي

adimi old, ancient¹ قديمي

*qalam* pen

ketâb book کتاب

keshvar country کشور

kuchek small, little کوچک

kuh mountain کوه

gach chalk گچ

miz table ميز

naw new نو

countries and things and ideas that are of long standing. It is not used for people.

#### Exercise 1

(a) For the following words give (1) the non-specific singular (e.g, پاككنې pâk-kon-i), (2) the specific plural (e.g., پاككنې pâkkonhâ), and (3) the non-specific plural (e.g., ياككبائي pâkkonhâ-i):

۲ قلم

۲ خانه

اكتاب

اکثو

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Qadimi is typically used for ancient

#### LESSON ONE

۸۸

عرصندلي

۵ منر

## (b) Read and translate the following phrases:

atto the renewing plants	<b>y</b>
۸ کتابی نو	۱ منری بزرک
۹ قلمی خوب	۲ صندلیهانی خوب
۱۰ منړ کڼې نو	۳ کثوری کوچک
۱۱ خاندای نو	۴ کوہی بزرگ
۱۲ کچي کوچک	۵ خانه کئی قدیمی
۱۳ کثور بی بزرک	عر قلمهائی به
۱۴ دری کوچک	۷ ياك كنهاني قديمي

## (d) Give the Persian for the following:

- \*1: (some) small mountains
- 2. (some) old houses
- 3. an old table
- 4<sup>3</sup>. a new chair
- 5. an old country

- 6. a good pen
- 7. a good eraser
- 8. (some) big doors
- 9. (some) bad books
- 10. (some) new pieces of chalk

פקים פכא

## Lesson Two

- § 9 Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns.
- 9.1 The demonstrative **adjectives** are i ('this, these') and i ('that, those'). They modify both singular and plural nouns. They precede the nouns they modify.

in ketâb این کتاب	this book
in ketâbhâ این کتابها	these books
ân qalam آن قلم	that pen
ân qalamhâ آن قلمها	those pens

9.2 As demonstrative **pronouns** ایستن in ('this') and آن an ('that') refer to the singular, while the plurals an ('these') and an ('those') refer to plurals.

in khub-ast. این خوب است.	This is good.
inhâ khub-and. اينها خوبند	These are good.
آن بد نیست <i>ân bad nist</i> .	That isn't bad.
آنها بد نیستد <i>ânhâ bad nistand</i> .	Those/they aren't bad.

§ 10 Verbal agreement with the plural. As a general rule, plurals of inanimate nouns take singular verbs.

in ketâbhâ khub-ast. These books are good. این کتابها خوب است شدیمی نیست ân keshvarhâ qadimi مان کشورها قدیمی نیست nist. Those countries are not old.

In very short sentences with the verb 'to be,' however, where a plural subject is separated from its verb by no more than a predicate adjective, noun, or short prepositional phrase, a plural subject usually takes a plural verb. In longer sentences, especially in complex constructions and with most finite verbs other than

#### LESSON TWO

'to be,' plurals of inanimate nouns (things) take singular verbs.

in ketâbhâ khub-and. ابن كتابها خويند.

These books are good.

With the negative verb 'not to be,' the singular is usually retained for inanimate plurals.

in ketâbhâ khub nist. ابن كتابها خوب نيست.

These books aren't good.

Animate plurals (people) regularly take plural verbs in all situations.

in pesarhâ zerang-and. These boys are clever.

in pesarhâ irâni nistand. These boys aren't این یسرها ایرانی نیستند.

Iranian.

§ 11 Co-ordination. The co-ordinating conjunction 9 is read either as (1) va-, added to the second element of the co-ordination, or—and more idiomatically as (2) -o, an unstressed enclitic added to the first element of the co-ordination.

ketâb-o qalam **or** کتاب و قلم ketâb va-qalam

book(s) and pen(s)

miz-o sandali **or** ميز و صندلی miz va-sandali

table(s) and chair(s)

The indefinite enclitic usually appears only once at the end of a series of nonspecific nouns.

ketâb-o qalam}-i} كتاب و قلمي

a book and pen

gach-o pâkkon}-i} گچ و پاک کنی

a piece of chalk and (an)

eraser

§ 12 Adverbs. Adverbs invariably precede adjectives.

besyâr khub سيار خوب

very good

kâmelan naw کاملا نو

brand new

galam-i besyâr khub قلمي بسيار خوب

a very good pen

ketâbhâ-i kâmelan naw some brand new books کتابهائے کاملا نو

## § 13 Interrogative sentences.

13.1 An interrogative sentence that contains no interrogative words ("who,

what, where, why, when, which") is signalled by a rising inflection of voice and not by rearrangement of words (as in English). The intonation that accompanies the interrogative sentence in Persian should be learned by imitation of the instructor.

in khub-ast. This is good. این خوب است. انت خوب است؟ in khub-ast? Is this good?

13.2 Interrogative words tend not to come first in a Persian sentence unless absolutely unavoidable. Interrogatives follow the subject and adverbs of time and immediately precede the predicate.

(۱ کی بود؟ What was that? Who was that? Who was that young man? ان جوان کی بود؟ نود؟ نودان کی بود؟ شاه أن جوان کی بود؟ نودان کی ان بود؟ نودان کی آمد؟ When did Ali come?

An exception to the general rule is  $\sinh ch\acute{e}r\^{a}$  ('why?'), which often comes at the beginning of an interrogative sentence.

? پرا اینجا نیست chérâ injâ nist? Why isn't he/she/it here?

### Vocabulary 2

Nouns and adjectives

النها أمريكا أمريكائي إمريكائي إم

Adverbs, prepositions, &c.

(pronoun)

أنجا anjâ there بله، بلى bále yes النجا injâ here برا chérâ why? پرا besyâr very, very much خیلی kháyli very, much,

#### LESSON TWO

many, a lot; too much, xxix §4)
too many كجا kojā where?

dar in (prep.) مخير nákhayr no
kâmelan completely (for
the orthography see p.

Verbs

#### Exercise 2

(a) The following sentences all begin with a demonstrative pronoun as the subject. Make non-specific predicates (singular or plural according to the subject given) from the noun—adjective combinations given in parentheses (make appropriate changes for plural, non-specific, &c., e.g. انها (کوه - کوچان ânhâ (kuh - kuchek)-and > نها کوچاند (ânhâ, kuhhâ-i kuchek-and):

۱ این، (جوان - ایرانی) است
۲ آن، (کوه - بزرگ) است
۲ آن، (کوه - بزرگ) است
۳ آنها، (بچه - بد) بودند
۳ آنها، (بچه - بد) بودند
۴ تهران، (ثهر بزرگ) است
۱۹ تهران، (ثهر بزرگ) است
۱۹ تهران، (کثور قدیمی) است
۱۵ این، (کثور قدیمی) است

(b) Give both affirmative and negative answers to the following questions:

۱ آن جوان ایرانی است؟ ۳ این بچه کوچک است؟ ۲ آن کشورها بسیار قدیمی اند؟

۸ آن کوه خیلی کوچک است؟ ۹ این کتابها قدیمی اند؟ ۱۰ این گچ و پاککن خوبند؟ ۵ آن صندلی کاملا نو است؟ ۶ این میز و صندلی خوبند؟ ۷ آن شهر در آمریکاست؟

(c) Read and translate the following into English:

۱ آن کوه در آمریک نست. ۲ آن کابها حرا ایجا نبیت؟ ۳ آن منز في نوب است. ۴ آن شرح اید است؟ ۵ آمریک کثوری نزرک است وبی قدیمی نست. ع آن ایرانی کا کودند؟ ۷ ان منر و صندبی بزرک و خوبند ۸ ایران کثوری قدیمی است و تهران شهری نرک است در ایران. ٩ آن جوان ايراني نبت، آمريك في است. ١٠ انها كتابهائي بسار نويند.

- (d) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Those Iranians are not here.
- 2. They were there.
- 3. That table is too1 small.

4. The books and pens are in the house.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>There is no word in Persian equivalent to the English "too" in this meaning as dis-

tinguished from "very." The sense of "too much" and "too little" is conveyed by context and/or voice intonation.

#### LESSON TWO

- 5. These are (some) very good chairs. 7. Tehran is in Iran.

6. Where is that city?

8. Those children are Iranian.

## **Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases**

ام	V salâm	Hello.
مج بخير	o sobh bekhayr	Good morning.
´" C	ه sobh-e shomâ bekhayr. ر	Good morning to you (in response).
لتان حطور است؟	háletân chetawr-ast?	How are you?
	háletân chetawr-ast? hâl-e shomâ chetawr- ast?	How are you?
نبیت. حال ثماحطور است	bad nist. hâl-e shomâ chetawr-ast?	Not bad. How are you?
ل من ہم بدنیت، قربار ثما	p hâl-e man-ham bad nist, qorbân-e shomâ.	Not bad either, thanks.
إ حافظ	∙ ⊌ khodâ hâfez	Goodbye.

ھریش سوم

## Lesson Three

§ 14 The ezâfe. The ezâfe (اضافه) is a construction that is indicated by an unstressed enclitic vowel (-e) and serves to link syntactically related nouns and adjectives together. It is not normally indicated orthographically. There are two types of ezâfe, the attributive adjectival and the possessive (to be introduced in §21 below).

14.1 The attributive adjectival *ezâfe* links an attributive adjective to a noun in the absolute state and renders a definite sense (modified nouns cease to function as generics).

the new book کتاب نو ketâb-e naw the new book میز کهنه miz-e kohne the old table

(a) When added to nouns ending in consonants and in -i, the ezâfe is not usually indicated orthographically, although it can be written with the kasrel zir vowel and may be given by careful editors in highly ambiguous contexts (e.g. ميز كهنه).

(b) When added to words ending in  $-\hat{a}$  and most words ending in -u, the ezâfe is pronounced -ye and the letter  $\zeta$  is written.

the good books کتابهای خوب ketâbhâ-ye khub, the clever student دانشجوی زرنگ dâneshju-ye zerang

(c) When added to words ending in the silent he, the ezâfe is indicated by a hamze written above the he (5) and is pronounced -ye. This indication, though fairly frequent, is not always given in printed texts, as in the second example below.

the big house خانهٔ بزرگ khâne-ye bozorg دانهٔ بزرگ bachche-ye bad , the bad child

14.2 A series of attributive adjectives not co-ordinated by the conjunction is linked by the *ezâfe*.

#### LESSON THREE

khâne-ye qadimi-e bozorg-e the big old red house خانهٔ قدیمی بزرگ قومز germez

Adjectival order, a crucial feature of English, is not fixed in Persian. Multiple adjectives describing a single noun may come in any order whatsoever, the emphasis falling in descending order away from the noun. Thus,

خانهٔ بزرگ قدیمی قرمز khâne-ye bozorg-e qadimi-e qermez خانهٔ قرمز بزرگ قدیمی khâne-ye qermez-e bozorg-e qadimi خانهٔ قدیمی قرمز بزرگ khâne-ye qadimi-e qermez-e bozorg

all mean 'the big old red house' with differing degrees of emphasis on the adjectives.

- 14.3 When the indefinite enclitic falls on the noun, no *ezâfe* intervenes between the noun and its adjective, as described in §6 above.
- (a) When a noun in the non-specific state is modified by more than one adjective, the adjectives are linked by the conjunction -o.

"(b) The indefinite enclitic may also fall at the end of a attributive adjectival series, i.e., after the adjective modifiers. In this case the adjectives are all linked by the ezâfe and do not require the conjunction. There is no essential difference in meaning whether the indefinite suffix is added to the noun itself or to the end of the adjectival sequence, but the latter is much more common in modern Persian.

14.4 Adverbial modifiers precede adjectives directly in the ezâfe construction.

#### § 15 The noun in the predicate position.

15.1 An unqualified predicate noun, i.e. one that is not modified by an adjective or prepositional phrase, occurs as a categorical predicate of a copulative verb in the absolute state and indicates membership in the class. This means that, unlike English and most other languages, an unqualified predicate noun only occurs as singular and absolute regardless of the number of the subject. In the following examples the division between subject and predicate is indicated by the sign I.

in I ketâb-ast. این کتاب است. This is a book. inhâ | ketâb-and. اينها كتابند. These are books. .ali | dâneshju-ast على دانشجو است. Ali is a student. -ali-o akbar I dâneshju على و اكبر دانشجو اند. Ali and Akbar are students. .pedar-e ali | pezeshk پدر علی پزشک بود. Ali's father was a physician. pedarhâ-ye ân bachche پدرهای آن بچهها **پزشک** Those children's fathers بودند. hâ | pezeshk-budand.

15.2 When the predicate noun is modified by an adjective or by any other type of descriptive phrase (such as a prepositional phrase), it is in the non-specific state. As previously noted (§14.3), in such constructions the indefinite enclitic may be attached either to the noun or to the adjective. Note in the following examples that when -ast is preceded by the nonspecific enclitic -i, -ast becomes -st and the alef is dropped.

were physicians.

alil[dâneshju]-i [zerang]-ast. ] Ali is a clever على دانشجوئي زرنگ است. alil[dâneshju-ye zerang]-i-st. ∫ student. على دانشجوي زرنگيست. آقای جعفری پزشکی مهربان آمومٔ آقای جعفری پزشکی مهربان آمود. [mehrbân]-bud. مهربان آموم آمومٔ âqâ-ye ja'faril [pezeshk-e آمود. Mr. Ja'fari was a kind physician.

In negative sentences, however, the indefinite enclitic always falls on the adjective and not on the noun.

When the alef of ast is dropped, the resulting -i-st is usually written together with the word.

#### LESSON THREE

انگی دانشجوی زرنگی alil dâneshju-ye zerang-i Ali is not a clever stu-dent. dent. شکی بزشک âqâ-ye ja'faril pezeshk-e Mr. Ja'fari was not a

mashhur-**i** nábud. مشهوري نبود. famous physician.

15.3 In good literary prose style, in such constructions the affirmative present and past-absolute copulative verb tends to intervene between the noun and its modifiers when the noun carries the indefinite enclitic.

ali | dâneshju-ye zerang-i-st على دانشجوى زر نگي**ست**. (normal) رسید. ali l dâneshju-i-st zerang. زرنگ. (literary) .pezeshk-e mehrbân-i-bud پزشک مهربانی بود. (normal) (normal) .pezeshk-i-**bud** mehrbân. (literary) mo'allem-e khub-i-st. (normal) He is a good teacher. . معلمست خوس mo'allem-i-st khub. (literary)

15.4 With plural subjects, an unmodified predicate noun is in the absolute singular, while a modified predicate noun is in the indefinite plural.

inhâ | ketâb-ast/-and. اينها كتاب است (اند). These are books.

inhâ | ketâbhâ-ye mofid- These are useful books. .(اند). *i-ast/and* 

inhâ | ketâbhâ-ye mofid-i These are not useful اینها کتابهای مفیدی books.

## Synopsis of noun predicates:

(1) Unmodified predicate nouns are absolute singular:

ali dâneshju-ast. على دانشجو است. Ali is a student.

ali-o akbar dâneshju- Ali and Akbar are students.

(2) Modified predicate nouns are nonspecific, singular or plural in agreement with the subject:

ali dâneshju-ye khub-i-st. Ali is a good student. على دانشجوى خوبيست.

ali-o akbar dâneshjuhâ- Ali and Akbar are good على و اكبر دانشجوهاى بو هاى ياند. ye khub-i-and. students.

kohne old, worn-out1

## Vocabulary 3

پسر	pesar boy, son	مرد	mard man (not woman)
تُنبل	tambal lazy	مشهور	mashhur famous, well-
خراب	kharâb broken, ruined		known
خوشحال	<i>khoshhâl</i> happy	مفيد	mofid useful
دانشجو	dâneshju (university) student	نسبة	nesbatan relatively, fair- ly; also spelled نسبتا,
دانشگاه	dâneshgâh university		particularly in modern
دربارهٔ	darbâre-ye about, con- cerning		typesetting (for the orthography see p. xxix
زرن <i>گ</i>	zerang clever, smart	•	§4)
زن	zan woman, wife	les t	

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Kohne is typically used for things that are dilapidated or worn out, e.g. old clothing. It is never used for people.

#### Exercise 3

(a) Transform the following noun-adjective phrases into nonspecific ezâfe constructions (e.g., خوبی < ketâb-i khub کتاب خوبی ketâb-e khub-i):

ع بحیانی سیار زرنگ	 ۱ دانشج نی زرنک
۷ مردی خیلی تنبل	۲ پسرانی نوشحال
۸ کتابهانی نسبة مفید	۳ کثوری مشهور
٩ دانشجو کائی خیلی خوب	۴ خانه کئی خراب
۱۰ دانشگاہی کاملاً نو	۵ مردی زرنک

#### LESSON THREE

(b) Give both affirmative and negative answers to the following:

۱ آنها بچه اند؟
۲ این دانشگاه قدیمی است؟
۲ این دانشگاه قدیمی است؟
۳ معلمهای خوبی بودند؟
۴ تهران شهر خوبی است؟
۱ آن قلم کهنه مفید بود؟
۵ اینها مردهای تنبلی اند؟

(c) Determine whether the demonstrative given in parentheses is a pronoun or adjective, give the proper form, and translate—e.g. (1) (an) وقلمهاى خوبى اند (ân) qalamhâ-ye khub-i-and (أن) قلمها خوبى اند (ân) qalamhâ-ye khub-i-and (those are good pens'; (2) آن قلمها خوبند (ân) qalamhâ khub-and (those pens are good):

۱ (این) جوان ایرانی است عرآن) کتاب قدیمی ای بود ۲ (آن) شهر بزرگست ۲ (آن) صندلی نوی بود ۳ (آن) بچها خوبند ۸ (این) کثور قدیمی است ۴ (آن) پنجره بای کوچکی اند ۹ (این) کثور بای نرگی اند ۵ (آن) منرای کوچک بودند ۱۰ (آن) دانشجو بای خوبی اند

(d) Read and translate:

۵ آن دانشوی زرنک در دانتگاه نیت. ع این کتابهای قدیمی خوب و مفیدند ۷ در آن دانتگابها دانشو اسب نیمتند. ۸ آن کتاب اینجا نیت کجاست ب ۱ تهران شهریت بزرگ و نسبه قدیمی. ۲ آن خازهای کههٔ خراب بودند ۳ آنها پسر نیمتند – مردند ۴ این پسر تمبلی نیست.

۹ این کتابهای قدیمی دبیاره ایران اند؟ ۱۰ آن مردیست بسیار مثهور در ایران.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
  - 1. That old pen is broken.
  - 2. He is not a student.
  - 3. They are good students.
  - 4. He is not in Tehran, but he is happy.
  - 5. Those big old houses are perfectly good.
  - 6. This is a relatively old country.
  - 7. They are clever boys.
  - 8. Where is that man?
  - 9. They weren't in that old city.
- 10. The children weren't there.

وری جھاری

## **Lesson Four**

§ 16 Pronouns. The personal (subject) pronouns are:

man من	I	mâ ما	we
to تو	you	shomâ شما	you
u le	he, she	ishân ایشان	that
ân آن	he, she, it	ânhâ آنها	they

- 16.1 Although they have other uses, these are basically subject pronouns and for the present may be used only as emphatic verbal subjects.
- 16.2 The second-person plural pronoun, شے  $shom\hat{a}$ , is generally used, like the English 'you' and the French vous, as both the singular and plural second person. The singular second-person pronoun, تو to, like the French and Italian tu, is reserved for God, intimate friends and relatives, small children, social inferiors, and derogatory usage.
- 16.3 Although المنشان ishân is properly the third-person plural pronoun, it is used in modern Persian almost exclusively as the "polite" singular to refer deferentially to a singular third person. The demonstrative pronouns (آخ and المنان) are used for all third persons, animate and inanimate, while the true pronouns u and المنان ishân are reserved for animate beings only.
- § 17 The present copulas. The present copula (the English verb 'to be') expresses a predicative state, as in 'he is good.' In their simplest form the copulas are enclitics joined to the predicate.

amam	I am	imيم	we are
i- ئ	you are	id- يىد	you are
ast- است	he/she/it is	and- ند	they are

Since the copulas, as well as all verbal forms in Persian, convey adequate information on person and number to the hearer, the personal pronouns are not necessarily expressed.

17.1 Orthographically the enclitic forms are joined directly to a preceding noun or adjective when it ends in a consonant. Although *ast* may be joined in this manner (and the *alef* dropped), it is generally left as a separate word.

khub-am خوبم	khub-im خوبيم
khub-i خو بي	khub-id خوبيد
khub-ast خوب است (خوبست)	khub-and خوبند

17.2 When joined to words ending in -e and -i, all the enclitics are spelled separately beginning with an alef:

بچەام	bachche-am <sup>1</sup>	بچەايم	bachche-im
بچەاي	bachche-i	بچەايد	bachche-id
بچه است	bachche-ast	بچەا ند	bachche-and
ایرانی ام	irâni-am	ایرانی ایم	irâni-im
ایرانی ای	irâni-i	ایرانی اید	irâni-id
ایرانی است	irâni-ast	ایرانی اند	irâni-and

17.3 Joined to words in  $-\hat{a}$  and -u, the enclitics are written as follows. Note that the *alef* of *-ast* is dropped after  $\hat{a}$ .

kojâ-am كجاام	kojâ-im كجائيم
kojâ-i كجائي	kojâ-id كجائيد
kojâ-st كجاست	kojâ-and كجااند
dâneshju-am دانشجو ام	dâneshju-im دانشجوئيم
dâneshju-i دانشجوئی	dâneshju-id دانشجوئيد
dâneshju-ast دانشجو است	dâneshju-and دانشجو اند

**§18** The negative copula. The negative copulas are formed by adding the personal enclitic endings to *nist*, itself the third-person singular negative copula.

نيستم	místam	نيستيم	nístim
نیستی	nísti	نيستيد	nístid

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The normal pronunciation of the sequence é-a, wherever it occurs, is á. Thus, بجسهام bachché-am is usually pronounced bachchám, بجه است bachché-ast is bachchást, and بجه است bachché-and is bachchánd.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> As a general orthographic rule, the *alef* of *ast* is dropped after  $\hat{a}$  (خباست  $kuj\hat{a}$ -st) and unstressed -i (عبر خوبیست  $d\hat{a}$ neshju-ye khub-i-st). The a of ast may optionally be dropped after u and stressed i, but this is much less common.

## nístand نىستند

§ 19 کیست Kist and چیست chist. When immediately followed by -ast or -and, the interrogatives چیست che ('what') and کی ki ('who') combine to form چیستند/chist) کیستند دhist کیست دhist کیست دhist کیست kistand.

?آن چیست an chist?

?an bachche-ye kist آن يحهٔ كيست

?أن يحهها كيستند أan bachchehâ kístand?

in ketâbhâ darbâre-ye ایسن کشابها دربارهٔ chist? What's that?

Whose child is that?

Who are those children?

What are these books

about?

## Vocabulary 4

مَّانِي âbi light blue âqâ gentleman, sir, Mr. khânom lady, Miss/Mrs./ Ms.¹

پزشک pezeshk doctor, physician

اقا 'When اقا âqâ and خانم khânom precede family names, they take the ezâfe, as خانم 'âqâ-ye alizâde 'Mr. Alizadeh,' خانم 'khânom-e alizâde 'Miss/Mrs./Ms. Alizadeh.' Before or after given names there is no ezâfe, as على آقا âqâ ali, آقا على maryam khânom, مريم خانم مريم خانم أهم khânom maryam. In normal social situations Iranians address each other by title and family name; in fairly familiar situations the given name and title are used. The given name alone is considered excessively familiar.

*ja'be* box جعبه

che what? (combines with -ast as چيست chist and with -and as چيستند

chístand)

zard yellow زرد

sabz green سبز

sormei dark blue

sefid white سفيد

siâh black سیاه

*qermez* red قرمز

ki who? (combines with -ast as علی kist and with

-and as کستند kístand)

mo'allem teacher معلم hamishe always

#### Exercise 4

(a) Give the appropriate form of the verb 'to be' in the present and past:

١ من بميثه خوشحال \_\_\_ ٢ آنها تنبل \_\_\_ ٣ ثنا بحيه ند\_

(b) Give the correct form of the words in parentheses as predicates (assume that ∟ is plural and not the "editorial we"; for ∟ give forms for both the singular and the plural use of the pronoun):

- (c) Give the Persian for the following:
- 1. Who is that kind man?
- 2. What is in that big black box?
- 3. Why aren't you happy?
- 4. I'm not a doctor; I'm a teacher in this city.1
- 5. Who is that woman?
- 6. Isn't she Mrs. Alizadeh?
- 7. I'm a student in this university.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Since "in this city" is simply information added to the main contrast between "doctor" and "teacher," it will follow the verb as a "tag" at the end of the sentence.

#### LESSON FOUR

## Supplementary Vocabulary: Courtesy Phrases

Welcome (in greeting).

khósh-âmadid توش آمدید motashakker-am مرسی Thank you.

Thanks (the French merci has become

a very common casual "thank you").

Much obliged (this phrase has a slight-

ly old-fashioned ring to it, but it is still

quite common).

نجايي مميون kháyli mamnun خيايي مميون kháhésh-mikonam خواهش ميكنم béfarmâid You're welcome (as a reply to "thank

you"). Please (as a request).

Please, be my guest (used when

offering something).

## لارتش ينتجم

## Lesson Five

§ 20 The vocative. The vocative, or direct address, is formed by shifting the stress of a noun from its normal position to the first syllable. In names with preceding titles, the stress is shifted to the first syllable of the title. There is no orthographic representation of this phenomenon.

	bachch <b>é</b>   b <b>á</b> chche	child
، بچه	b <b>á</b> chche	Hey, kid!
. 11.	khânom-e alaví khânom-e alavi	Ms. Alavi
حاتم علوی	kh <b>ấ</b> nom-e alavi	O Ms. Alavi!

- § 21 The possessive *ezâfe*. The *ezâfe* construction is also used to link two syntactically related nouns or noun and pronoun.
  - 21.1 The nouns linked by the *ezâfe* indicate possession by the latter of the former:

Since attributive adjectives must follow immediately the nouns they modify, they intervene between the possessor and the thing possessed in the possessive ezâfe construction.

21.2 The subject pronouns given in §16, as well as the interrogative  $\int ki$ , are used as second members of the ezâfe construction to indicate possession.

#### LESSON FIVE

مادر مهربان شما mâdar-e mehrbân-e shomâ your kind mother والمادي والمادي المادي الماد

21.3 The *ezâfe* construction, while called possessive, is used extensively in Persian and ranges into meanings far beyond the English possessive. It is used, in fact, to indicate any type of syntactical relationship between two nouns.

the road to Tabriz, Tabriz Road Road university student whereabouts in Iran?

Several of these idiomatic constructions have already been introduced, such as åqâ-ye and khânom-e, the ezâfe being required by the nouns âqâ and khânom before family names.

- (a) Most prepositions, like scriber should and club barâ-ye 'for' take their complements through the ezâfe. These should be learned as items of vocabulary.
- (b) All geographical locations require the ezâfe between the geographical formation and the proper name.

the Mediterranean Sea دریای مدیترانه daryâ-ye mediterâne the Mediterranean Sea کوه دماوند kuh-e damâvand

(c) All proper names of towns, cities, streets, buildings, etc. are linked to the generic noun by the *ezâfe*.

shahr-e tehrân the city Tehran شهر تهران اصفهان khiâbân-e esfahân Isfahan Avenue خيابان اصفهان keshvar-e irân the country Iran

21.4 The indefinite enclitic does not intervene in a possessive ezâfe construction as it does in the adjectival ezâfe. When the first noun is indefinite, the phrase week-i az ('one of') and the plural is used with true possessives; with other types of ezâfe, week may precede the construction.

yek-i az ketâbhâ-ye man one of my books, a book of mine

yek dâneshju-ye one (a) university student dâneshgâh

yek-i az dâneshjuhâ-ye one of the students of dâneshgâh-e tehrân Tehran University

§ 22 The long copula. The long forms of the copulas, which are always written as separate words and receive stress, are as follows.

هستم	hástam	I am	هستيم	hástim	we are
هستی	hásti	you are	هستيد	hástid	you are
هست	hást	he/she/it is	هستند	hástand	they are

22.1 The long forms are used for the existential state ('I am, I exist') and where the predicate is preceded by a prepositional phrase, normally rendered in English by 'there is' or 'there are.' The negative of *hast* is *nist*, which is similarly conjugated and is identical to the *nist* that means 'is not.'

.ali hast على هست	Ali is (exists).
dar âshpazkhâne qazâ-i در آشپزخانه غذائی hast.	There is some food in the kitchen.
dar âshpazkhane qazâ-i در آشپزخانه غذائی nist.	There is no food in the kitchen.
dar khâne-ye u ketâbhâ- در خانهٔ او کتابهای خوبی ye khub-i hast.	There are some good books in his house.
dar khâne-ye u ketâbhâ- در خانهٔ او کتابهای خوبی ye khub-i nist.	There are no good books in his house.

22.2 Whereas the short enclitic copulas cannot be stressed, the long forms may be stressed and are therefore used for emphasis, as in the following exchange:

على ايرانى است. Ali is Iranian. مانى ايرانى است. ايرانى است. ايرانى نيست. nákhayr, irâni níst. No, he isn't Iranian. المانى هست! chérâ, irâní hást! Oh yes he is Iranian!

22.3 Following words ending in vowels, the long copulas are often used, especially in every-day speech, to avoid the conjunction of two vowels, especially two like vowels. This applies particularly to the second person singular and the first and second persons plural. In this case the long copula does not take stress.

.man irâní-hastam. I'm Iranian من ایرانی هستم.

#### LESSON FIVE

Hastam is used here to avoid *irâní-am*, a combination of vowels that may be avoided but is also fairly tolerated in spoken Persian.

Hastand is used here to avoid kojâ-and, a combination of vowels that is avoided whenever possible.

*Hastid* is used here to avoid the *i-i* of *âmrikâi-id*, a combination of vowels that is avoided whenever possible.

*Hastand* is used here to avoid  $ket\hat{a}bh\hat{a}$ -ye  $kh\hat{u}b$ -i-and, unstressed i followed by a, a combination that is tolerated but often avoided in spoken Persian.

## Vocabulary 5

		•	
از	az from (prep.)	دور	dur distant, far (az from)
اسم	esm name	راه	<i>râh</i> road, way
امرۈز	emruz today	على	ali Ali (masc. given name)
با	bâ with, by (preposition)	عليزاده	alizâde Alizadeh (family
برای	barâ-ye for (preposition)		name)
به، بـ	be to (preposition; may be	مادر	mâdar mother
	written as a separate word or joined directly	مريم	maryam Maryam (fem. name)
	to following word)	نزدیک	nazdik near, close (with
پدر	pedar father		ezâfe or be, to)
جا	<i>jâ</i> place	یک	yek one, a (adj., precedes
جديد	<i>jadid</i> new		word it modifies)
دختر	dokhtar girl, daughter	یکی	yek-i one (pronoun)

#### Exercise 5

(a) Give both affirmative and negative answers:

۳ او مادر علی است؟

۹ من پدر آن بچه ام؟

۵ کنابهای ثنا اینها بستند؟

۹ او پدر خانم علیزاده است؟

۹ او پدر خانم علیزاده است؟

۹ اینها کتابهای ما بستند؟

۱۰ قای علیزاده با ثنا بود؟

(b) Give appropriate answers to the following:

اکتابهای جدید ما کها به ستند؟

الا تابهای جدید ما کها به ستند؟

الا خانهٔ ثعاب اینجا نزدیک است؟

الا خانهٔ ثعاب اینجا نزدیک است؟

الا تور ثعا چیست؟

الا تور ثعا چیست؟

الا تو دختر او با ثعا بودند؟

الا تو بر کوچک او در خانه است؟

الا تو برای کسیت؟

(c) Change the following to the 'one of' construction (e.g., کـــــاب مـــن ketâb-e man > يکي از کتابهای من yek-i az ketâbhâ-ye man):

اکتاب جدید علی ۴ بحیهٔ آن زن ۷ دانشجری دانشگاه ۲ خانهٔ آقای علمنراده ۵ پسر مادر من ۸ خانهٔ این شهر ۳ شهر ایران عراه دور آن کثور

(d) Read and translate into English:

۱ خانهٔ جدید مادر و پدر شما کجاست؟

۲ امروز آن مرد مهربان ایرانی در آن شهر بود.

#### LESSON FIVE

۳ شهر تهران از آمریکا خیلی دور است. ۴ خانم علیزاده، شما مادر آن دختر کوچک هستید؟ ۵ خانهٔ آنها کجای تهران بود؟ ۶ یکی از این کتابهای نو برای علی است.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
- 1. What is that little boy's name?
- 2. Is this for your wife?
- 3. No, it's not for her; it's for my little daughter.
- 4. What is that new book of yours about?
- 5. We aren't Iranians; we're Americans.
- 6. Your house is not far from the city.

#### Review I

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for Lessons 1-5.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ این آقا معلم است. ۲ آن خانم معلمیت بسیار مهربان ۳ دختر کوچک شابهیشه خوشحال بود. ۲ آقا، در آن حعبهٔ بزرک چیست؟ ۵ دانشو پلی دانشگاه کجا اند؟ ۲ اینان زنهای نسبة زرئی اند ۲ اینا ضدی از شهر پلی ایران پزشک بود. ۹ معلم آن جوان زرنگ ایرانی شانید؟

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. What was his name?
  - 2. Our house is fairly near Tehran.
  - 3. Iran is a large and very old country.
  - 4. Where are my books and pens?
  - 5. The windows in (of) this house are very small.
  - 6. Aren't you a student?
  - 7. What was that book about?
  - 8. Isn't your new pen green?
  - 9. No, it's not green; it's black.
- 10. There are some very small houses in this city.

ہریں ششم

## **Lesson Six**

§ 23 The infinitive. All Persian infinitives end in stressed -dán or -tán. Following vowels and voiced consonants the ending is -dan; following voiceless consonants the ending is -tan.

n ماندن	nân <b>dán</b>	to remain
a دادن	lâ <b>dán</b>	to give
۾ گرفتن	eref <b>tán</b>	to take

Although in quoting items of vocabulary the Persian infinitive is equated with the English infinitive, in fact their uses hardly ever coincide. The idiomatic uses of the Persian infinitive will be introduced later.

§ 24 The past stem and the past absolute tense. The past absolute tense of all verbs is formed by (1) dropping the infinitival ending -an, giving a past stem in d or t, and (2) adding the following enclitic personal endings:

am (I) -	- <b>im</b> (we)
ن -i (you)	- <b>id</b> (you)
— — (he, she, it)	and (they) ند

With the addition of the above endings, the stress remains constant on the final syllable of the past stem. An example of the past absolute conjugation, from the verb *âvordan* 'to bring,' is as follows:

âvórdam آوردم	I brought	âvórdim آوردیم	we brought
âvórdi آوردی	you brought	âvórdid آوردید	you brought
âvórd آورد	he/she/it brought	âvórdand آوردند	they brought

- 24.1 Expressed pronominal subjects are not necessary in Persian since they are implicit in the verb. The pronouns are expressed only under the following conditions:
  - (a) special emphasis is given to the pronoun:

Shomâ raftid? Did you go? شما رفتيد؟ . Did you go

من هم رفتم. I went too. من هم رفتم. آنها هم آمدند. ânhâ-ham âmadand. They came too.

(c) two different subject pronouns are contrasted:

. I went and he stayed من رفتم و او ماند.

- 24.2 The negative past absolute of all verbs is formed by prefixing stressed  $n\hat{a}$ , which removes the stress from its position in the affirmative.
- (a) The negative prefix is connected orthographically to all verbs beginning with consonants.

nágereftim we did not take نگرفتیم náraftand they did not go

(b) In verbs beginning with vowels other than i-,<sup>1</sup> a -y- is infixed between the negative prefix and the *alef* of the stem.

| náyafzudam (two spellings نیافزودم، نیفزودم | náyafzudam (two spellings افزودم منیفرودم | âvord (two spellings آورد منیاورد | oftâdam (two spellings نیافتادم، نیفتادم | oftâdam (two spellings افتادم

Some writers, preferring a more "phonetic" orthography, drop the alef after the infixed -y- in stems beginning with a- and o- (e.g., either نیفزودم or نیفزودم for náyafzudam and either فیفتادم for náyoftâdam). The pronunciation remains the same in either case. In verbs beginning with â- the alef cannot be dropped, but the retention of the madde is a matter of personal preference (e.g., either فیآورد or مناورد for náyâvord).

- 24.3 The past absolute tense corresponds generally to the English simple past.
- (a) It indicates an action done once and completed in the past.

be tehrân raftam. I went to Tehran. يه تهران رفتم. be u qalam-i dâdam. I gave him a pen.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>There is only one verb in Persian that begins with the vowel i, namely ایستادن stâdan 'to stand, stop.' With this verb the negative prefix may be either attached directly to the alef as نه ایستادم (same pronunciation).

#### LESSON SIX

(b) The past absolute of stative verbs indicates that the state ceased to pertain in the past.

pedar-e mehdi ostâd bud. Mehdi's father was a پدر مهدی استاد بود. professor (i.e., he is no longer one).

.hich chiz námând هيچ چيز نماند

Nothing remained (there was nothing left).

.námândam نماندم

I didn't stay (i.e., I moved on at some point in the past).

(c) It is used for actions "as good as done" and states just perceived to have come about.

khob, raftam. خوب، رفتم

OK, I'm gone (I've got to go now).

ali âmad. على آمد

Here's Ali (he is just perceived to have come).

hâlâ khordam. حالا خوردم

I've just eaten.

§ 25 The specific direct-object marker. Definite or specific direct objects of verbs are marked by the enclitic  $\frac{1}{2}$ , -râ, which may be either attached orthographically or left separate. This enclitic marks direct objects that are specific, grammatically or semantically. Nouns are construed as specific in the following cases:

(a) all proper names.

?irân-râ didid ایرانرا دیدید ?ali-râ kojâ didid على را كحا دىدىد

Did you see Iran?

Where did you see Ali?

(b) all personal and demonstrative pronouns. Note that man 'I' combines with râ to form the irregular مسرا márâ; to 'you' combines regularly with râ but the 

?مرا كحا دىديد márâ kojâ didid مرا

.tórâ nádidam ترا ندیدم

. ân-râ gereftand آنرا گرفتند فتند

I didn't see you.

Where did you see me?

They took it.

(c) all nouns described by demonstrative adjectives or by the possessive ezâfe.

. آن خانههارا نديدم ân khânehâ-râ nádidam. I didn't see those houses

? خانهٔ اورا خریدید khâne-ye u-râ kharidid? Did you buy his house خانهٔ اورا خریدید

آن کتابهای شمارا an ketâbhâ-ye shomâ-râ They bought those books آن کتابهای شمارا kharidand of yours.

. خانهٔ على را نديدم khâne-ye ali-râ nadidam. I didn't see Ali's house.

(d) Since the complement of the phrase يكى از yek-i az ('one of') and the negative يكى از hich yek az ('none of') is always considered specific, the entire phrase is construed as definite and is therefore marked with -râ. As a general rule, when the last element in a direct-object string is specific, it is marked with -râ.

يكى از آنهارا خواستم. yek-i az ânhâ-râ khâstam I wanted one of those.

I didn't bring any of your هيچيك از كتابهاى hichyek az ketâbhâ-ye I didn't bring any of your shomâ-râ náyâvordam. books.

(e) The reciprocal pronouns يكديگر yekdigar and هديگر hamdigar ('each other') are always construed as definite.

همدیگررا دیدیم. We saw each other.

. با yekdigar-râ nádidand. They didn't see each other.

(f) True indefinite or non-specific direct objects are marked by the indefinite enclitic but not by  $-r\hat{a}$ .

sedâ-i náshenidam I didn't hear a sound. دیگری خواستم. دیگری خواستم. I wanted another book (any other book).

A specific indefinite object ('a certain...') takes both the indefinite enclitic and the object marker  $-r\hat{a}$ .

. I heard a (certain) sound. I heard a (certain) sound.

استم. دیگری اخواستم. ketâb-e degar-i-râ I asked for another khâstam (particular) book.

### LESSON SIX

# Vocabulary 6

آوردن	âvordan to bring	دیگر	digar other
اهل	ahl people; ahl-e native of,	روی	ru-ye on
	from	شنيدن	shenidan to hear
بودن	budan to be	كتابخانه	<i>ketâbkhâne</i> library
چرا	chérâ yes (in response to a	گرفتن	gereftan to take, take hold
	negative question), oh		of; to grab, grasp; to get,
	yes (contradicts a nega-		receive
	tive statement)	هم	-ham (enclitic, may not
چيز	chiz thing (usually	1	follow a verb) too, also;
	tangible)		(with negatives) either;
خواستن	khâstan to want, to ask for		ham X ham Y both X and
دادن	dâdan to give	_	Y
دوست	dust friend	همدیگر	hamdigar each other
ديدن	didan to see	یکدیگر	yekdigar each other
ديروز	diruz yesterday		
-			

## **Exercises 6**

(a) Give the proper ending for the verbs given in parentheses:

۱ ما دویدن).	۸ ما (کر فتن).	۱۴ تو آنهارا به او (دادن).
۲ آنها (آوردن).	۹ آن را اینها (خواست).	۱۵ ثنا (شنیدن)؟
۳ ایثان چه (کرفتن)؟	۱۰ من آنجا (بودن).	۱۶ دوسهای ایثان اینهارا
۴ او (نشنیدن).	۱۱ ما ایران را (دیدن).	برای ما (آوردن).
۵ من (آوردن).	۱۲ این صندلی را کمی	۱۷ او در آن شهر (نبودن).
ء تو این را (خواست).	(آوردن)؟	۱۸ دانشج کا کتابهارا (کرفت).
۷ ثما مرا (دیدن).	۱۳ من قلم شاراً (كر فتن).	

(b) Give affirmative answers to the questions. Contradict the negative statements (e.g., in khub nist > chérâ, khub-ast).

(c) Read and translate:

۱ دوسهای مارا ندیدند ۲ آن قلم دیگر را خواست. ۳ کتاب مرا به او دادی؟ ۴ آنهارا شنیدم. ۵ آن چنر کارا چرا کر فتید؟

- (d) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Didn't you hear that? Yes, I did.1
- 2. My friend brought these books to the library yesterday.<sup>2</sup>

- 3. Who wanted these things?
- 4. They gave the pens to our friends.
- 5. I didn't see Maryam's mother yesterday.
- 6. We too saw them on the table.
- 7. I didn't bring anything.
- 8. They gave them to my friend.
- 9. I saw you in the library yesterday.
- Didn't you want this book? Yes, I did.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> For the English short answer, the full verb is given in Persian.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> This sentence contains all the elements of a Persian sentence, the normal, unmarked order of which is (1) temporal expressions, (2) subject, (3) direct object, (4) prepositional phrases modifying the verb, (5) verb. Any element out of this order is marked, highlighted, or emphasized in some way.

### LESSON SIX

# Supplementary Vocabulary: Countries, Peoples, and Languages

cor	untry	citizen گام	language زبان
âzarbâyjân آذبا يجان	Azerbaijan	âzarbâyjân آدبايجانی	i تکی torki
âlmân آكمان	Germany	âlmâni آلمانی	âlmâni آلمانی
âmrikâ آمريك	USA <sup>1</sup>	âmrikâi آمریک انی	englisi انگاری
armanestân ادمنتان	Armenia	armani ارمنی	armani ارمنی
orupâ اروما	Europe	orupâi اروپائی	_
ozbakestân ازبکستان	Uzbekistan	ozbak ازبک	ozbaki ازبی
espânyâ الماني	Spain	espânyâi ابانی	espânyâi² ابایانی
ostorâlyâ انترالي		ostorâlyâi استرالياني	englisi انگاری
esrâil اسرائيل	Israel	esrâili اسرائيي	ebri عبری
otrish اطریش	Austria	otrishi الحريثي	âlmâni آلمانی
afqânestân افغانستان	Afghanistan	فان afqân	fârsi فارسی pashtu
aljazâyer الجزار		aljazâyeri الحزايري	arabi عربی
englestân انكستان	England	englis انگارس	englisi انگاری
ايتالي itâlyâ	Italy	itâlyâi اِتَالِيانَى	itâlyâi וِيَّالِيانِي
irân וקוט די		irâni إيراني	fârsi فارسی
belzhik بلۋيک	Belgium	belzhiki بلژيکي	-
bolqârestân بلغارستان	Bulgaria	bolqâr بلغار	bolqâri بلغاري
pâkestân باكستان		pâkestâni پاکتانی	ordu اردو
portoqâl برتعت ل		portoqâli پرتقالی	portoqâli پرتقالی
tâjikestân ما جيكستان		tâjik تاجيك	fârsi فارسی
torkmanestân تركمنتان		torkman ترکمن	torkmani ترکمنی
torkiye ترکیہ	Turkey	tork Te	torki ترکی

Occasionally the old-fashioned اتازونی etâzuni for the 'United States' will also be encountered.

2 Also, اسپانیول espânyol.

tunes تونس	Tunesia	tunesi تونسي	arabi عرلي
chin چين	China	chini چينې	chini چيني
dânmârk وانارك	Denmark	dânmârki دانارکی	dânmarki داناري
rusiye روپ		rus נפט	rusi נפת
zhâpon ژاپي	Japan	zhâponi (أپئ	zhâponi ژاپئ
suriye צניי	Syria	suri הوری	arabi عربی
sued yet	Sweden	suedi مومدی	suedi نوندي
suis مویس	Switzerland	suisi موتسي	_
erâq عراق	Iraq	erâqi عراقی	arabi عربي
arabestân وبستان	Arabia	J arab	arabi عربی
farânse فرانسه	France	farânsavi فرانوی	farânse فرانسه
felestin فلطين	Palestine	felestini فلطيني	arabi عربی
qerqizestân قرقبرستان	Kyrghyzstan	qerqiz قرقىز	qerqizi قرقنری
qazâqestân قزاقتسان	Kazakhstan	qazâq قزاق	qazâqi قزاتی
الأدا kânâdâ	Canada	kânâdâi كاناداتي	_
kordestân کر دستان		s skord	kordi کردی
gorjestân کر جستان	Georgia	gorji کر می	gorji کر جی
lobnân لبنان	Lebanon	lobnâni لبناني	arabi عرتی
lehestân کستان	Poland	lehestâni كساني	lehestâni لسآنی
majârestân محارستان		majâr کار	majâri محاری
marâkesh مراکش	Morocco	marâkeshi مراكثي	arabi عربي
mesr محر	Egypt	mesri مصری	arabi عربي
norvezh לכנ	Norway	norvezhi 'روژی	norvezhi לפרש
holand حلند	Holland	holandi هلندي	holandi هلندي
hendustân ہندوستان	India	hendi ہنری	hendi ہندی
yunân يو ان	Greece	yunâni يوناني	yunâni يونانى

# لارتن هفتم

## Lesson Seven

§ 26 Compound verbs. The compound verb, the type that accounts for the vast majority of verbs in Persian, consists of a non-verbal element and a verbal element. The non-verbal element may be (1) a noun such as هُمُ لَا شَعْهُ 'work' as in the compound کار کسردن kâr-kardan 'to work, to do something,' (2) an adjective like پیدا کردن found' as in the compound بیدا کردن paydâ 'found' as in the compound بیدا کردن paydâ-kardan 'to find,' or (3) an adverb like پیش رفتن pish 'forward' as in بدا کردن pish-raftan 'to advance, go forward,' or به bar 'up, over' as in برداشتن bar-dâshtan 'to pick up.'

26.1 In compound infinitives stress is on the final syllable:

بزرگ شدن bozorg-shodán to grow up بزرگ شدن bar-dâshtán to pick up

26.2 In finite compound forms stress falls on the final syllable of the non-verbal element, and voice intonation falls rapidly away on the verbal element, which receives no stress at all.

They returned from egashtand school yesterday.

and a paydâ on they returned from school yesterday.

They found my pen.

and a paydâ on they found my pen.

and a paydâ on they found my pen.

. Retâb-râ bár-dâshtam I picked the book up.

26.3 In the negative, the negative prefix takes its place before the verbal element and removes the primary stress from the non-verbal element, leaving a secondary stress on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

26.4 Generic objects form compounds with the verb. They are not marked

with the direct-object marker.

ketâb-khândam كتاب خواندم.

I read books.

nâme-neveshtand نامه نوشتند.

They wrote letters.

§ 27 The continuous prefix. The prefix  $\mathcal{G}$  m $\hat{i}$ - is added in all tenses to all verbs (except the two noted below) to convey a progressive, continuous, or  $h_a$ -bitual aspect to the action or state of the verb.

míraftam ميرفتم، مىرفتم.

I was going, I used to go

... be shahr míraftam ke...

I was going to town when...

har ruz be shahr هر روز به شهر میرفتم. míraftam.

I used to go to town every day.

Two verbs, بودن budan 'to be' and simple داشتن dâshtan 'to have,' never take the mi- prefix in any tense. Some compounds of dâshtan (like مرداشتن bar-dâshtan 'to pick up') do take the mi- prefix and others do not; they will be noted in the vocabularies.

.javân budam جوان بودم

I was young / I used to be

young.

.pul dâshtand يول داشتند

They had / used to have money.

Orthographically the continuous prefix may be either left separate or joined to the verb; there is no standard practice. When joined to verbs beginning with alef, the prefix may be joined directly to the alef or, more "phonetically," the alef may be dropped as with the negative prefix. When joined to verbs beginning with  $\hat{a}$ -, the alef is retained, whereas the madde may be dropped or not at will.

27.2 In the past absolute of compound verbs the continuous prefix is added to the verbal element. Stress, however, remains on the last syllable of the non-verbal element and does not shift to the prefix as it does in simple verbs.

dár-miraftam درمیرفتم.

I was running away

### LESSON SEVEN

We used to live there.

If, however, the continuousness of the action is to be particularly emphasized, an added stress may fall on the continuous prefix, resulting in a dual stress pattern.

I was running away.

We used to live there (but

not any longer).

27.3 The negative past continuous is formed by prefixing the negative particle to the continuous particle. When followed by *mi*- the negative particle always changes to *né*-, giving inémi-. In compound verbs the negative prefix takes primary stress, and a secondary stress falls on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

§ 28 The past participle. The past participle, like the English past participle, has a passive force with transitive verbs and a past force with intransitive verbs. It is formed by adding stressed  $-\acute{e}$  to the past stem.

§ 29 The present perfect tense. The present perfect is formed by adding the present copulas to the past participle; stress remains on the last syllable of the participle. This tense corresponds generally to the English present perfect—with the important exceptions noted below. The present perfect conjugation of *raftan* is as follows:

rafté-am I've gone رفته ایم rafté-im we've gone رفته ایم rafté-i you've gone رفته ای rafté-id you've gone رفته ایت rafté-ast he/she/it's gone رفته است rafté-and they've gone

The negative is formed by prefixing the stressed negative ná- to the participle.

nárafte-am I haven't gone نرفته ایم nárafte-im we haven't gone نرفته ای nárafte-i you haven't gone نرفته اید nárafte-i you haven't gone نرفته اید nárafte-ast s/he hasn't gone نرفته اند

29.1 In Persian the present perfect tense is called the "relational past" (مانف mâzi-e naqli), and it is used for any action that was accomplished or state that pertained in the past, the effects of which are still pertinent or felt to be relevant in some way to a present situation. This definition covers many uses of the English present perfect, but the Persian tense has applications to which the English present perfect does not correspond at all. When historical truths are felt to be of special relevance to the present, or to transcend the past, they are couched in this tense. Compare and contrast the following examples.

In the first example it is implied that he is no longer king: the state no longer pertains and is not considered of relevance to the present. In the second example it is still true now that he was both a king and great: the historical validity of the statement holds true today.

The first example is a simple statement of fact: at one point in time he died without any special significance for the present. The second example is a historical fact that is still pertinent: it may be a source of pride for the city of Ghazna that Biruni is buried there, or one may be thinking of the historical significance of where he died, but the relevance is stated in terms of the present.

In the first example Ali's father is no longer a physician: he may have taken up another profession or he may be dead. In either case, the "pastness" is stressed. In the second example it is of some particular relevance to a present situation that Ali's father was a doctor in the past: his "having been a physician" is emphasized, not the pastness of the state.

29.2 The present perfect continuous is formed by adding the continuous prefix *mi*- to the participle. The negative present perfect continuous is regularly

### LESSON SEVEN

formed.

در پنجسالگی به آن dar panjsâlegi be ân I used to go to that kindergarten در پنجسالگی به آن kudakestân mírafte- when I was five years old (and

that I did so is of some relevance to the topic at hand).

némirafte-am I wasn't in the habit of going.

The present perfect continuous is used to describe an act or state that was continuous or habitual in the past, the historical validity of which still holds true now and is of relevance.

ebn-e sinâ dar esfahân ابن سینا در اصفهان تندگی میک ده است. zendegi-mikarde-ast

Avicenna lived in Isfahan.

### Vocabulary 7

Nouns

englisi English (language) انگیسی

dars lesson درس

روزنامه ruznâme newspaper

زان; zabân language, tongue

sedâ voice, sound

أورسي fârsi Persian (language)1

kâr work, job, thing (one does)

madrase school مدرسه

<sup>1</sup>The name of this language has been "Persian" in English for at least five hundred years. The term "Farsi" should be avoided.

Verbs

âmadan to come

برداشتن bar-dâshtan to pick up (takes the mi- prefix)

bar-gashtan to return, come back, go back, turn around برگشتن paydâ-kardan to find

pish-raftan to go forward, advance, progress

khândan to read, call, recite خواندن

clashtan to have, hold (never takes the mi- prefix)

dars-khândan to study ('to study something, Persian, physics, درس خواندن &c.' does not normally need the dars- member of the compound: فارسى خواندن fârsi-khândan normally conveys 'to study Persian' as well as 'to read Persian')

رفتن *raftan* to go زندگی کردن *zendegi-kardan* to live

کار کردن kâr-kardan to work, be doing something madrase-raftan to go to school, attend school neveshtan to write نوشتن

### Exercise 7

(a) Give the past habitual/progressive of the verbs in parentheses:

۱ دوست من (نامه نوشتن). ۲ حرا کار ما (پیش نرفتن)؟ ۳ مادر و پدر من در این خانه (زندگی ۸ شما از مدرسه (آمدن). ۴ من از شهر به خانه (برگشتن). ۵ آن کتابهارا ما (خواندن).

(b) Give the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses and give the meaning:

۱ من هم یک نامدای (نوشق). ۲ قلم مراکی (برداشت)؟ ۳ ثما ہم (مدرسه رفتن). ۴ او هم کتابی (نوشتن). ۵ در این خانه کی (زندگی کر دن)؟

- (c) Translate into Persian:
- 1. Who has come today?
- 2. I used to study Persian.
- 3. The newspapers were on the table.
- 4. I used to read a lot of books.
- 5. They haven't returned from school.
- 6. You haven't worked today.
- 7. We were writing letters yesterday.
- 8. Haven't they given it to you?
- The library had a lot of books.
- 10. She hasn't gone to school; she's too little.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Use the present perfect tense.

# لاربس هشتم

# **Lesson Eight**

§ 30 Uses of چه che and كدام kodâm.

30.1 Adjectival che.

(a) Exclamative. Che followed by an adjective is equivalent to the English 'how ...!'

!che khub چه خوب!

How good!

!in khâne che ârâm-ast اين خانه چه آرام است!

How quiet this house is!

Followed by a noun in the absolute state or the plural, *che* means 'what sort aof, what kind of...?'

?in che vaz'-ast این چه وضع است

What sort of situation is this?

?in che harfhâ-st این چه حرفهاست؟

What kind of talk is this?

(b) When *che* is followed by a noun, or noun + adjective, in the indefinite state, it means 'what a ...!'

.che shahr-i چه شهری!

What a city!

!. che sâkhtemânhâ-i چه ساختمانهائي!

What buildings!

حسين چه دوست hosayn che dust-e khub-i- What a good friend!
خسين خه دوست!

Hossein is!

(c) The interrogative adjectival *che* ('what?') is normally followed by a noun, singular or plural, with the indefinite enclitic. When the unmodified noun following *che* is construed as non-specific, it does not take  $-r\hat{a}$  when it is direct object.

? **che** shahr-i چه شهری

What city?

? che shahrḥâ-i چه شهرهاً تي ؟

What cities?

? che ketâb-i khândid چه کتابی خواندید

What book did you read?

**che** ketâbhâ-i khânde-id? What books have you چه کتابهائی خوانده اید؟ read?

The modified noun in this construction is usually construed as specific and thus requires  $-r\hat{a}$  when direct object even though it bears the indefinite enclitic required by *che*.

Likewise, unmodified nouns take the object marker when they are construed as specific.

(d) The plural of جها che is چها chehâ ('what all?').

Other interrogatives also admit similar plural constructions.

30.2 The interrogative adjective  $kod\hat{a}m$  ('which?') precedes the noun it modifies. As direct objects, nouns modified by  $kod\hat{a}m$  are always construed as specific and require  $-r\hat{a}$ .

### LESSON EIGHT

§ 31 Comparison of adjectives. The comparative suffix for all adjectives is -tar. This suffix may be joined to an adjective ending in a connective letter or left separate, except with adjectives ending in the silent he, to which no suffix is ever joined directly.

بزرگ bozórg big > خوتاه kutâh short > ساده sâdé simple > pishrafté advanced > bozorgtár bigger بزرگتر (بزرگتر) kutâhtár shorter کوتاهتر (کوتاهتر) sâdetár simpler سادهتر pishraftetár more پیشرفتهتر advanced

31.1 The preposition for the second term of comparison, when it is a noun, pronoun or numeral, is |az| az. The az-phrase normally precedes the comparative adjective, although it may also follow.

از آن ساده تر = ساده تر از  $az\ \hat{a}n\ s\hat{a}detar = s\hat{a}detar$  simpler than that  $az\ \hat{a}n$ 

شما از من بلندترید shomâ az man bolandtar- You are taller than I am. (بلندتر از منید). id (bolandtar az man-id)

'Much' with the comparative is expressed by بسيار besyâr, خيلی be-marâtib, all of which may precede the element of comparison when it precedes the comparative adjective.

zahrâ az shirin kháyli زهرا از شیرین خیلی khoshgeltar-ast or خوشگلتر است. zahrâ kháyli az shirin زهرا خیلی از شیرین خوشگلتر است. khoshgeltar-ast

Zahra is much prettier than Shirin.

kâr-e man az kâr-e کار من از کار شما **بسیار** shomâ **besyâr** sakhttarast

My job is much more difficult than yours.

in keshvar **be-marâteb** این کشور **بمراتب** pishraftetar az ân پیشرفته تر از آن کشور keshvar-ast

This country is much more advanced than that country.

31.2 The comparative adjective with از همسه az hame is equivalent to the English 'the most ... of all.'

in mive az hame این میوه از همه khoshmazetar-ast

This fruit is the most delicious of all.

رضا بلند**تر از همه** است rezâ bolandtar az hame- Reza is the tallest of all.

sâkhtemân-e az-hame- ساختمان **از همه** بلندتر bolandtar-e irân ایران کدام است؟ kodâm-ast? Which is the tallest building in Iran?

- 31.3 The superlative suffix is ترين -tarin, which, like the comparative suffix, may or may not be attached orthographically to the adjective (with the exception of the silent he, to which it may not be attached). The -tarin adjective is a "bound form," meaning that it must precede a noun and cannot occur without a following noun.
- (a) As an attributive adjective the superlative directly precedes the noun it modifies. 'In' after a superlative is rendered by the  $ez\hat{a}fe$ .

khoshgeltarin dokhtar خو شگلترین دختر the prettiest girl khoshgeltarin pesarhâ خوشگلترین بسرها the best-looking boys mofidtarin ketâb-e in مفیدترین کتاب این ketâbkhâne the most useful book in this library مفیدترین کتابهای این *mofidtarin ketâbhâ-*ye in کتابخانه *ketâbkhâne* the most useful books in this library sakhttarin ruz-e سختترین روز زندگانی zendegâni-e man the most difficult day of my life sakhttarin ruzhâ-ye سختترین روزهای zendegâni-e man زندگانی من the most difficult days of my life

(b) As predicate, the superlative must be followed by a noun; it never occurs as a free predicate adjective (instead, the -tar az hame construction given above is used).

Note particularly the order of the second and third examples above: equational

### LESSON EIGHT

sentences with demonstratives as subjects and specific/definite predicates have either the copulative verb between the subject and predicate, as in the second example (ân-bud ...), or the order of subject and predicate reversed, as in the third example (... in-ast). That is, in either case the equational verb follows the demonstrative immediately.

(c) The superlative adjective followed by the  $ez\hat{a}fe$  and a plural noun renders 'the most ... of ...'

sakhttarin-e ruzhâ-ye سخت**رین** روزهای zendegâni-e man زندگانی من mashhurtarin-e hame مشهور **ترین** همه dâneshgâhhâ-ye irân دانشگاههای ایران pishraftetarin-e keshvarhâ-ye mashreqzamin

the most difficult (one) of the days of my life. the most famous of all the universities in Iran the most advanced of the countries in the East

- 31.4 Irregular comparatives and superlatives.
- (a) Although colloquially خوبتر khubtar and خوبترين khubtarin are occasionally heard, the preferred comparative and superlative forms of khub are derived from the now obsolete adjective به beh ('good'), giving بهترین 'behtar 'better,' بهترین 'behtarin 'best.'

in ketâb **behtar** az ân این کتاب **بهتر** از آن ketâb-ast کتاب است. in-ast **behtarin** jâ-ye اینست **بهترین** جای شهر shahr-e mâ

This book is **better** than that book.

This is the **best** place in our city.

(b) The word that serves as the comparative of بسميار besyâr and زياد ziâd ('much, many') is بيشتر bishtar ('more,' also occasionally simply بيشتر bish).

in az ân bishtar-ast. این از آن بیشتر است.

This is more than that.

Followed by an ezâfe, bishtar means 'most of':

Most of his friends were there.

31.5 Both the adverbial 'more than ever' and the adjectival 'more ... than ever' are rendered by the phrase بيش از پيش bish az pish.

kâr-e mâ bish az pish کار ما بیش از پیش پیش بیش pish-miraft

Our work was progressing more than ever.

ân tâjer bish az pish آن تاجر بیش از پیش movaffaq-ast

That merchant is more successful than ever.

- 31.6 In comparative sentences of the type given above, the preposition for the second term of comparison is az. In the following cases, the conjunction of comparison,  $\forall t\hat{a}$ , is used:
  - (a) when the second term falls after the main verb.

شما بیشتر کار کردید تا shomâ bishtar kâr-kardid You worked more than I ... tâ man (did).

in sâdetar-ast tâ ân این ساده تر است تا آن.

This is simpler than that.

(b) when the second term is preceded by a preposition or is a direct object.

bishtar barâ-ye ânhâ kâr- I did more work for them بیشتر برای آنها کار کردم kardam tâ barâ-ye than (I did) for you. shomâ

ân-râ bishtar dust آنرا بیشتر دوست داشتم dâshtam tâ in-râ

I liked that better than this.

(c) when the comparison is not based on any distinct quality.

in bishtar âb-ast tâ این بیشتر آب است تا هراب. sharâb

This is more water **than** (it is) wine.

bishtar deh-ast t**â** shahr بیشتر ده است **تا** شهر.

It's more a village than (it is) a city.

## Vocabulary 8

ârâm quiet, calm tâ than (for usage, see âsân easy آسان §31.6) بلند boland tall, high; loud tâbestân summer ruz day روز له به bah bah wow!, oh! (excla-زمستان zemestân winter mation of delight, sur-ود zud early; quick, fast prise, approval, etc.) sakht hard, difficult behtar better bishtar more; bishtar-e sard cold سرد most of kodâm which? (adj.,

### LESSON EIGHT

precedes the noun it modifies) kutâh short, low garm warm marâteb مراتب marâteb rank, degree; be marâteb much (in comparatives) نامه nâme letter واي vây woe!, oh no! hamechiz everything همه چيز hame-ye all (of) [for 'all this' and 'all that,' hame combines with in and ân as ابن همه inhame and ânhame, often ان همه written together as one النهمه کار ,word, e.g. 'nothing')

inhame kâr 'all this همهٔ این کار work,' but hame-ye in kâr 'all of this work'l

har every, each (precedes هر word it modifies, as ('har ruz 'every day روز

harkodâm each one, every هر كدام

hich (+ interrogative) any, ever; (+ neg.) no, none (hich precedes a noun in the nonspecific state, as hich chiz-i هیچ چیزی

### Exercise 8

(a) Change the following statements to exclamations using واى or واى (e.g.: in khub-ast > bah-bah! in, che khub-ast!)

> ع کار سختی بود. ۱ آن شهر آرام بود. ۷ مدرسه قدیمی است. ۲ وخرخومت ۳ آن درس سخت بود. ۸ امروز روز سر دست. ۹ دیروز کرم بود. ۴ زمتان سردی بود. ۵ این تابتان کرم است. ۱۰ اینها کتابهای آسانی اند

(b) Make questions of the following statements using کدام or چه:

۵ امروز روزنامه خواندهام. ۶ از آنجا کتابهائی برداشتند. ٧ آن خانم چيزهائي ميخواست. ۸ مریم چیزهائی به شما داده است.

۱ در ایران شهرهائی دیدم. ۲ در آمریکا کار میکردیم. ۳ دیروز کارې کردند. ۴ در خانهٔ على نامهاى خوانديم.

(c) Answer the following questions:

(d) Make sentences using the comparative (e.g.:  $in-bozorg-\hat{a}n > in$  az  $\hat{a}n$  bozorgtar-ast):

(e) Make superlative constructions two ways (e.g.: in khâne bozorg-ast > (1) bozorgtarin khâne in-ast, (2) khâne-ye bozorgtar az hame in-ast):

# لارتن نضم

## **Lesson Nine**

- § 32 Other plurals. In addition to the suffix  $-h\hat{a}$ , which can be used to form the plural of any noun in Persian, especially in the more informal spoken idiom, there are several other plural formations in the literary language.
- 32.1 Substantives denoting animate beings, some parts of the body that occur in pairs, and a few other nouns (determined by idiomatic usage) form their plurals by suffixing  $\sqrt{-\hat{a}n}$ .
  - (a) This suffix is added directly to all nouns ending in consonants and -i.

ان ân >	أنان ânân those, they (persons)
<mard></mard>	<i>mard<b>ân</b></i> men مردان
<irâni td="" ایرانی<=""><td><i>irâni<b>ân</b></i> Iranians ایرانیا<b>ن</b></td></irâni>	<i>irâni<b>ân</b></i> Iranians ایرانیا <b>ن</b>
دست dast >	دستان dast <b>ân</b> hands
<pre>cerakht &gt;</pre>	derakht <b>ân</b> trees درختا <b>ن</b>

(b) When this suffix is added to nouns ending in silent he, the he is dropped and a -g- is infixed before the plural suffix.

< dide >	dide <b>gân</b> eyes دیدگان
bachche >	بچگا <b>ن</b> <i>bachcheg<b>ân</b></i> children
<parande> پرنده</parande>	<i>parande<b>gân</b></i> birds پرندگ <b>ان</b>

(c) With nouns ending in  $-\hat{a}$  and with most nouns ending in -u, a -y- is infixed before the plural suffix.

<dâneshju> دانشجو</dâneshju>	dâneshjuy <b>ân</b> students دانشجو <b>یان</b>
دانا dânâ >	cânây <b>ân</b> learned (people) دانایان

(d) A few nouns ending in -u do not take the -y- infix:

بازو bâzu> بازوان bâzu**ân** arms بازوان bânu> بانوان bânuân ladies

32.2 The Arabic "feminine" plural suffix أت -ât is used to form the plurals of

many Arabic words as well as of a sizeable class of words of Persian (and even Turkish) origin.

Persian words ending in silent he and in -i infix -j- before the -ât suffix.

ميوجات » mive ميوجات ميوه mive كارخانه kârkhâne كارخانجات « sabzi سبزيجات » sabzij**ât** greens سبزي

32.3 The Arabic "masculine" plural suffix is -in, except when added to words that already end in -i, in which case it changes to ون -un.

معلم mo'allemin teachers معلمین mo'allemin teachers معلمین ma'mur> مأمورین ma'murin agents مأمورین enqelâbi enqelâbi revolutionaries انقلابیون ruhâniun clerics

32.4 The Arabic "broken" plural. A vast number of Arabic words form the plural by a rearrangement of internal vowels. Fortunately for the student of modern Persian, not so many Arabic plurals are now in common use. In classical texts, however, Arabic words normally take their own Arabic plurals. The student's only recourse is the dictionary.

ketâb > حتاب kotob books افكار fekr > افكار afkâr thoughts, ideas مدارس madrase > مدارس madâres schools حقيقت haqâyeq truths فلاسفه faylasuf > فلاسفه faylasuf > فلاسفه

§ 33 Pronominal possessives. Pronominal possession is expressed either by the noun  $m\hat{a}l$  ('property') or by the demonstrative pronoun  $\tilde{a}n$  followed by the possessive  $ez\hat{a}fe$  construction.

تن خانه مال آنهاست. That house is **theirs**. That house is **theirs**. ?

whose are these?

### LESSON NINE

ân mâl-e man-ast آن مال من است. in khâne mâl-e pedar-e این خانه مال پدر جواد iavâd-ast است.

That is mine.

This house is .Javad's father's.

Mâl-e tends to be used in modern Persian, whereas ân-e has fallen from everyday use except in more literary styles. Note the ellipsis of the second copula in the examples below. From this a general rule may be drawn: in parallel clauses containing identical verbs, one verb (usually the second) may be omitted.

khâne-ye ali bozorg-ast, Ali's house is big, but خانهٔ علی بزرگ است ولي **آن** جواد بزرگتر. vali **ân-e** javâd bozorgtar

Javad's is bigger.

sedâ-ye man boland-ast, صدای من بلند است ولی vali **mâl-e** mehti مال مهدی بلندتر. bolandtar

My voice is loud, but Mehti's is louder.

خوب است ولي آنهاي

ruznâmehâ-ye esfahân روز نامههای اصفهان khub-ast, vali **ânhâ**-ye tehrân behtar

The newspapers in Isfahan are good, but those in Tehran are better.

## Vocabulary 9

entekhâb -ât election انتخاب emsâl this year امسال emshab tonight امشب bâq -hâ, -ât garden باغ pârsâl last year يارسال khoshmaze delicious خوشمزه co deh -ât village ده ديشب dishab last night , زندگانے zendegâni life, life span شب shab evening, night

entekhâb-shodan to be/ get elected, to be chosen

entekhâb-kardan to انتخاب کردن elect, to select, to choose

bozorg-shodan to grow بزرگ شدن up, get big

dânestan to know, to realize1

خ, ىدن kharidan to buy

mive -hâ, -jât fruit -ke that (subordinating conjunction) *yâ* or

property of, belonging to

mâl property; mâl-e

<sup>1</sup>In the past tense when dânestan has the mi- prefix it means to know a fact, like the French savoir, e.g. ميدانستم mídânestam 'I knew (it),' غيدانستم 'némidânestam 'I didn't know,' but without the mí- prefix it means 'to realize,' e.g. ندانستم که nádânestam ke... 'I didn't realize that...'

khordan to eat, drink خوردن شدن shodan to become goftan to say گفتن

### Exercise 9

(a) Answer the following questions:

(b) Translate the following into English:

۱ آن ایرانیان کجا زندگی میکردند؟

۲ این دانشجویان بیشتر درس خواندهاند تا آنان.

۳ در انتخابات امسال کی انتخاب شده است؟

۴ آنانرا هر روز می دیده ام ولی امروز نیآمده اند.

۵ پدر علی و مریم به شهر بزرگ رفته و برنگشته است.

ع چرا آنهارا انتخاب کردند؟

٧ نمى دانستم كه اين مال على است يا مال پدر شما.

۸ دیشب در باغ بزرگی میوهٔ خوشمزهای میخوردیم.

۹ چرا بلندتر نگفتید؟ صدای شمارا نشنیدم.

۱۰ بچههای آن ده همهٔ میوههای باغ شمارا خوردهاند.

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. Did you grow up in a small town?
  - 2. We used to go to school on (در) cold winter days.

### LESSON NINE

- 3. Where did you see Ali and his father yesterday?
- 4. Which lesson was the easiest of all for you?
- 5. What good friends we had there!
- 6. Have you seen the doctor?
- 7. I have had a very difficult life.
- 8. We found the best book of all in the university library.1
- 9. Your house is much quieter than mine.
- 10. The students worked harder (more) last year than this year.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> This sentence is ambiguous in English: we may have found the book in the library or it may be the best book in the library. Give both versions in Persian.

# ہریں وجمح

## Lesson Ten

- § 34 The present stem. All verbs in Persian have a past stem readily derivable from the infinitive (as seen in §24). The present stem, however, cannot always be derived from the infinitive and must be learned as the second "principal part" of the verb.
- 34.1 One of the few regularly predictable present stems is that of verbs whose infinitives end in -idan; the present stem of almost all such verbs (with the notable exception of شنیدن shenidan 'to hear') is obtained by removing the -id- ending of the past stem.

INFINITIVE	PAST STEM	PRESENT STEM
رسیدن residan 'to arrive' >	<-resid رسید	-res رس
خريدن <b>khar</b> idan 'to buy' >	<- <i>khar</i> id->	-khar خر
فهمیدن <i>fahmidan</i> 'to understand' >	<- <i>fahm</i> id- فهمید	-fahm فهم

34.2 Verbs whose past stems end in -nd generally drop the -d- to form the present stem.

ماندن mândan 'to remain' >	<- <i>mând م</i> اند	-mân مان
خواندن khândan 'to read' >	< - <i>khând خ</i> واند	- <i>khân خ</i> وان

34.2 Although there are important exceptions, generally verbs whose past stems end in -kht- change the -kh- to -z- to form the present stem.

sew' > دوختن dukhtan 'to sew'	<-dukht دوخت	- <i>duz</i> دوز
rikhtan 'to pour' >	<- <i>ri<b>kht</b>-</i> >	- <i>riz ر</i> يز
andâkhtan 'to throw' >	andâ <b>kht</b>   انداخت	andâz- انداز
باختن bâkhtan 'to lose' >	<-b <b>âkht</b> باخت	. <i>bâz</i> باز

34.3 Almost all verbs with past stems in *-udan* change the *-ud-* to *-â-* for the present stem:

### LESSON TEN

nemudan 'to show, appear' >	nem <b>ud</b> نمود	- <i>nem<b>â</b>-</i>
ר אבני robudan 'to rob, snatch' >	<- <i>robud-</i> ربود	ربا $rob \hat{a}$ -
j farmudan 'to order' >	<- farm <b>ud</b> - >	- <i>farmâ</i> فرما
goshudan 'to open' >	<-gosh <b>ud</b> گشود	.gosh <b>â</b> گشا

§ 35 The present indicative. The present indicative tense is formed by prefixing the stressed continuous marker  $\omega$  mi- to the present stem and adding the following enclitic personal endings:

am- م	I	im- يم	we
i- ي	you	id- ید	you
ad- د	he/she/it	and- ند	they

These are the same personal endings that are used with the past tense, with the notable exception of the third-person singular. The continuous prefix may be joined or left separate, although when there is no orthographic "break" in the stem itself, attachment of the prefix sometimes results in words too long to be read comfortably (like مینشینند míneshinand 'they sit,' which can be recognized more easily when written مینشینند.

The present indicative conjugation of گیر gereftan (present stem گرفتن gir-) is

mígiram I take میگیرم	mígirim we take میگیریم
سیگیری mígiri you take	<b>mígirid</b> you take میگیرید
mígirad he/she/it takes میگیرد	<b>mígirand</b> they take میگیرند

35.1 The negative is formed by adding the negative prefix to the affirmative, which, as in the past, becomes  $n\acute{e}$ - before mi-.

35.2 In compound verbs the continuous marker is prefixed to the verbal element, but the non-verbal element retains the stress in the affirmative. In the negative, the negative marker takes primary stress.

<i>bár-midârad</i> برمیدارد	he picks up
b <b>à</b> r-némidârad بر نمیدارد	he does not pick up
bozórg-mishavand بزرگ میشوند	they grow up
bozòrg-némishavand بزرگ نمیشوند	they do not grow up

35.3 Orthographic and phonetic changes.

(a) When the personal endings are added to stems ending in -aw-, the -w- ceases to be syllable-final and therefore changes to -v- throughout the inflection,

رفتن raftan > میروی míravam, میروم míravi, &c. شو shodan > میشوی míshavam, میشوی míshavi, &c.

míshenavi, &c. میشنوی míshenavam, میشنوم shenidan > شنو shenidan میشنوم

(b) With the addition of the personal endings to stems ending in vowels (effectively the only vowels in which verb stems end are  $-\hat{a}$  and -u), a -y- is infixed before the first- and third-singular and third-plural endings (those that begin with -a-) and a hamze is infixed before the second singular and the first- and second-person plural endings (those that begin with -i-). Examples are  $\hat{goftan} > \hat{J}$  and  $\hat{J}$  and  $\hat{J$ 

میگویم míguyam سیگوئی mígui سیگوید میگوئیم míguim میگوئید míguyand میگویند

میآیم míâyam میآئی míâi میآئی میآئیم *míâim* میآئید *míâ*yand میآیند

35.4 The Persian present indicative corresponds to both the English simple present and the present progressive.

hamishe be ânjâ هميشه به آنجا ميروم.

I always go there.

. ميروم حالاً به آنجا ميروم hâlâ be ânjâ míravam

I'm going there now.

The present indicative also functions as the future in ordinary speech and prosewriting.

.fardâ be ânjâ míravam فردا به آنجا ميروم

I'm going there tomorrow.

? pas che kâr mikonid يس چه کار ميکنيد

What will you do then?

Learn the present stems of these verbs already introduced.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT STEM

أمدن âmadan

آ  $\hat{a}$  (میآیم  $m(\hat{a}yam)$ 

### LESSON TEN

آو, دن	âvordan	آور	âvar¹ (میآورم míâvaram)
	budan		bâsh (میباشم míbâsham²)
بر خرىدن	kharidan		khar (ميخرم míkharam)
خور دن	khordan		khor (ميخورم míkhoram)
	khâstan		khâh (ميخواهم míkhâham)
	khândan	خوان	khân (ميخوانم míkhânam)
	dậdan		deh (میدهم mídeham)
	dâshtan (simple)		dâr (دارم dâram)
داشتن	-dâshtan (in its com-	دار	-dâr (as in برمیدارم bar-midâram)
U	pounds that take $mi$ -)		1
دانستن	dậnestan	دان	dân (میدانم mídânam)
ديدن	didan	بين	bin (ميبينم míbinam)
رفتن	raftan		raw (ميروم míravam)
شدن	shodan	شو	shaw میشوم) míshavam)
شنيدن	shenidan	شنو	shenaw (میشنوم míshenavam)
كردن	kardan	کن	kon (میکنم míkonam)
گرفتن	gereftan	گیر	gir (میگیر mígiram)
گشتن	gashtan	گرد	gard (میگردم mígardam)
گفتن	goftan	_	gu (میگویم míguyam)
نوشتن	neveshtan		nevis (مینویسم mínevisam)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>The correct present stem of *âvordan*, which is derived from the same verb that gives *bordan/bar*, is *âvar*, but it is commonly pronounced *âvor* as well as *âvar*.

## Vocabulary 10

بعد از	ba'd az after (prep.)	سؤال	so'âl -hâ, -ât question
جواب	javâb -hâ, -ât answer	فردا	fardâ tomorrow, the next
چطور	chetawr how?		day
حرف	harf -hâ word, (pl) what	قبل از	qabl az before (prep.)
	one says	کی	kay when?
سئال	sâl -hâ year	گوش	gush -hâ ear

New verbs will be listed henceforth by the infinitive and present stem; compounds with familiar verbal elements will be given in the infinitive.

The present tense formed from the stem bâsh- (عيباشي míbâsham, عيباشي míbâshi, &c.) is an artificial creation much used in bureaucratic Persian. The student should use the present copulas for the present tense of budan.

(ע, ני (ע, bordan/bar- to carry, take

javâb-dâdan to answer, reply (be or -râ to something) حواب دادن

زدن (زن) زدن zadan/zan- to hit, strike

حرف زدن harf-zadan to speak, talk

so'âl-kardan to ask a question (az of someone) سؤال کردن

shenâkhtan/shenâs- to know, to recognize, to be acquainted with (like the French connaître). In the simple past shenâkhtan means 'to recognize,' e.g. اورا نشناختم u-râ náshenâkhtam 'I didn't recognize him' while in the past progressive it means 'to know,' e.g. اورا میشناختم u-râ míshenâkhtam 'I used to know him.' The present tense has no such distinction.

(فهم) فهميدن فهميدن (فهم fahmidan|fahm- to understand

gozâshtan/gozâr- to put, place گذاری

gush-kardan to listen (be or -râ, to something) گوش کردن

mândan/mân- to stay, remain ماندن (مان)

### Exercise 10

(a) Change the following to the present tense:

۹ آنان برنگشند.	۱ بزرک ثیرند
۱۰ کجا رقبید؟	۲ آن را پیدا کر دم.
۱۱ خيبي درس خوانديم.	۳ آن را نمیدانت.
۱۲ این را تو نوشتی.	۴ ایناراکی خرید؟
۱۳ میچ چنری نیاوردم.	۵ میوه خوردهاید ب
۱۴ اینارا نمیواسید	ع ما كفتيم .
۱۵ چه داده اندې	۷ علی نیآمد
۱۶ مارا نبييه	٨ تو چه داشتى ؟

### LESSON TEN

(b) Read and translate the following into English:

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. You'll ask questions, and I'll answer.
- 2. Don't you know his name?

۱۰ خیلی کار میکنیم. چرا کار ما بیش از پیش سخت می شود؟

- 3. We always speak Persian with her.
- 4. Which one will you buy?
- 5. When are they returning from town?
- 6. We go to school every day, and there we read and write.
- 7. Ali is taking (carrying) these things to Maryam's house.
- 8. Do you know my mother and father?
- 9. I don't understand what he says (his words).
- 10. Tomorrow we'll put everything near the door, and they'll take [it away].

### Review II

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 6-10.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ دیشب من از ہمشہ بیشتر درس خواندم. ۲ آرامترین حای این شهر کحاست؟ ۳ آنها حه خوب فارسی حرف می زنندا ۴ روز از بمه کرمتر این تابستان دیروز بود. ۵ شندهام که آن شهر مکی از سردترین شهرای ایران است. ع کفینه که بعد از این، دانشحومان برنمی کر دند ۷ کدام مکی از اینهارا بیشتر می خوابید؟ ۸ چه حرفهای نوبی نمی زنیدا ۹ این نامدرا در کتابجانهٔ دانشگاه بیدا کر دهام. ۱۰ بحه اخو شروترین موه ارا از باغ برداشتند و رفتند

### LESSON TEN

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. Last year the work was harder than this year.
  - 2. Why didn't they select the best fruits of the garden for us?
  - 3. Does she read both English and Persian?
  - 4. Which school do her sons and daughters go to?
  - 5. All of your answers were good.
  - 6. When will you buy those things for me?
  - 7. I'll carry these, and you carry those.
  - 8. They always put their books on this table.
  - 9. They have understood nothing.
  - 10. Who is the best student in this university?

حرس بانروهم

## Lesson Eleven

§ 36 Pronominal enclitics. The pronominal enclitics, which are used as possessive pronouns, direct objects of verbs, and complements of most prepositions, are as follows:

am- م	my, me	emân- مان	our, us
-at/-et	your, you	etân- تان	your, you
ash/-esh- ش	his/her/its,	eshân- شان	their, them

The second- and third-person singular enclitics are commonly pronounced -et and -esh, the older -at and -ash pronunciations being now somewhat bookish except after words ending in -e, where they are always pronounced -at and -ash.

36.1 The enclitics are attached directly to words ending in consonants and -i.

كتابم	ketấb-am	my book	كتابمان	ketấb-emân	our book
كتابت	ketấb-et	your book	كتابتان	ketấb-etân	your book
كتابش	ketấb-esh	his/her book	كتابشان	ketấb-eshân	their book
صندليم	sandalí-am	my chair	صندليمان	sandalí-emân	our chair
صندليت	sandalí-et	your chair	صندليتان	sandalí-etân	your chair
صندليش	sandalí-esh	his/her chair	صندليشان	sandalí-eshân	their chair

36.2 In words ending in -e, the singular enclitics are spelled with infixed alef; the plural enclitics lose their initial e. The pronunciations -at and -ash are retained for the second- and third-person singular enclitics after words ending in -e.

khâné-am خانهام	my house	khâné-mân خانهمان	our house
khâné-at خانهات	your house	khâné-tân خانەتان	your house

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>For the pronunciation of the resulting sequence -é-at and -é-ash, see p. 22, note 1.

### LESSON ELEVEN

khâné-ash his/her house خانهاش khâné-shân their house

36.3 A -y- is infixed before the pronominal enclitics following  $\hat{a}$  and most words ending in u, as after  $ket\hat{a}bh\hat{a}$  'books' and آرزو  $\hat{a}rzu$  'wish':

ketâbhấ-y-am کتابهایم	ketâbhấ-y-emân كتابهايمان
ketâbhấ-y-et كتابهايت	ketâbhấ-y-etân كتابهايتان
ketâbhấ-y-esh کتابها <b>ی</b> ش	ketâbhấ-y-eshân كتابهايشان
arzú-y-am آرزویم	ârzú-y-emân آرزویمان
ârzú-y-et آرزویت	آرزويتان ârzú-y-etân
ârzú-y-esh آرزویش	ârzú-y-eshân آرزویشان

36.4 Uses of the enclitics.

(a) The enclitics are used as possessive pronouns. As such, there is no appreciable difference between the enclitics (ketâb-am 'my book') and the subject pronouns joined by the ezâfe (my book'), except that in certain situations the subject pronouns cannot be used (see §37 below), and the enclitic pronouns cannot ever be stressed. No enclitic pronoun can ever be followed by an ezâfe, so the possessive enclitics must come at the end of an ezâfe string.

In the direct-object position, any noun or string of nouns modified by a possessive enclitic is marked by  $-r\hat{a}$ .

(b) As direct objects, the enclitics may be added to the verb itself or to  $a_{ny}$  other convenient word in the clause. With compound verbs, the enclitics are  $n_{or}$  mally added to the non-verbal element, although they need not necessarily fall  $i_{n}$  this position. The direct-object enclitics do not take  $-r\hat{a}$ .

i didn't see **them.** I didn't see **them.** They'll see **him.** They opened **it.** 

Although the enclitics are most often used in modern writing as possessives, the usage as direct object is encountered especially in classical quotation and in dialogue representing colloquial speech, where the direct-object enclitics are used extensively. The addition of the first-person singular enclitic to a third-person singular past verb can result in confusion. In modern Persian, however, the direct-object marker usually alleviates ambiguity.

 $jav \hat{a}d$ - $r \hat{a}$  zadam. I hit Javad. but  $jav \hat{a}d$  zad-am. Javad hit me.

(c) Prepositions that normally take their complements through the *ezâfe* drop it with enclitic complements.

but دربارهٔ آن concerning it arbâre-ye ân دربارهٔ آن darbâre-ash دربارهاش barâ-ye man but barâ-yam } for me

In literary Persian the enclitics are not used as complements of the five "true" prepositions ( $a, be, j \mid az, ba, az, bar, and complements)$ . Other words used as prepositions, all of which take their complements through the  $ez\hat{a}fe$ , may take enclitic complements.

§ 37 Reflexive pronouns. No independent pronoun may be used as a possessive or direct object within the clause in which it functions as subject, even if the pronoun is only implied in the verb. Only the enclitics serve as possessives referring to the subject. Thus,

برادرمرا دیدم barâdar-am-râ didam. I saw my brother. and کارتانرا کردید kâr-etân-râ kardid. You did your work.

are valid sentences. In these examples, however, the constructions برادر من barâ-

### LESSON ELEVEN

dar-e man and کار شـــا kâr-e shomâ, though valid elsewhere, cannot be used because the pronouns man and shomâ are subjects, even though implicit, of the verbs didam and kardid respectively.

37.1 In the third persons singular and plural, the repetition of the subject pronoun implies a change of person. The third-person enclitics are ambiguous as to reference and may refer either to the subject or to another third person.

akbar barâdar-e u-râ اکبر برادر اورا دید.

Akbar saw his (i.e. someone else's) brother.

akbar barâdar-esh-râ اکبر برادرش را دید.

Akbar saw his (either his own or someone else's) brother.

barâdarân-e ishân-râ They love their (i.e. son other people's) brother دارند.

dust-dârand. other people's) brother برادرانشانرا دوست barâdarân-eshân-râ dust They love their (either

They love their (i.e. some other people's) brothers.

.دارند. dârand

their own or some other people's) brothers.

37.2 The reflexive pronoun is خود khod (note irregular spelling), which has no person or number inherent in itself but takes its person and number from the subject of the verb of the clause in which it occurs. It can thus signify any person or number and may serve as a possessive as well as a direct object.

. **khod-**râ didam **خود**را دیدم

I saw myself.

. **khod-**râ did **خود**را دید.

S/he saw her/himself.

khâne-ye khod-râ خانهٔ خودرا فروختند. forukhtand.

They sold their house.

khâne-ye khod-râ خانهٔ خودرا فروختید. forukhtid.

You sold your house.

هر کسس در خانه خود سلط ان است

har kas dar khâne-ye khod soltân-ast.

Everyone is a sultan in **his own** house ("every man's home is his castle").

Khod is intensified as a reflexive by adding the enclitic pronominals and as such functions as an independent reflexive pronoun. Spoken Persian almost always adds the enclitics to khod.

khod-am-râ dar âine خودمرا در آئینه دیدم. didam.

I saw myself in the mirror.

خودش را دید. He saw himself. You said those things تو خودت آن حرفهارا to khod-et ân harfhâ-râ yourself.

When so intensified as a possessive, khod imparts a strong sense of "one's own."

ار خودمرا میکنم. kâr-e khod-am-râ I'm doing my own job mikonam. (and nobody else's).

khâne-ye khod-esh-râ He sold his own house خانهٔ خودش را فروخت. forukht. (and nobody else's).

# Vocabulary 11

اً آ âb water pronoun) نان bâz open; again, once sâde plain, simple qahve coffee قهوه more, still, even yet (with the comparative kelâs class, classroom کلاس and often with -ham, baz mardom people means 'still, even yet,' as mohemm important
hamân that very, that same in باز (هم) بیشتر bâz (-ham) bishtar 'even hamin this very, this same; more, more still') hamin emruz همین امروز برادر barâdar -ân, -hâ brother this very day; کالا chây tea چای haminhâlâ right now, chon-ke چونکه ,chon چون this very instant because hichvaqt (with interrog.) ever; (with neg.) never váqti-ke when (temporal hâlâ now, at present; hâlâhâ these days حالاها khâhar -ân, -hâ sister خواهر conj.) khod -self (reflexive خود

#### Verbs

باز آمدن bâz-âmadan to come back باز آمدن bâz-kardan to open بستن (بند) bastan/band- to shut, close (رس) residan/res- to reach, arrive (be at, to) فروختن (فروش)

#### LESSON ELEVEN

inegâh-kardan to look (be or -râ, at) نگاه کردن

#### **Exercise 11**

(a) Change the independent pronouns to enclitics:

(b) Translate into English:

۱ چرا کار خودشرا نمی کند؟

۲ این دررا کی باز کرده است؟ من دیروز بستمش.

٣ سؤالش را خوب فهميديم ولى او جوابمان را نشنيد.

۴ حالاً با برادر و خواهرم چای میخورم.

۵ بعد از کار حای میخورید یا قهوه؟۱

۶ این کارها از آنها خیلی مهمتر است.

٧ مردم چرا اورا انتخاب كردهاند؟

٨ با اينهمه، هيچوقت به آنجا نميرسيم.

٩ همیشه با همین قلم قدیمی نامههایتانرا مینویسید؟

۱۰ برادرانتانرا دیدم ولی نشناختمشان.

# (c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. My friends live in a small village near Tehran.
- 2. They are coming back to their old house because they sold the other

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> A question so couched is asking for a choice, tea or coffee. This is the normal order for such choices.

house.

- 3. We saw one of your students yesterday in the library.
- 4. She is closing one of the windows.
- 5. Where are you taking (carrying) all that?
- 6. I won't ever sell my house to them!
- 7. I'm reading a very important book for class tomorrow.
- 8. Why are you looking out of (az) the window? What do you see?
- 9. Do you drink tea, or coffee? I drink coffee; I never drink tea.
- 10. What are you looking at? I'm looking at these Persian books.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> See the note to sentence 5 in (b) above.

# פתנה פכר קופים

# Lesson Twelve

§38 Cardinal numbers. The cardinal numbers from one to nineteen are as follows. Numerals are written, as in English, from left to right.

یک (۱)	yek (1)	یازده (۱۱)	yâzdah (11)
دو (۲)	do (2)	دوازده (۱۲)	davâzdah (12)
سه (۳)	se (3)	سیزده (۱۳)	sizdah (13)
چهار (۴)	chahâr (4)	چهارده (۱۴)	chahârdah (14)
پنج (۵)	panj (5)	پانزده (۱۵)	pânzdah (15)
شش (۶)	shesh (6)	شانزده (۱۶)	shânzdah (16)
هفت (۷)	haft (7)	هفده (۱۷)	hivdah (17)
هشت (۸)	hasht (8)	هجده (۱۸)	hizhdah (18)
نه (۹)	noh (9)	نوزده (۱۹)	nuzdah (19)
ده (۱۰)	dah (10)		

Note the discrepancy between the spelling and pronunciation of 17 and 18.

The tens are as follows (note particularly the spelling of '60').

The hundreds are similarly compounded with the enclitic conjunction. The only irregularly formed hundreds are 200, 300, and 500. The others are predictably formed from the units. There are no irregularly formed thousands.

$$(1 \cdot \cdot)$$
 sad  $(2 \cdot \cdot)$  sisad sisad  $(2 \cdot \cdot)$  چهارصد  $(4 \cdot \cdot)$  chahârsad

پانصد (۵۰۰)	<i>pân</i> sad	سههزار (۳۰۰۰)	sehezâr
ششصد (۶۰۰)	sheshsad	چهارهزار (۴۰۰۰)	chahârhezâr
هفتصد (۷۰۰)	haftsad	پنجهزار (۵۰۰۰)	panjhezâr
هشتصد (۸۰۰)	hashtsad	ششهزار (۶۰۰۰)	sheshhezâr
نهصد (۹۰۰)	nohsad	هفتهزار (۷۰۰۰)	hafthezâr
یکهزار (۱۰۰۰)	yekhezâr	هشتهزار (۸۰۰۰)	hashthezâr
دوهزار (۲۰۰۰)	dohezâr	نههزار (۹۰۰۰)	nohhezâr

38.1 Numbers are invariably followed by the singular. Idiomatically a "counting word," or classifier, intervenes between all numbers other than يولا yek and the following singular noun. Although elaborate lists of specific counting words for a variety of items exist (rather like English 'flock,' 'herd,' 'pride,' 'covey,' 'suite,' etc.), informally they may be replaced by tâ 'unit' for practically anything, خانه dâne 'grain' for small items, عدد nafar 'individual' for people, and عدد adad 'item' for commercial items.

I have three brothers. دو تا کتاب خواندم. من se tâ barâdar dâram. I read two books.

I read two books. I ate two pistachios. دو دانه پسته خوردم. من do dâne peste khordam. I ate two pistachios. دو دانه پسته خوردم. درانی دیدم. chahâr nafar irâni didam.

ينج عدد قاليچه خريد. panj adad qâliche kharid. He bought five carpets.

Counting words are not used with any words or expressions of time or instance.

I stayed for two hours. وساعت ماندم. وساعت ماندم. Se ruz ânjâ budim. We were there for three days.

khâhar-am shesh sâl My sister is six years old.

. جهار بار رفتيم chahâr bâr raftim. We went four times.

38.2 All words that indicate weights, measures, distances, pairs, containers, etc. are themselves construed as counting words.

do kilu gusht two kilos of meat دو کیلو گوشت se litr shir three liters of milk

#### LESSON TWELVE

chahâr botri âb چهار بطری آب panj metr pârche ينج متر يارچه shesh fenjan qahve شش فنجان قهوه haft estekân chây هفت استكان حاي hasht **joft** jurâb هشت **جفت** حوراب

four bottles of water five meters of cloth six cups of coffee seven glasses of tea eight pairs of socks

دفعه bâr and بار bâr and بار bâr and بار daf'e. 'Per' is expressed by a non-specific noun preceding the number.

> sâl-i do daf'e سالي دو دفعه hafte-i panj bâr هفته ای پنج بار mâh-i chahâr daf'e ماهي چهار دفعه

twice a year five times a week

four times a month

38.4 Multiples are expressed by برابر barâbar-e.

برابر (قیمت) هفتهٔ

in hafte qaymat-e shir do این هفته قیمت شیر دو barâbar-e (qaymat-e) hafte-ye gozashte-ast.

The price of milk this week is twice what it was last week.

§ 39 Ordinal numbers. The ordinal numbers are formed by suffixing -- om to the cardinal numbers. The ordinals are treated as regular adjectives and follow the nouns they modify with the ezâfe. 'First' is irregular: ما avval, less commonly نخست nokhost ('prime'). In subsequent compound numbers such as 21st, -sev سوم dovvom ('second') and دوم o yekom is used. Of the ordinals, only و يكم vom ('third') are irregularly formed. All others are predictable from the cardinals. There is no abbreviation in Persian corresponding to English '1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.'

avval, nokhost first اول، نخست dovvom second دوم sevvom third سوم chahârom fourth چهارم panjom fifth

sheshom sixth ششم haftom seventh هفتم hashtom eighth هشتم

nohom ninth نهم دهم dahom tenth &c.

روز) اول ماه، (ruz-e) avval-e mâh

the first (day) of the month

jalese-ye dovvom-e in جلسهٔ دوم این کلاس

the second session of this class

in, daf e-ye sevvom-astاین دفعهٔ سوم است که in, daf e-ye sevvom-astاین دفعهٔ سوم است که ke mibinam-etân seen you.

The fifth house on the lane is ours.

mâl-e mâ-st. lane is ours.

bist-o-yekom-e mah the 21st of the month and e ma e was e wa

39.1 Ordinals are also be formed by adding مصين -omin to the cardinals (اوّلـين) avvalin for 'first'). Like the superlatives in -tarin (see §31.3), -omin ordinals precede the nouns they modify and do not occur without a following noun.

the first day of the month legislation of this avvalin ruz-e mâh legislation the second session of this class class sevvomin khâne-ye in kuche lane

39.2 In addition to the Persian numbers, the following Arabic ordinals should also be learned, especially in the adverbial form, as they are of frequent occurrence.

avval اول	first	avvalan اولاً	firstly
sâni ثانی	second	sânian ثانيًا	secondly
sâles ثالث	third	sâlesan ثالثًا	thirdly
'râbe رابع	fourth	râbe'an رابعًا	fourthly

39.3 With the exception of inm 'half,' the ordinals are also used as fractions.

#### LESSON TWELVE

yek sevvom یک سوم one third

se chahârom سه چهارم three fourths

noh dahom-e kilometr nine tenths of a kilometer نه دهم کیلومتر

Also in common use are the Arabic fractions: نصف nesf half, ثلث sols third, and ربع rob' fourth.

# Vocabulary 12

*âkher* last

aqallan at least اقلا

avvalan firstly اول avvalan

ار bâr time; load

برابر barâbar together; equal; barâbar-e facing, opposite; برابر dobarâbar(-e) twice as much (as)

tâ unit, counting word

te'dâd-e dâneshju- تعداد دانشجویان این کلاس te'dâd number, as in تعداد yân-e in kelâs 'the number of students in this class'

تقریبًا taqriban almost, nearly
sânian secondly
sânie second, the sixtieth part of a minute
sâlesan thirdly

dâne grain, counting word

cise (once, twice) دفعه dafa'ât time (once, twice)

ما دقیقه daqaqe pl دقیقه daqaqe minute رابعًا râbe'an fourthly

ربع rob' quarter; یک و ربع yek-o rob' one and a quarter; as a compounding agent rob' precedes what it modifies: ربع ساعت rob'-sâ'at 'a quarter of an hour,' ربع کیلو 'rob'-kilo 'a quarter of a kilo'

sâ'at -hâ, sâ'ât hour; watch, clock; ساعت ديواري sâ'at -hâ, sâ'ât hour; watch, clock; ساعت clock; ساعت مجي sâ'at-e mochi wristwatch

shabâneruz day (24 hours) شيانهروز

shomâre -hâ number (as in شمارهٔ می shomâre-ye yek 'number

one') ممار /shomâr- to count شمردٌن

gozashtanl گذر gozar- pass (of time); (with az) pass by, go beyond

gozashte past, last

ماه mâh -hâ moon, month

nesf half, mid-; نصف nesf-e shab midnight

nafar person (counter); used for 'people' only in situations where there is no other qualifier, as پنج نفر دیدم panj nafar didam 'I saw five people' and هفت نفر آنجا بودند haft nafar ânja budand 'seven people were there,' but دو تـــا بـــرادر دارم do tâ barâdar dâram 'I have two brothers'

nim half; دو ساعت و نیم do sâ'at-o nim two and a half hours; as a compound agent nim precedes what it modifies: نیم ساعت nim sâ'at 'half an hour,' نیم کیلو 'nim kilo 'half a kilo'

hafte week هفته

#### Exercise 12

(a) Read the following numbers:

۱۵۷	۶٬۱۴	1914	011
۲ ۱/۲	99	747	44.41
7797	٧ <sup>٣</sup> / <sub>*</sub>	1881	9 - 1

(b) Read and translate into English:

۱ ماعت یک بیت و چارم ثباندروز است.
۲ ثانیه یک شفتم دقیقه است و در هر ساعت شفت دقیقه بست.
۳ این شهر از آن شهر دیگر به نفسد کمیومتر دور است.
۴ دو دقیقه صد و بیست ثانیه است و دو شباندروز چه و بهشت ساعت است.
۵ امروز و فردا سه تا درس میخوانیم.
۶ این کثور بمیشر از دویست تا روز نامه دارد.
۷ اوازده سال مدرسه رفته ایم.
۸ اقلاً روزی چار دفعه آنهارا می مینم.
۹ یک ساعت و نیم در آنجا باندیم.
۹ یک ساعت و نیم در آنجا باندیم.
۱۰ در هر ماه چار بهفته بست و در هر سال، دوازده ماه.

#### LESSON TWELVE

# (c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Are they staying half an hour or three quarters of an hour?
- 2. There are thirty-one days in this month.
- 3 I have two brothers and three sisters.
- 4. Lesson One was easy, but Lesson Two was harder.
- 5 We worked six hours.
- 6. I read those five books last week.
- 7. Do you want those same three green chairs?
- 8. It's nearly 3:30 (see Appendix B).
- 9. Summer and winter have three months each.
- 10. I've shut that window at least four times today.

## Supplementary Vocabulary: Weights and Measures

# metr meter kilometr kilometer sântimetr centimeter milimetr millimeter gram gram kilogram kilogram litr liter

TRADITIONAL

gereh knot, 1/16 gaz, 6.5 cm

vajab handspan

gaz ca. 1 yard

zar' cubit, 1.04 meter

farsang (or farsakh)

league, 6 km

mesqâl mithcal, 1/16 seer,

4.6875 grams

sir seer, 1/40 maund, 75

grams

man maund, 2 3 kg.

kharvâr load, 100 maunds,

300 kg.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> See the note to sentence 5 in exercise (b), p. 73 for word order involving choices.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The classical definition of the *farsang* was the distance a caravan could cover in an hour, so it varied by terrain; it has been fixed in modern times at 6 km.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Historically the value of the maund has varied considerably, but in modern times it has been fixed at 3 kg.

# ھریش سیز دھمے

# Lesson Thirteen

- § 40 Relative clauses. As in English, there are two types of relative clause in Persian, the restrictive (that which is selective, or determinate) and the non-restrictive (the purely descriptive and nonselective). Both types of clause are introduced by the relative pronoun \$\( -ke \), an enclitic that stands at the head of the relative clause.
- 40.1 The **restrictive relative clause** restricts the antecedent and therefore makes it specific. The antecedent of the relative clause is indicated by adding an enclitic -i to the noun itself or, if the noun is modified by an adjective, to the end of the adjectival ezâfe string, as مردى كه mard-i-ke 'the man who...,' خانه اى كه khâne-i-ke 'the house that....'
  - (a) When the relative pronoun functions as the subject of the subordinate clause, the subordinate verb agrees in number with the antecedent of ke.

mard-i-ke âmad... the man who came... the men who came... مردانی که آمدند mardân-i-ke âmadand... the men who came...

When relative clauses are internal, i.e., followed by the main verb, they are read in an absolute monotone but with a high rising pitch on the final syllable of the clause. Final relative clauses have no special intonation.

مردى كه آمد ايرانى *mard-<u>i-ke âmád</u> irâni-ast*. The man <u>who came</u> is

من که دیروز dokhtarhâ-<u>i-ke diruz</u> The girls <u>who saw you</u> من <u>shomâ-râ didánd</u> be <u>yesterday</u> told me.

man goftand.

- (b) When the antecedent functions as direct object of the main clause, it is marked by  $-r\hat{a}$ , and the order of the enclitics is invariably  $-i-r\hat{a}-ke$ .
  - . مردى را كه آمد نديدم mard-<u>i</u>-**râ**-<u>ke âmad</u> I didn't see the man <u>who</u> nádidam. <u>came</u>.

#### LESSON THIRTEEN

dokhtarhâ-i-râ-ke ânjâ دخترهائی را که آنجا <u>zendegi-mikonand</u> زندگی میکنند <u>némishenâsam.</u> نمیشناسم.

I don't know the girls who live there.

bud ferestâdam. فرستادم.

I sent the letter that was on the table.

(c) When the relative is object of the subordinate clause, its function may optionally be marked with a referent pronoun agreeing with the antecedent.

<u>râ) neveshtam</u> ferestâdam.

nâme-i-râ-ke diruz (ân- نامهای را که دیروز (آن را)

I sent the letter that I wrote vesterday.

pul-i-râ-ke be dust-esh پولی را که به دوستش (آن را) داده است پس <u>(ân-râ) dâde-ast</u> pas migirad.

He'll take back the money he gave to his friend.

In ordinary speech and substandard writing, when the antecedent is the direct object of the subordinate clause, the referent pronoun is often omitted and the antecedent is marked with -râ (by attraction), regardless of its function in the main clause.1

40.2 'Whose,' 'of which,' etc. In relative constructions that are expressed in English by 'whose,' 'of which,' 'about which,' etc., the referent pronoun must he used in Persian. Since the Persian relative -ke cannot be moved from the head of the relative clause, the referent pronoun is used to show the syntax of such clauses.

shahr-<u>i-ke az ân âmade-</u> The city <u>from which I</u> شهری که از آن آمدهام از <u>am</u> az injâ dur-ast. <u>have come</u> is far from have come is far from here.

nâme-i-{râ-ke diruz نامهای را که دیروز نوشتم neveshtam} kojâ-st?

film-i-{râ-ke dishab didim} فيلمى راكه ديشب ديديم .khub-bud خوب بود.

Where is the letter I wrote yesterday?

The movie we saw last night was good.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> In the following two examples neither nâme nor film is the direct object of the verb of the main clause, but they have attracted -râ because they function as direct objects of the relative clauses. Students should not imitate this substandard construction, but they should be aware of its existence.

zanân-i-ke dokhtarhâ- زنانی که دخترهایشان به The women whose veshân be tehrân raftedaughters have gone to تهران رفتهاند دلواىسند. and delvâpas-and. Tehran are worried. otâq-i<u>-ke dar ân neshas-</u> اطاقی **که در آن** نشستهایم <u>te-im</u> khayli kuchek- خیلی کوچک است. The room in which we are sitting is very ast. small. ketâb-<u>i-**ke darbâre-ash**</u> محبت میکردیم <u>sohbat-mikardim</u> kojâ st? Where's the book about sohbat-mikardim kojâwhich we were talking?

40.3 The verb of the main clause in a sentence containing a relative clause takes its normal position at the end of the sentence unless that verb is a solitary form of *budan*, i.e. no form of *budan* can stand alone after a relative clause. In such a case either (1) the subject and predicate are reversed or (2) if there is no expressed subject, the verb is brought forward and precedes the relative clause, as in the following examples:<sup>1</sup>

dars-i-ke dishab khândim Lesson Thirteen is the درسي که ديشب خوانديم dars-e sizdahom-ast. درس سيزدهم است. lesson we read last night. dars-i-st ke dishab khân- درسیست که دیشب It is the lesson we read last night. khâne-am mohavvate-ye خانهام محوطهٔ بزرگی بود bozorg-i bud ke bishtar

be yek bâq-e matruk-o My house was a large enclosure that mostly resembled an abanfarâmush-shode doned and forgotten شاهت داشت. shebâhat dâsht. garden.

40.4 Similarly, when the antecedent is in the predicate of the main clause and normal word order would leave a solitary verb after the relative clause, the verb of the main clause may optionally precede the relative clause.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The first example, with reversal of subject and predicate, avoids the impossible \*dars-e sizdahom dars-i-ke dishab khândim ast, and the second example, in which the main verb has been brought forward, avoids the impossible \*dars-i-ke dishab khândim ast.

#### LESSON THIRTEEN

bachchehâ mawjud-e بچهها موجود ناشناس و عحسی را م**یدیدند** که همه چیزش برایشان تازگی داشت.

nâshenâs-o aiib-i-râ mididand ke hame chiz-esh barâveshân tâzegi dâsht.

kâravân vâred-e كاروان وارد خياناني شد که دو طرفش دیوآرهای خرایه و دکانهائ کوحک بود.

khiâbân-i shod ke do taraf-esh divârhâ-ye kharâbe-o dokkânhâye kuchek bud.

The children saw an unfamiliar and strange being, everything about whom possessed novelty for them.

The caravan entered an avenue, on both sides of which were brokendown walls and small shops.

The antecedent marker -i is often, but not necessarily, omitted when the antecedent already ends in -i, as مرد ایرانی که mard-e irani-ke for مرد ایرانی که mard-e irâni-i-ke 'the Iranian man who...'

thânom-e irâni ke didim The Iranian lady we saw خانم ایرانی که دیدیم mâdar-i maryam-ast. is Maryam's mother. ketâb-e fârsi ke mikhânid What's the Persian book کتاب فارسی که darbâre-ye chist?

you're reading about?

40.5 The **non-restrictive clause** is also introduced by ke, and all observations on the syntax of the relative pertain to this type also. The only difference between the restrictive and non-restrictive relative is that the non-restrictive an-خانه که mard ke 'the man, who...' and مردکه tecedent is not marked by -i, as khâne ke 'the house, which....' Compare and contrast the following:

ahmad, ke diruz âmad, احمد که دبروز آمدُ ابنجاست. injâ-st.

حيست؟

Ahmad, who came yesterday, is here.

ahmad-i-ke diruz âmad احمدی که دیروز آمد injâ-st.

The Ahmad who came yesterday is here.

-cherâgh-râ ke dud چراغرا که دود میزد -mizad, khâmush خاموش کردم. kardam.

I put out the lamp, which was smoking.

-cherâgh-i-râ ke dud چراغی را که دود می زد خاموش كردم. mizad khâmushkardam.

I put out the lamp that was smoking.

Antecedents modified by a possessive pronoun are always treated as non-restric-

tive relatives.

bayn-e khânehâ-ye mâ, بين خانههاى ما كه در یک باغ بزرگ ساخته شده بود دیواری وجود نداشت

barâ-ye mâdaram, ke برای مادرم که سراسر عمرش رأ در چادر باز و پرهوای عشایری په سر برده بود تنفس در

اطاقكي محصور دشوار

ke dar yek bâg-e bozorg sâkhte-shode-bud, divâr-i vojud nadâsht.

sarâsar-e omr-esh-râ dar châdor-e bâz-o porhavâye ashâyeri be sar bordebud, tanaffos dar otâgaki mahsur doshvar bud.

Between our houses. which had been built in a large garden, no wall existed.

For my mother, who had spent her entire life in an open, airy tribal tent, breathing in a confined little room was difficult

§ 41 The past perfect tense. The past perfect tense, which corresponds generally to the English past perfect, is formed from the past participle followed by the past of budan. In the affirmative, stress falls on the last syllable of the participle.

> rafté-budam رفته بودم rafté-budi رفته بودي rafté-bud رفته بود

rafté-budim رفته بودیم rafté-budid رفته بودید rafté-budand رفته بودند

The negative is formed by prefixing ná- to the participle.

nárafte-budam نرفته بودم nárafte-budi نرفته بودي nárafte-bud نرفته بود

nárafte-budim نرفته بوديم nárafte-budid نرفته بودید nárafte-budand نرفته بودند

There is no past perfect of the verb بودن budan 'to be.' Thus, according to context, the simple past tense can mean either 'was' or 'had been.'

- 41.1 Uses of the past perfect tense.
- (a) For any remote action or state, although no great amount of time need have elapsed. This usage often renders the sense of the English 'already,' which has no exact equivalent in Persian.

-qabl az ân u-râ dide قبل از آن اورا دیده بوديم. pish az ân vaqt پیش از آن وقت برگشته

We had (already) seen him before that.

They had (already) returned before that time.

(b) For the anterior of two contrasted verbs in the past.

. bargashte-budand

#### LESSON THIRTEEN

ولي ما پريروز هم اورا ديده بوديم.

diruz shomâ u-râ didid. ديروز شما اورا ديدىد vali mâ pariruz-ham urâ dide-budim.

You saw her yesterday, but we had already seen her the day before.

When the more remote verb has already been completed before the inception of the second, or less remote, the second verb follows the first and is introduced by ke 'when.' The sense of the English 'already' is built into the Persian tense.

shomâ be âmrikâ bar- شما به آمريکا برگشته

gashte-budid ke man وفتم. be irân raftam.

You had already returned to America when I went to Iran.

man tâze rafte-budam ke I had just gone when you من تازه رفته بودم که شما shomâ âmadid. came.

(c) هــنــوز Hanuz 'yet, still' and a negative verb in the past-perfect clause followed by ke renders the idiomatic 'scarcely (hanuz na-) had we done something when (ke) something happened,' 'no sooner (hanuz na-) had we done something than (ke) something happened.'

hanuz vâred-e otâq هنوز وارد اطاق نشده náshode-budim ke بودیم که آنهارا دیدیم.

ânân-râ didim.

Scarcely had we entered the room when we saw them.

منوز ننشسته بودم که در hanuz náneshaste budam No sooner had I sat down منوز ننشسته بودم که در ke dar bâz shod. than the door opened.

§ 42 The past perfect narrative tense. The past perfect narrative is formed from the past participle and the present perfect of budan. It is used in cases (a) and (b) of the remote past absolute where the criteria for the present perfect also apply (see §29). This tense will not be encountered frequently.

dar ân vaqt be sisâlegi در آن وقت به سی سالگی

náreside-bude-ast.

At that time he had not yet reached the age of thirty.

# Vocabulary 13

otâq room اطاق esfahân Isfahan اصفهان pul money يول

tarsidan/tars- be afraid (az) of

تعریف کردن ta'rif-kardan to define; to talk (az about); to tell (barâ-ye somebody) (az about something), to relate (az) an incident

jam'an in all, in toto جمعاً

khoshgel pretty, handsome, good-looking خوشگل

ziâd much, too much (in affirmative sentences ziâd is usually equivalent to بسیار, although it often has a stronger sense of 'too much, too many'; in negatives ziâd generally replaces khayli, e.g. خیلی خوب است khayli khub-ast 'it's very good,' but زیاد خوب نیست ziâd khub nist 'it's not very good')

sâkhtemân building

shirâz Shiraz شيراز

أصله fâsele distance; فاصله داشتن fâsele-dâshtan to be distant (bâ from). This compound needs either modification, as in ده ما با deh-e mâ bâ shahr fâsele-ye ziâd-i nadârad 'our village is not very far from town,' or a stated distance, as in مشهد با تهران هزار كيلومتر فاصله دارد mashhad bâ tehrân hazâr kilometr fâsele-dârad 'Mashhad is 1000 km from Tehran.'

farâmush-kardan to forget فراموش كردن

کس kas -ân person, one (normally used for 'one' in relatives, as کسانی که kas-i-ke 'the one who, the person who' and کسانی که kasân-i-ke 'those who, persons who')

awqât time اوقات/vaqt -hâ وقت

mesl-e like (prep.)

همسایه hamsâye -hâl-gân neighbor

hanuz still, yet هنوز

*hichkas* (+ negative) nobody هيچکس

#### Exercise 13

(a) Change the following sentences into restrictive relative phrases (e.g.,  $\hat{a}n$  mard  $\hat{a}mad > \hat{a}n$  mard-i-ke  $\hat{a}mad...$ ) and then complete the sentence on your own, making any necessary changes (addition or deletion of -r $\hat{a}$ , e.g.).

۱ درس آسان را خواندیم ۲ آن ساخهانی بلندرا دیده اند 88

#### LESSON THIRTEEN

(b) Turn the **second** of the two sentences into a restrictive relative clause and embed it into the **first** sentence (e.g., **ân mard** irâni-ast. **ân mard** âmad. > ân mard irâni-ast.)

### (c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. I had scarcely opened the door when I saw him.
- 2. The house in which we used to live was far from town.
- I have forgotten the name of the person who was here with you yesterday.
- 4. Where is the money you took from them?
- 5. Did you take the clock that was here to some other place?
- 6. Last month he was in a city that is 200 km. distant from here.
- 7. I forgot the letter that I put on the table.
- 8. Is the building your friends live in far from here?
- 9. It's nearly five kilometers from the school you used to go to.
- 10. I counted all the things you gave me. There were sixteen in all.

# ورن جعاروهم

# Lesson Fourteen

§ 43 The future tense. The future tense is compounded from the present tense of khâstan 'to want,' without the mí- prefix, followed by the short infinitive (= past stem). In the affirmative stress falls on the last syllable of the short infinitive. Example from گفتن goftan 'to say':

khâhim-góft خواهیم گفت khâham-góft خواهم گفت khâhi-góft خواهید گفت khâhi-góft khâhi-góft خواهي گفت khâhand-góft خواهد گفت khâhad-góft خواهد گفت

In compound verbs the khâh- auxiliary intervenes between the two parts of the compound. Stress is on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

bár-khâhim-gasht برخواهيم گشت bár-khâham-gasht برخواهم گشت bár-khâhid-gasht برخواهي گشت bár-khâhi-gasht برخواهي گشت bár-khâhand-gasht برخواهد گشت bár-khâhand-gasht برخواهد گشت The negative future is formed by prefixing ná- to the auxiliary.

nákhâham-goft, &c. نخواهیم گفت nákhâham-goft, &c. برنخواهیم گشت bàr-nákhâham- برنخواهیم گشت bàr-nákhâhim-

In ordinary usage the present tense is used for the future. The future tense is reserved for fairly emphatic statements about the future.

hichvaqt bar-nákhâham- I shall never return! هيچوقت برنخواهم gasht! 

die.

# § 44 Other numerical expressions.

44.1 چند Chand.

(a) The interrogative جند chand, which is invariably followed by the singular

#### LESSON FOURTEEN

(or counting word and the singular1), renders 'how many?' for countables.

chand (tâ) barâdar چند (تا) برادر دارىد؟ dârid?

you have?

How many years were

How many brothers do

chand sâl dar irân چند سال در ایران budid?

you in Iran?

chand daf e be ânjâ چند دفعه به آنجا رفته rafte-id?

How many times have you gone there?

".chand vaqt for 'how long چند وقت Note especially the expression چند وقت

chand vaqt dar irân چند وقت در ایران budid?

How long were you in Iran?

(b) The interrogative ordinal is چنده chandom, which functions like ordinals in -om, or چندمسن chandomin, which functions like ordinals in -omin (i.e., precedes the noun it modifies).

emruz chandom-e mâh- امروز چندم ماه است؟

What day of the month is it today?

in chandomin daf e-ast این چندمین دفعه است ke miâyad?

How many times has he come (lit. "this is the 'how-manyeth' time he

is coming")

For telling time, days of the week, etc., see Appendix B.

(c) Both يكچند chand and يكچند yek-chand as declaratives are followed by the singular and mean 'several, a few.' For further vagueness, -i may be added to the noun.

(یک)چند برادر دارم. (yek)chand barâdar

I have several brothers.

. ریک)چند سالی گذشت. (*yek)chand sâl-i gozasht*. A few years passed

emshab ân chand tâ امشب آن چند تا کتابرا .ميخوانم ketâb-râ míkhânam

I'll read those few books tonight.

In this meaning chand may also be preceded by the non-specific plural, a more literary usage.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Time expressions, as with numbers, never take counting words. See § 38.1.

inemunehâ-i chand several examples نمونه هائی چند salân-i chand a few years

44.2 For measurable quantities, the interrogative = cheqadr 'how much, what amount' is used and is followed directly by the noun without  $ez \hat{a} fe$ .

cheqadr shekar How much sugar do you چقدر شکر میخواهید؟ mikhâhid? want?

?خورده اید cheqadr âb khorde-id? How much water have you drunk?

44.3 Both قدرى qadr-i and كحي kam-i are used for 'a little, a little bit of.'

در نمکدان قدری نمک dar namakdân qadr-i There is a little salt in the saltcellar

در چاه کمی آب بود. There was a little water in the well.

. کمی وقتتان را میگیرم *kam-i vaqt-etân-râ* I'll only take a little of migiram. your time.

44.4 Indefinite numerical expressions such as 'two or three,' 'four or five' are expressed in Persian by the two numbers together with no conjunction.

two or three people دو سه نفر do-se nafar two or three people پنج شش سال panj-shesh sâl

44.5 'More than' is idiomatically expressed by the numerical expression followed by بيشتر bishtar. 'Less/fewer than' is expressed by the numerical expression followed by كتر kamtar, as in the following examples.

. دو تا قلم بیشتر ندارم do tâ qalam bishtar I don't have more than nádâram. two pens.

se hafte bishtar námân- We didn't stay more than dim.¹ We dedn't stay more than

panj nafar kamtar ânjâ There were fewer than budand.² There were fewer than

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> This sentence could also mean "we didn't stay three weeks more," but it would need a particular context.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Depending upon context, this sentence could also mean "there were five people fewer there."

#### LESSON FOURTEEN

Note the following:

kamtar az sad tomân be کمتر از صد تومان به من man dâd.

be man sad tomân به من صد تومان کمتر kamtar dâd.

be man sad tomân kam- به من صد تومان كم داد.

He gave me less than a hundred tomans

He gave me a hundred tomans less.

He gave me a hundred tomans too little.

44.6 Numerical compounds are generally formed by adding -e or occasionally -i, as in the following:

dobâre دوباره docharkhe دوچرخه bachche-ye panjsâle بچهٔ پنجساله mard-e bistsâle مدر بیشت ساله otâq-e donafare

again, once more
bicycle
five-year-old child

twenty-year-old man double-occupancy room.

#### Vocabulary 14

âyande coming, next, the future arzân cheap, inexpensive ânqadr so much, that much inqadr so much, this much اینقدر *charkh* wheel chand (+ sing.) how many?, how much?; several, a few; چند وقت chand vaqt how long cheqadr how much? hatman certainly, surely (often used in the sense of حتما , فت .must,' e.g hatman raft 'he must have حتما النحاست gone' and hatman injâ-st 'it must be here')

قدر value

yalue

qaymat (qimat) price

kam little, little bit, too

little, too few; کمی kam-i

a little bit, a little;

کم kam-dâdan to give

too little, to shortchange

gozarândan/گذراند

gozarândan/گذراندن gozarân- to spend (time) gerân expensive, dear; گران خریدن gerânkharidan to pay too much

مردن mordan/ مير mir- to die نشان neshân sign, token; نشان neshân-dâdan to show

nemune example, sample,

specimen

#### Exercise 14

(a) Give the following in the future tense:

(b) Answer the following questions:

(c) Read and translate the following:

۱ قیمتی که برای اینها دادی زیاد نبود. ۲ میدانید کشورهای همسایهٔ ایران چیستند؟ 94

#### LESSON FOURTEEN

۳ آنهارا ارزانتر میخواهم. ۴ حتمًا میدانید این کیست. ۵ پولی که از او گرفتهام کم است. ۶ آن ساختمان بزرگی که میبینید دویست تا اطاق بیشتر دارد. ۷ فاصلهای که آن دهات با شهر دارد زیاد نیست. ۸ از کدام همسایه تان تعریف میکردید؟ ۹ این نمونهاش است. خودش نیست. ۱۰ هنوز از آنجا برنگشته بود که خواهرش مرد.

# d) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. He's not more than twelve years old.1
- 2. The third house you'll see is ours.
- 3. We had scarcely reached the garden when their neighbors came.
- 4. He works so much that I know he won't go.
- 5. How do you buy those things so cheaply?
- 6. He'll show you a few examples of his work.
- 7. Next year we'll spend three weeks in France.
- 8. Last month we bought two kilograms of very good coffee.
- 9. Iranians drink tea several times a day, and they almost never drink coffee.
- 10. Do you know all the students who are in your classes?

# Supplementary Vocabulary: Family Relationships

Immediate family:

אליל barâdar brother

אליל pedar father

אליל pedar father

אליל pedar father

אליל pedar mother

אליל pedarbozorg grandfather

אליל pesar son

אליל pesar son

אליל pesar son

אליל של mâdarbozorg grandmother

אליל של mâdarbozorg grandmother

אליל של mâdarbozorg grandmother

אליל של mâdarbozorg grandmother

אליל מאלי של dâmâd groom, son-in-law

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> See No. 8 in (b) above and §44.5.

#### Uncles, aunts, and cousins:

amu uncle (father's brother)

dâi uncle (mother's brother

pesar'amu cousin (father's

brother's son)

pesar'amme cousin (father's

sister's son)

pesardâi cousin (mother's

brother's son)

pesarkhâle cousin (mother's

sister's son)

amme aunt (father's sister)

khâle aunt (mother's sister)

dokhtar'amu cousin (father's brother's daughter)

dokhtar'amme cousin (father's sister's daughter)

dokhtardâi cousin (mother's brother's daughter)

dokhtarkhâle cousin (mother's sister's daughter)

#### In-laws, step-parents, and others:

pedarzan father-in-law (wife's father)

مرتوطر pedarshawhar father-in-law (husband's father)

nâpedari stepfather مارری nâpedari stepfather hamsar spouse (gender neutral)

bâjenâq wife's sister's husband

nâmzad fiancé(e) (gender neutral)

mâdarzan mother-in-law (wife's mother)

mâdarshawhar mother-in-law الارتوح (husband's mother)

nâmâdari stepmother

havu second wife (relationship of a second wife to the first in a polygamous marriage)

jâri husband's brother's wife

doqolu twin (gender neutral) ووغلو

# هرنس بانزوهم

# Lesson Fifteen

# § 45 The imperative.

45.1 The singular imperative of simple verbs is formed by prefixing  $b\acute{e}$ - to the present stem.

بگير **bégir!** Take (it)! Sit down! بنشين **béneshin!** Sit down! بنشين **bézan!** Hit (it)!

(a) When followed in the next syllable by -o-, the imperative prefix changes to bo-. The vowel of the stem may be contracted (see below §45.5).

بگذار **b**óg(o)zâr! Put (it) down!

ا گذر **bó**g(o)zar! Pass by!

(b) When followed in the next syllable by -aw- or -u-, the imperative prefix may change, according to regional accent, to  $b\delta$ -.

برو béraw or bóraw Go! پرو bégu or bógu Say (something)!

(c) When followed by a verbal stem beginning with a vowel, the imperative prefix becomes bi- and is so written.

ليا bía! Come!

یانداز bíandâz! Throw (it)!

بيفت bíoft! Fall down!

45.2 The plural imperative is formed by adding the second-person plural ending -id to the singular imperative.

بگير**يد** bégir**id**! Take (it)!

برويد béravid! Go!

سائىد bíâid! Come!

45.3 The imperative of most compound verbs is formed without the be-prefix.<sup>1</sup>

يم شو gom-shaw! Get lost! Get lost! Open the door! دررا بازكنيد

45.4 The negative imperative is formed by prefixing the negative *ná*- to the verbal stem, replacing the *be*- of the affirmative where it occurs. The negative prefix always receives primary stress, even in compound verbs. Before stems beginning with vowels, a -y- is infixed.

نرو Don't go! Don't go! Don't go! Don't get lost! Don't get lost! Don't open the door! منيد مفروا باز نكنيد náyâid! Don't come! Don't throw (it)!

45.5 When the first syllable of a present stem of more than one syllable is an open syllable and contains either -e- or -o-, that vowel is normally contracted with the addition of the imperative prefixes  $b\acute{e}$ -,  $b\acute{o}$ - and  $n\acute{a}$ -.

بنشینید béneshinid > bén'shinid Sit down! بگذارید bógozârid > bóg'zârid Put (it) down!

The vowel -a- is never contracted, as from bordan, ببريد bébarid 'take/carry (it)!'

- 45.6 Exceptions. The imperative of two verbs is irregularly formed.
- (a) The imperative of *budan* is formed on the stem *bâsh*-, which never takes the *be* prefix.

mard bash! geryè-nákon! Be a man! Don't cry! مرد باش! گریه نکن! إنصاب أهمينجا باشيد! For the time being, stay (be) right here!

(b) The imperative of simple dâshtan is formed from the past participle and

98

<sup>&</sup>quot;In classical Persian the imperative of almost all compound verbs is regularly formed without the be- prefix. In modern Persian, true compounds (i.e. those that are essentially inseparable) like bar-dâshtan, as well as the majority of instances when the compounding verbs are -kardan and -shodan, also form imperatives without the be- prefix. Verbs compounded with other verbs like zadan, keshidan, dâdan, &c. tend, particularly in spoken Persian, to take the be- prefix, e.g. عن بن harf bezan 'speak!'

#### LESSON FIFTEEN

the imperative of budan.

!in-râ dâshte-bâsh این را داشته باش!

Hold this!

in nokte-râ dar nazar این نکته را در نظر داشته !dâshte-bâshid

Keep this point in mind!

§ 46 Resumptive sentence constructions. A common type of sentence in Persian is the resumptive (or topic-comment) sentence, wherein a topic is introduced as subject (topic) of the sentence; the comment then affords some information about that topic. Since the topic/subject is not the subject of the verb of the comment-clause, the topic/subject must be referred to pronominally in its proper position in the comment. Both the independent and the enclitic pronouns are used for this purpose.

sohbat-mikardim— صحبت میکردیم، ettefâqan az dar-e

ân zan-i-ke darbâre-ash آن زنی که دربارهاش khâne-ash raddshodam.

By chance I passed by the door of the house of the woman we were talking about.1

The topicalizer is often used to focus on a topic or to introduce into a conversation something about which it is assumed that the listener already knows something.

ân qâliche-i-ke diruz آن قالیچهای که دیروز didim—fekr-nemikonid دیدیم، فکر نمیکنید qaymat-esh kam-i gerân bud?

Don't you think the price of that carpet we saw yesterday was a bit too much?2

# Vocabulary 15

ettefâgan by chance اتفاقًا

aslan (+ neg.) not at all

بشقاب *boshqâb* plate بعدًا *ba'dan* afterwards (adv.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>This sentence is equivalent to the following, which is a non-topicalized sentence with a normal embedded relative clause: اتفاقًا از در خانهٔ آن زنی که دربارهاش صحبت میکردیم رد شدم ettefâqan az dar-e khâne-ye ân zan-i-ke darbâre-ash sohbat-mikardim radd-shodam.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>This is the equivalent of the following: فكر نميكنيد قيمت آن قاليچهاى كه ديروز ديديم كمي *fekr nemikonid qaymat-e qâliche-i-ke diruz didim kam-i gerân bud?* 

birun out, outside (az of)

pir old (of people); may follow the noun it modifies as an ordj. nary adjective, e.g. مرد پیر *mard-e pir* 'old man,' مرد پیر زریبر pir 'old woman'; it may also precede a noun without ezâfe to form a compound, as پیرمرد pir-mard 'old man' and پیروزن pirzan 'old woman'

jân soul, life (as an enclitic, jân is added to proper names as an endearment, e.g. مادر جان *mâdar-jân* 'mother dear' and مريم حان maryam-jân 'dear Maryam')

*changâl* fork چنگال

درست کردن; کردن dorost-kardan to fix, to make (food, a meal, etc.)

dust-dâshtan to love; like simple dâshtan, dust-dâshtan never دوست داشتن takes mi- in any tense; the imperative is also formed like that of dashtan, (باشيد) دوست داشته باش (باشيد) dust-dâshte-bash(id)

sohbat talk, conversation; صحبت کردن sohbat-kardan to speak, talk

zarf dish ظرف

فنجان فری الله فنجان fenjân cup فنجان qâshoq spoon قاشق qablan before (adv.) گردن kârd knife گم شدن gom lost; گم شدن gom-shodan to get lost; گم شدن gom-kardon to lose kardan to lose

livân glass ليوان

mâjarâ adventure ماجرا

mariz sick, ill مريض

inaw' pl انواع anvâ' kind, sort, type (in the singular, naw' functions as a counting word, i.e. it is never followed by the ezâfe. e.g. این نوع مردم *in naw' mardom* 'this sort of people'; the plural is normally followed by the ezâfe, e.g. انواع مردم anvâ'-e mardom 'all sorts of people')

همانجا hamânjâ right there

haminjâ right here همينجا

يخ yakh ice; يخ بستن yakh-bastan to freeze (intransitive); بغ زدن vakh-zadan to freeze (transitive)

#### LESSON FIFTEEN

#### Exercise 15

(a) Give both the singular and the plural imperatives of the following:

	e Dom with
۱ سرون (رفتن)!	۱۰ زیاد (مؤال نکر دن)!
۲ سه روز بثيتر (ناندن)!	۱۱ این را (کم نکر دن)!
۳ این را (داشتن)!	۱۲ حر فهایش را (فهمیدن)!
۴ كتابش را مانجاً (كذاشت)!	۱۳ آنهارا به من (نثان دادن)!
۵ یکچند روزی نمینجا (گذراندن)!	۱۴ به مؤالم (جواب دادن)!
ع حرفهای مرا (کوش کردن)!	۱۵ (رفتن)، (کم شدن)!
۷ اینهارا ارزان (نفر وختن)!	۱۶ با ما (حرف زون)!
۸ خودرا (شاختن)!	۱۷ اینهارا سرون (بردن)!
۹ بمیثه فارسی (صحبت کردن)!	۱۸ برادرت را زنردن)!

#### (b) Read and translate:

١ آن پيرمرداني كه دربارهشان صحبت ميكرديم زنهايشان كجا اند؟

۲ اتفاقا دوستم از همان ماجرا برای ما تعریف میکرد.

٣ حتمًا آنهارا قبلاً ديدهايد.

۴ آقاجان، اینقدر کار نکنید! مریض میشوید!

۵ این نوع سؤال را دوست ندارند.

۶ نفهمیدم چرا جوابی که دادم درست نیست.

٧ شما همانجا بمانيد وآن چيزهارا من برايتان ميآورم.

٨ همين امروز بخريد! هفتهٔ آينده قيمتش كمتر نخواهد بود.

#### (c) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Always be (pl) happy!
- 2. They didn't understand your question correctly.
- 3. Take (carry) these things out to (for) those old women.
- 4. When we were going to that village, we got lost three times.
- 5. I don't like this kind of coffee.
- 6. Last week I was talking with my friends.
- 7. Tell me about the adventures you had in Iran.
- 8. We spent a few days in Shiraz.
- 9. The water that was in that dish froze last night.
- 10. Take these knives and forks and put them on the table.

# Supplementary Vocabulary \*\*Supplementary Vocabulary Foodstuffs\*\* \*\*Khorâkhâ\*\* Foodstuffs\*\*

	vi )) Mitoratina	T. OOUSCULIS	
آب	âb water	بتغنى	bastani ice cream
آرد	ârd flour	٠, ن	beh quince
آث	âsh thick soup	برتقال	portoqâl orange
آلو	âlu plum	رته	peste pistachio
آلوبالو	âlubâlu sour cherry	پټو	polaw "pilaf," rice cooked with meat and/or vegeta-
اردك	ordak duck		bles
اسفناج	esfenâj spinach	ينبر	panir cheese
أبار	anâr pomegranate	نیاز	piâz onion
الحير	anjir fig	بيازىيە بىيەر بىي	piâzche scallion
انكبين	angabin honey	تخم مرغ	tokhm-e morgh egg
انكور	angur grape	ترسطيه	torobche radish
بادام	<i>bâdâm</i> almond	ترشئ	torshi pickles
بادسحان	bâdenjân eggplant	ترەپر	tare chives
بأقالاً، بأقلا	bâqâlâ, bâqalâ fava bean	تره فرنکی	tare-ye farangi leek
رماميه	bâmie okra	توت	tut berry
برک بو	barg-e bu bayleaf	توت فرنکی	tut-e farangi strawberry
برنج	berenj rice (uncooked)	جعفري	ja'fari parsley

# LESSON FIFTEEN

چای	chây tea	شسريني	shirini sweets
خلو	chelaw plain steamed rice	طالنی	talebi melon
تربزه	kharboze Persian melon	عدش	adas lentils
خر ذل	khardal mustard	ممل	asal honey
خرما	khormâ date	فلف	felfel pepper
خورش	khoresh stew	ء قارچ	qârch mushroom
خيار	khiâr cucumber	قند	qand sugar (lump)
وارجين	dârchin cinnamon	قهوه	qahve coffee
رثته	reshte noodle	كابهو	kahu lettuce
روغن	rawghan oil	كتأ	kate plain boiled rice
ربواس	rivâs rhubarb	كدو	kadu squash
زردآلو	zardâlu apricot	كرفس	karafs celery
زردتوس	zardchube turmeric	كره	kare butter
زرشك	zereshk barberries	کثیر ہ	keshmesh raisin
زعفران	za'farân saffron	ر مست کمریچ	kalampich cabbage
زىجىل	zanjabil ginger	كراني	kangar cardoon
زيره	zire cumin	كردو	gerdu walnut
سالاد	<i>sâlâd</i> salad	كثنيز	geshniz coriander
ربرثىر	sarshir cream	گل کلم	golkalam cauliflower
سركه	serke vinegar	ر کلانی <sup>ا</sup>	golâbi pear
سيب	sib apple	کوخه پر	gawje green-gage plum
سیب زب	sibzamini potato	كوجه فرنكي	gawje-ye farangi tomato
بسر	sir garlic	كوثتسر	gusht meat
شبت	shebbet dill	کوشت خوک	gusht-e khuk pork
ر شراب	sharâb wine	ر کوشتِ گاو	gusht-e gâv beef
تبكر	shekar sugar (granulated)	كوثت كوساله	gusht-e gusâle veal
تلغم	shalqam turnip	ر کوثت کوسفند	gusht-e gusfand lamb
ثنيليه	shambalile fenugreek	كيلاس	gilâs cherry
شر	shir milk	لبو	labu beet (cooked)
-			

لد	lape split peas	·· 26	nokhud chickpeas
لوثبا	lubiâ green bean	نخو درسز	nokhud-sabz green peas
ب. لىمو	limu lemon	نعناع	na'nâ' mint
لتموسنر	limusabz lime	يک ک	namak salt
ماتت	mâst yoghurt	, <del>);</del>	hel cardamom
ماہی	mâhi fish	بل <i>هلو</i>	holu peach
ارخ	morgh chicken	<i>ہندوانہ</i>	hendavâne watermelon
موز	mawz banana	مویچ موسیح	havij carrot
موسر	musir shallot		
منحك	mikhak cloves	با .	ta'mhâ tastes
ميوه	mive fruit	ترش	torsh sour
نارتكى	nârangi tangerine	تلخ	talkh bitter
نان	nân bread	ە <sup>ب</sup> سور	shur salty
		شیری <u>ن</u>	shirin sweet

Almost all Iranian main dishes are either cooked or served with rice. Typically a meal consists of either خورش khoresh (stew, usually meat-based with vegetables and herbs) with خاور chelaw (steamed rice) or پلو polaw (meat and/or vegetables steamed together with the rice). Bread is also eaten along with the meal, and the most common type of bread in Iran is called نان سنگك nân-e sangak, an oblong loaf of thin bread baked on pebbles (سنگك). Fruit is served after a meal.



As a remnant of ancient (Galenic) medicine practiced until recently in Iran, all foods are classified as "hot" (حرم) or "cold" (سرد), which has nothing to do with temperature but describes the "nature" of the food and its effect on the balance of health. A "well-balanced" meal is balanced in "hot" and "cold" ingredients. Illnesses are also classed as "hot" or "cold," and to counteract the effects of a "cold" malady one eats "hot" foods and vice-versa. As examples, yoghurt, spinach, apricots, and rooster are "cold"; almonds, honey, chickpeas, lamb, and hen are "hot." Pears, feta cheese, and tea are neutral.

#### LESSON FIFTEEN

#### Review III

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 11-15.
- (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ آن غذای خوشمزه ای را که دیروز با دادید خو دمان درست کر ده بودید؟
۲ آن پیر مردی که بمینجا کار میکر د، اسمش را فراموش کر ده ام.
۳ در بمین اطاق کمی بانید و درسان را بخوانید
۴ آن کتاب که زرا نمیخوایم خونکه میدانم که مفید نیست.
۵ چون بهند آینده برادرم از آن شهر دوری که در آنجا کار میکند میآید، خواهرم هم از جائی که در آن انگلیبی دس میده برمیکر دد.
۷ تعداد دانشجویانی که در این دانشگاه درس میخوانند چیست؟
۸ بعدا فهمیدم که چرا مریض شدم. حتاً از چنری بود که خورده بودم.
۹ بیچوقت کار بافی را که برای من کر ده اید فراموش نمیکنم.
۱ بیچوقت دربارهٔ قمتی که برای آن چنر با داده است صحت نخوامه کر د.

# (c) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. Don't listen to his words.
- 2. He pays (gives) a lot for the room he lives in.
- 3. There are nine rooms in their house.
- 4. Last year we didn't get sick at all.
- 5. Weren't those people we saw before Iranian?
- 6. Don't forget what I told you (my words)!
- 7. I don't know why you are afraid of them.
- 8. I had scarcely come when he turned around and left.
- 9. They had already gone home when you arrived.
- 10. How many minutes are there in a quarter hour?

ورس شانزوهم

# Lesson Sixteen

 $\S$  47 On the nature of compounds. Of the vast number of compound verbs in Persian, we can identify two broad types, close and open compounds.

(1) Close compounds are represented in the first place by those whose non-verbal compounding element is a particle or preposition like bar in برگشتن bar-gashtan and برگشتن bar-dâshtan. Although this type admits into the compound verbal particles such as mi- (e.g., بر میکردم bar-migardam 'I am returning') and pronominal enclitic objects (e.g., برم داشت bar-am-dâsht 'he picked me up'), noun complements do not intervene in this type.

The second type of close compound consists of verbs like  $e^{i}$   $e^{$ 

. وارد شهر شدم vâred-e shahr shodam. I entered the city

The close compound *kâr-kardan* 'to work' or 'to do something' illustrates the fractured compound when the nonverbal element is modified in any way:

ân kâr-râ kardam.

I did that.

لارخو بي كردىد. kâr-e khub-i kardid.

You did a good job./You did something good.

kârhâ-ye khub-i karde- کارهای خوبی کرده است. ast.

He's done some good things.

As another example, the close compound of جواب دادن javâb-dâdan 'to answer' holds in a construction like

.javâb-nádâdid جواب ندادید

You didn't answer.

but when a complement is sandwiched, as in

#### LESSON SIXTEEN

javâb-e so'âl-am-râ جواب سؤالمرا نداديد. nádâdid.

You didn't answer my question.

the construction can no longer be called a compound, i.e., it has been split into its component parts and should be thought of as the verb  $n\acute{a}d\^{a}d\acute{i}d$  'you did not give' with a compound object,  $jav\^{a}b - e - so'\^{a}l - am$  'the-answer-to-my-question,' which takes the direct-object marker  $-r\^{a}$  because the string is specific.

As a general rule, all compounds with عردن -shodan, كردن -kardan, عردن -dâshtan should be considered close compounds unless they are fractured, in which case they become open compounds.

(2) Open compounds represent a loose connection between verb and complement, often adverbial, like مدرسه رفتن madrase raftan 'to go to school, to attend school' and دور انداختن dur andâkhtan 'to throw away,' or generic, like کتاب ketâb khândan 'to read books.'

All compounds with افتادن -keshidan، افتادن -oftâdan خواندن -khândan and -خواندن -khândan and

§ 48 The present subjunctive. The subjunctive mood in Persian is, with one important exception, used only for complementary constructions, i.e. the subjunctive always depends in some way upon or follows a primary verb in the indicative mood.

Formation of the present subjunctive.

(a) The present subjunctive of simple verbs is formed from the present stem plus the prefix  $b\acute{e}$ -, which is identical to the  $b\acute{e}$ - prefix of the imperative and follows the euphonic rules given in §45. Subjunctive verbs of various types are given below:

(b) The present subjunctive of close compound verbs is characterized by the lack of any prefix on the verbal element. Stress remains on the final syllable of the non-verbal element.

(c) The present subjunctive of open compound verbs is made, like the simple

verb, with the prefix be- on the verbal element.

dúr biandâzim دور بیندازیم dúr biandâzim حرف بزنیم javáb-i bedehid جوابی بدهید

vâred-e sháhr beshavand وارد شهر بشوند vâred-e sháhr beshavand

(d) The negative present subjunctive is formed with ná-, which replaces be-. The euphonic rules given in §45 apply. The negative prefix takes primary stress in compound verbs, leaving secondary stress on the nonverbal element.

nágiram نیندازیم náyandâzim نگیرم náyandâzim نیائید náyâid برنداری pàr nádâri وارد نشود gòm náshavand

(e) Exceptions. (i) As in the imperative, the subjunctive of budan 'to be' is formed on the stem باش bâsh- without the be- prefix. Its inflection is as follows:

bâshim باشیم bâshim باشی bâshid باشی bâshid باشد bâshad باشد bâshad

(ii) Simple dâshtan and dust-dâshtan, as in the imperative, form the subjunctive from the past participle and the subjunctive of budan.

dâshte-bâshim داشته باشیم dâshte-bâshim داشته باشی dâshte-bâshid داشته باشی dâshte-bâshad داشته باشند

The negative subjunctive is predictably formed from the affirmative:

nábâsham نداشته باشیم nádâshte-bâshim &c.

## § 49 Uses of the present subjunctive I.

49.1 The subjunctive mood is used for personal complements of all impersonal verbs and verbal constructions like بايد  $b\acute{a}yad$  'must, should, have to,' نبايد  $b\acute{a}yad$  'must not, should not, don't have to,' شايد  $sh\acute{a}yad$  'may, might, perhaps,' or with negative subjunctive 'may not, might not.'

#### LESSON SIXTEEN

شاید نیایند. They may (might) not come.

Bâyad and shâyad are called "impersonals" because they are "frozen" in the third-person singular. Of bâyad there also remains a past third-person singular, bâyest or ميباليست mibâyest, which reflects the original, now obsolete, infinitive بايد bâyestan and which is used synonymously with بايد bâyad. A past participle شايسته shâyeste ('suitable, appropriate') survives of the original but now obsolete infinitive شايست shâyestan that gives شايست shâyad. Aside from the frozen third-person singular forms, these verbs have no further inflections in modern Persian.

49.2 The subjunctive serves as a complement of the independent verbs خواستن khâstan 'to want,' توانستن tavânestan 'to be able,' and گذاشتن gozâshtan 'to allow, let.'

پدرم نگذاشت (که) من pedar-am nágozâsht (ke) My father didn't let me پدرم نگذاشت (که) من man béravam. go.

Direct objects of the dependent subjunctive and prepositional matter normally fall between the independent and dependent verbs. The independent verbs may occur in any tense.

البه من النوابه النو

If there is a change of subject between the independent and dependent verbs, the conjunction 4 - ke 'that' usually appears along with the subject pronoun of the dependent verb.

mikhâham ke shomâ ميخواهم كه شما بيائيد.

I want you to come

némikhâham ke ânhâ نميخواهم كه آنها بروند. béravand.

I don't want them to go.

49.3 The independent uses of the subjunctive, i.e., where it occurs not dependent upon a preceding independent verb, are (1) as a jussive ('let, may') in all persons:

!béravim برويم

Let's go!

hamântawr ke hast, هما نطور که هست باشد! bâshad!

Let it be just as it is!

. khodâ bíâmorzad-esh خدا سامرزدش

May God have mercy on

him.

khodâ nákonad! خدا نكندا

God forbid! ("may God

not do it")

and (2) as the deliberative interrogative (English 'should'):

? che kâr konam چه کار کنم؟

What should I do?

?che béguyad چه نگوند ?béravim برویم

Should we go?

?chérâ náravim چرا نرویم

Why shouldn't we go?

chiz-i

hamântawr just like that,

in that manner; همانطور که

'such a

What should he say?

## Vocabulary 16

emkân possibility امكان

bel'akhare finally, at last

chonân such, so, so much,

chonin such, so, so much,

like this (chonân and cho-

like that

thing')

chonin

رنگ rang color الازم lâzem necessary الباس lebâs clothes ممكن momken possible

gazâ food غذا

nin are used as adverbs and adjectives; when they are همانطور

used adjectivally they pre-

cede the nouns they modihamântawr-ke just as fy, and the noun is in the hamrâh-e along with; also

همراه

indefinite state: چنین چیزی

110

#### LESSON SIXTEEN

forms open compounds: فصراه آوردن hamrâh âvordan 'to bring along,' همراه نـــردن hamrâh bordan 'to take along'

emkân-dâshtan to be possible (impersonal + subj.) مکان داشتن andâkhtan/andâz- to cast, throw, hurl

bấyad it is necessary, must, should (impersonal + subj.); the negative is usually نباید nábâyad ("don't have to, must not, should not") + subj.

pushidan to cover, clothe, wear, put on (the present tense is used only for habitual action: هر روز صبح لباسمرا می پوشیه har ruz sobh lebâs-am-râ mípusham 'I put on my clothes every morning'); the simple past refers to one act of putting on clothes (مروز صبح لباسمرا پوشیدم emruz sobh lebâs-am-râ pushidam 'I put on my clothes this morning')

پوشیده بودن pushide budan to be wearing (for clothing, an unmodified article is in the generic state, e.g. پیراهن پوشیده است pirâhan pushide-ast 'he's wearing a shirt,' while a modified article is in the indefinite state, e.g. پیراهن سفیدی پوشیده pirâhan-e sefid-i pushide-ast 'he's wearing a white shirt')

تغییر دادن taqyir-dâdan to change (transitive) تغییر کردن taqyir-kardan to change (intransitive)

- tavânestan/tavân- to be able, can + subj. (in the negative past habitual/progressive tavânestan implies simple inability, e.g. ميايم némitavânestam bíâyam 'I wasn't able to come,' but in the simple past negative it implies an attempt that failed, e.g. تتوانستم بيايم nátavânestam bíâyam 'I [tried to or wanted to but] couldn't come.' The distinction is not maintained in the present or future tenses.)
- khâstan/khâh- to want, be about to + subj. (the past habitual/progressive implies simple volition, e.g. مى خواستم بروم mi-khâstam béravam 'I wanted to go,' and the simple past implies 'just about to, on the verge of' doing something, e.g. hâstam béravam 'I was about to go, I was on the verge of going')

دررفتن dar raftan (open compound) to run away

dar-âvordan/dar-âvar- (âvor-) (close compound) to take off

(clothes), to take out

dur andâkhtan (open compound) to throw away دور انداختن

sháyad may, might, it is fitting (impersonal + subj.); maybe (+ indicative); the negative construction is usually shâyad + neg. subj. ('may/might not'); the negative, نشاید nashâyad, means 'it is not fitting, it is not appropriate'

fekr-kardan to think فکر کردن

" gozâshtan/gozâr- to allow, let (+ subj.) گذاشتن (گذار)

به شهر وارد شدم :vâred-shodan to enter, come/go in (+ be وارد شدن be shahr vâred shodam 'I entered the city,' or "sandwiched" open compound construction: وارد شهر شدم vâred-e shahr shodam 'I entered the city')

## **Exercise 16**

(a) Supply the proper present subjunctive form of the verbs given in parentheses and translate the following:

۱ امک ان دارد که من (نمآمدن). ۱۲ می تواند نوب (شندن). ۲ ثما مامد این رنگ را (تغییر دادن). ۱۳ میوانی مرا (دیدن)؟ ۳ میواسد انهارا (کم کر دن) ۹ ۱۴ می خواستند انهارا (دور انداختن). ۴ بمن حالا نمي توانم (ڪر ڪرون). ۱۵ تأید ما زودتر (رسدن). ۵ توہیوقت نباید در آنجا (نکساہ کر دن). ع١ تعدًا نواستيم وارد شهر (شدن). ۱۷ نمی توانم از آن ماجرا (تعریف کردن). ع توانتند آن را (فروضن). ۷ تمیواسد آن دررا (سنن). ۱۸ میخواسد آن قهوه را (خوردن) ۶ ۱۹ نمی توانم این درا (باز کر دن). ۸ من شامد اورا (دوست داشتن). ۲۰ نمی خوامد آن چنر فارا به من (دادن). ۹ میوانند فارسی (حرف زدن). ۱۰ لازم نیت که او (ماز آمدن). ۲۱ ما ماید آنهارا مراه (آوردن). ۱۱ من هم میخواهم کمی (برداشت). ۲۲ این شاید درست (بودن).

#### LESSON SIXTEEN

# ۲۳ امک ن زارد من چنین غذائی را (خوردن). ۲۴ می خوابند که ما بخانه (برکشتن).

## (b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. I don't want to go there tomorrow.
- 2. He was just about to throw it away.
- 3. We want to find the things we lost yesterday.
- 4. This job is so simple that I don't have to think.
- 5. I think I got sick from the food I ate in the village last week.
- 6. Couldn't you give a correct answer to the question?
- 7. I wanted to answer correctly, but I wasn't able to.
- 8. Don't let (allow) your little brother get lost.
- 9. Why won't you let me open the door for them?
- 10. Didn't you want to buy shoes and socks for yourself?

## Supplementary Vocabulary: Clothing

- آسین سزن	âstin sleeve	حاية بعيفه	jelitqe vest
انتشرری	angoshtar(i) ring	جوراب	jurâb socks
اورکت	overkot peacoat	جوراب نايلن	jurâb-e nâylon nylons
بارانی	bârâni raincoat	<i>چب</i> د ب	jib pocket
بازوبند	bâzuband bracelet	چادر	châdor veil
بلوز	boluz blouse	چر	chatr umbrella
بند كفث	band-e kafsh shoelace	چ چکمه	chakme boots
ماحه و پو	pâche cuff (on trousers)	وامن	dâman skirt
بالتو	pâlto overcoat	وستشش	dastkesh gloves
بولور	pulover sweater	وكمه	dokme button
نيرابن	pirâhan shirt, dress	دسائی	dampâi slippers, flipflops
بیراین خواب	pirâhankhâb nightgown	روبوش و	rupush smock
پثرامه	pizhâme pyjamas	روسری	rusari headscarf

aynak-e dudi dark glasses zip zipper zirpush underwear zirpirâhan undershirt kerâvât necktie sâ'at-e jibi pocket watch sâ'at-e mochi wristwatch kafsh shoes kafsh-e kattâni sneakers sar-âstin cuff (on a shirt) kolâh hat sagak buckle kamarband belt sineband bra kif-e dasti handbag shâl-e gardan scarf gâlosh galoshes short briefs gardanband necklace shalvâr trousers gushvåre earring shalvâr-e kattâni blue jeans mâyo bathing suit aynak glasses

## Supplementary Vocabulary Practice.

- 1. She's wearing a green skirt.
- 2. I took my pyjamas off this morning.
- 3. Aren't you wearing a sweater today?
- 4. I didn't put on an undershirt this morning.
- 5. Put on your raincoat!
- 6. Why are you wearing green socks with those trousers?
- 7. I wasn't wearing an overcoat at that time.
- 8. She always wears a white blouse.
- 9. I want to take my shoes off.
- 10. I put my clothes on in the morning and take them off at night.

## لارتن هفدهم

## Lesson Seventeen

## § 50 Impersonal constructions.

50.1 Khosh- âmadan az. This impersonal construction is equivalent to the English verb 'to like': the subject of the English verb is expressed in Persian as a pronominal enclitic after khosh- (which must have a pronominal enclitic), and the object of the English verb is the complement of the preposition az. The verb âmadan is invariably impersonal in the third person singular in all tenses.

. az ân khosh-am âmad. I liked it.

az ân khosh-am miâyad. I like it.

az kâr-e shomâ khosh- He doesn't like what you از کار شما خوشش

نميايد. esh némiâyad. did.

az chonin kâr-i khosh- They will not like such a

az chonin kâr-i khosh- They will not like such a از چنین کاری خوششان eshân nákhâhad âmad. thing.

An infinitive may serve as the complement to the preposition az in this construction. Generic objects and compounding complements precede the infinitive; specific and modified objects follow the infinitive with the  $ez\hat{a}fe$ .

az sohbat-kardan khosh- They like to talk. از صحبت كردن خوششان eshân miâyad.

az didan-e dustân-emân We like **to see** our از **دیدن** دوستانمان میاید. khosh-emân miâyad. friends.

Parallel to khosh- âmadan az is the construction bad- âmadan az 'to dislike, to be displeased by.'

از این غذا بدم میاید. az in qazâ bad-am I dislike this food.
miâyad.

az film-i ke dishab didim We didn't dislike the از فیلمی که دیشب دیدیم bad-eman náyâmad. movie we saw last night.

When the "logical" subject of these expressions is other than pronominal, the resumptive construction (§46) is used.

barâdar-e rezâ—az برادر رضا از تهران tehrân khosh-**esh** némiâyad.

Reza's brother doesn't like Tehran.

pirzanhâ-ye deh—az u پیرزنهای ده از او بد**شان** bad-**eshân** miâmad.

The old women of the village disliked her.

50.2 Another common impersonal is خوش گذشتن به khosh-gozashtan be 'to have a good time.' The Persian verb is invariably in the third person singular, and the English subject follows the preposition be.

be man khayli khosh- بمن خيلي خوش گذشت. gozasht.

I had a really good time.

ânjâ be shomâ khosh- آنجا به شما خوش bogozarad.

May you have a good time there.

-be dâryush khosh به داریوش خوش ?migozarad میگذرد

Is Darius having a good time?

50.3 In the expressions  $kh\hat{a}b$ -  $\hat{a}madan$  'to get sleepy' and  $kh\hat{a}b$ - bordan 'to fall asleep,' although  $kh\hat{a}b$  is actually the subject of both verbs, they are similar to the impersonals in that the English subject is expressed pronominally in Persian.

- § 51 Uses of the present subjunctive II. The present subjunctive occurs as a verbal complement of the following expressions. The subordinating conjunction 4 ke, like the English 'that,' may be omitted.
- 51.1 After all impersonal constructions of possibility, probability, necessity, and preference.

emkân-dârad (ke) **náyâ-** It's possible I won't yam. It's possible I won't

### LESSON SEVENTEEN

emkân-nádârad (ke) امكان ندارد (كه) بيايم. bíâvam. lâzem bud (ke) béravid. لازم بود (که) بروید.

It's not possible for me to come.

It was necessary for you to go.

(كه) برويد. lâzem nábud (ke) béravid.

It wasn't necessary for you to go.

ehtemâl-dârad (ke) احتمال دارد (که) همانجا hamânjâ bémânand.

It's probable that they will stay there.

51.2 After all personal expressions of desire, will, and preference. English equivalents almost all have a complementary infinitive in such constructions.

mikhâhand bárgardand. They want to return.

mayl nádâram be shahr I'm not inclined to go to ميل ندارم به شهر **برو**م. béravam. town.

town.

وصد داشتند آنکاررا aasd-dâshtand ân kâr-râ They intended to do it. **bókonand**.

ترجیح میدهیم آنطور tarjih-midehim ântawr نطور nábâshad.

We prefer it not to be like that.

51.3 After expressions of command and prohibition.

be u goftam (ke) béneshi- I told him to sit down.

farmudand (ke) mâ nára- They ordered us not to فرمودند (که) ما نرویم. go.

51.4 After all expressions of hope.

omidvar-am baz-ham اميدوارم بازهم شمارا

I hope I'll see you again.

shomâ-râ bébinam.

shomâ-râ bébinam.

I hope I'll be able to go.

omidvâr-am (ke) bétavânam béravam.

vânam béravam.

I hoped I would be able

vânam béravam.

to go.

As shown in the last two examples, English has a strict sequence of tense in such constructions. There is no sequence of tense in Persian: the complement of a hope for the future is always in the present subjunctive.

omid-esh in-ast ke hami- It is his hope that he will امیدش این است که she dar ânjâ bémânad. remain there always.

omid-esh in-bud ke hami- It was his hope that he امیدش این بود که همیشه she dar ânjâ bémânad. would remain there always.

51.5 After expressions of doubt.

shakk-dâram ke bétavâ- I doubt he can undernad in matlab-râ stand this matter. béfahmad.

shakk-dâshtand ke bíâ- They doubted whether من داشتند که بیایند یا yand yâ na. they should come or not.

51.6 After expressions of opinion where doubt is implied. Simple statements of opinion where no doubt in implied are in the indicative. Compare the following:

فکر میکنم که آنجاست. I think he is there. باشد. *fekr-mikonam ke ânjâ* I think he **may be** there. bâshad.

The subjunctive is used after negative verbs of thinking with reference to the present or the future.

i fekr-némikonam ke ânjâ I don't think he's there. فكر نميكنم كه آنجا باشد.

i fekr-némikonam ke I don't think they'll فکر نمیکنم که بیایند. bíâyand. come.

i don't think it'll rain فکر نمیکنم که فردا fekr-némikonam ke fardâ I don't think it'll rain bârân bíâyad. tomorrow.

51.7 After expressions of emotion when the state or action of the dependent verb is subsequent to or as yet unrealized at the time of the main verb.

mitarsam u-râ paydâ- I'm afraid I won't find nákonam. her.

we'll be happy **to see** خوشحال میشویم شمارا shoshhâl mishavim you.

## LESSON SEVENTEEN

When the state or action of the dependent verb has taken place prior to the exoression of emotion, the dependent verb is in the indicative.

نوشحاليم كه آمدهايد. *khoshhâl-im ke âmade-id*. We're happy you've come.

## Vocabulary 17

أشپزخانه مسلط مسلط مسلط مشرخانه أشپزخانه مسلط الميد ا

دیگر digar (+ neg.) no more, no longer

زمین zamin ground, land, earth; floor

sar-e kelâs in class, to class

class

farangi European

matlab pl مطالب matâleb

matter, topic

ma'mulan usually

Verbs

ehtemâl-dâshtan (impersonal + subj.) to be probable احتمال داشتن bad- âmad- az dislike بد... آمد از bidâr-shodan to wake up

bidâr-shodan to sleep, go to sleep, lie down خوابیدن (خواب) خوش... آمد از hhâbidan/khâb- to sleep, go to sleep, lie down خوش... آمد از کشیدن darâz-keshidan to stretch out

keshidan/kesh- to draw, pull, stretch کشدن (کش)

Some common given names:

زهرا زهرا Zahrâ Zahra (fem.) واله Zhâle Zhaleh (fem.) واله Shahlâ Shahla (fem.) شيرين Shirin Shirin (fem.) شيرين Layli Leili (fem.) مريم Maryam Maryam (fem.) هما Homâ Homa (fem.) احمد Ahmad Ahmad (masc.)

جواب Javâd Javad (masc.) جواب Hasan Hassan (masc.) جسن Hosayn Hossein (masc.) برضا Rezâ Reza (masc.) برضا Mohammad (commonly pronounced Mammad) Mohammad (masc.) هجود Mahmud Mahmoud (masc.)

## Exercise 17

(a) For the following use the khosh-  $\hat{a}$ mad- az construction (e.g.,  $u-in-\hat{a}$ mad > u az in khosh-esh  $\hat{a}$ mad):

(b) Give appropriate answers to the following questions:

(c) Read and translate the following sentences:

#### LESSON SEVENTEEN

۳ معمولاً جواد از غذای فرکمی خوشش میآید ۴ لازم نیست آن چنر کورا به ما نشان بدیمند ۵ باید بهٔ ظرفهارا به آشپرخانه سبریم. ۶ احرال دارد که من امشب زود بخوابم. ۷ امروز صبح به او گفتم که بهترین تباسهایش را بیوشد ۸ از زود رسدن بدش میآید ۹ مکن است که رضاً دیمر سر کلاس نیآید ۱۰ از دیدن دوستان ایرانی ام و صحبت کردن با آنها خوشم میایه

## (d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Last week the things I wanted finally arrived.
- 2. Is it possible for us to enter that building?
- 3. I doubt Javad can answer your question.
- 4. Reza wanted to stretch out on the bed for half an hour.
- 5. This is at least the third time that we are doing this.
- 6. No sooner had I picked up the newspaper than I saw it was [use present tense] yesterday's.
- 7. Who's that Iranian I saw you with last night?
- 8. I hope they won't come here anymore.
- 9. Why do you want to live in that old house?
- 10. I want to take my clothes off and go to sleep.

لارنس هجرهم

## Lesson Eighteen

## § 52 Totally impersonal constructions.

52.1 The totally impersonal construction is formed with the impersonal verbs  $b\hat{a}yad$  ('must') or باید  $sh\hat{a}yad$  ('may') plus the short infinitive (past stem). The impersonal is equivalent to English expressions with 'one' (French on and German man) or, with transitive verbs, a passive construction.

bâyad raft. باید رفت

One must go (il faut

aller).

shâyad goft. شابد گفت

One may say, it may be

said.

nábâyad nâomid bud. نباید ناامید بود

One shouldn't be despondent.

52.2 The impersonal construction for 'can' with توانستن tavânestan is made by dropping the third-person singular ending of the present (ميتواند mitavânad > ميتواند mitavân) and adding the short infinitive.

mítavân raft. ميتوان رفت

One can go.

némitavân goft. نمی توان گفت

One cannot say / it cannot be said.

In the past, the third-person singular form (ميتوانست mitavânest), which has no personal ending to begin with, is used with the short infinitive.

mítavânest fahmid. ميتوانست فهميد

One could understand.

mítavânest goft. ميتوانست گفت

One could say, it could be said.

In modern and spoken Persian ميشود *míshod* and ميشود *míshavad* are commonly used as impersonals with the short infinitive in the sense of possibility.

míshavad goft. میشود گفت

One can say, it's possible to say.

#### LESSON EIGHTEEN

némishod bâvar-kard. نمی شد باور کرد

One couldn't believe it /
It wasn't possible to
believe it

§ 53 The participial absolute. Sentences in literary Persian are commonly characterized by a high degree of complexity (subordination and co-ordination) and length. In order to relieve the monotony of a number of finite verbs connected by conjunctions, the participial absolute is used in sentences that contain more than several parallel verbs. Identical to the past participle (§28), the participial absolute shows neither person nor tense but takes its logical tense from the finite verb at the end of the sentence. When the subject of both the participial absolute and the main verb is the same, that subject is normally expressed before the participial absolute. The participial absolute construction is used very much like the ablative absolute in Latin, the genitive absolute in Greek, and the -ip converb in Turkish.

hosayn vâred-e otâq حسين وارد اطاق شده shode, neshast.

Hossein, having come into the room, sat down.

If the subject of the participial absolute is pronominal and different from the subject of the main verb, the pronoun must be expressed.

**u** vâred-e otâq shode, **u** vâred-e otâq shode, رفتند hame raftand.

When **he** came into the room, everybody left.

In substandard writing the participial absolute is often followed by the co-ordinating conjunction, although strictly speaking it should not be used in this construction.

bârhâ-ye khod-emân-râ بارهای خودمان را بسته و baste-o be râh oftâdim.

baste-o be râh oftâdim.

fardâ be shahr rafte-o dustân-am-râ khâham

did.

Having tied up our loads, we set out.

I'll go to town tomorrow and see my friends.

§ 54 Reported speech and verbs of sense perception. All speech reported with فتن goftan in the past is quoted in the same tense in which it was originally stated. In such usage the conjunction ke, which introduces both direct and indirect speech, should be thought of as a type of quotation mark.

goftam ke miâyam.	$\left\{ \right.$	I said, "I'm coming." I said I was coming.
goft ke miâyam. گفت که میایم	$\left\{ \right.$	He said, "I'm coming." He said I was coming.
goft ke miâyad. گفت که میاید	$\left\{ \right.$	He said, "He's coming." He said he was coming.

Similarly, the tense after past verbs of seeing, hearing, knowing, guessing, understanding, believing, etc. (verbs of sense perception) is given in the subordinate clause exactly as it would have been at the moment of perception. This is unlike English, where the subordinate verb is sequential according to the tense of the main verb. In Persian, if at the time of perception the verb was present, it remains present; if past, it remains past.

shenidam ke mariz-id. شنیدم که مریضید shenidam ke marizbudid.

I heard you were ill.

I heard you had been ill.

vaqt-i ke didam kâzem وقتى كه ديدم كاظم آنجا ânjâ nist, hads-zadam به مدرسه رفته است ast

When I saw that Kazem wasn't there, I guessed he had gone to school.

میدانستم که شما نمیآئید midânestam ke shomâ némiâid. I knew you weren't coming/wouldn't come.

آنوقت فهمیدم که چرا ânvaqt fahmidam ke أنجا نیست cherâ ânjâ nist.

Then I understood why he wasn't there.

## Vocabulary 18

oftâdan/oft- to fall, befall افتادن (افت)

اتفاق ettefâq pl -ât event, something that happens by chance; اتفاق ettefâq-oftâdan for something to happen, occur (in this construction ettefâq is the subject of the verb oftâdan: اتفاق ettefâq-i oftâd 'something happened,' اتفاق بدى افتاده ettefâq-e bad-i oftâde-ast 'something bad has happened')

باور کردن bâvar-kardan to believe باور کردن râh oftâdan to get under way, start راه افتادن out

#### LESSON EIGHTEEN

ba'id unlikely بعيد

ييش آمدن pish-âmadan to come up, happen

בליי, زدن hads-zadan to guess

shodan (3rd-person singular only as an impersonal) to be possible (+ subjunctive complement 'to do something')

ineshastan/neshin- to sit, sit down (the present tense is used only for habitual action (هميشه همينجا مي نشينه hamishe haminjâ míneshinam 'I always sit here'); the simple past refers to one act of sitting (روى زمين نشستم ru-ye zamin neshastam 'I sat down on the ground')

در اطاق خود نشسته) neshaste budan to be seated, to be sitting نشسته بودن اطاق خود نشسته المعتال dar otâq-e khod neshaste-ast 'he is sitting in his room; در اطاق خود نشسته بود dar otâq-e khod neshaste-bud 'he was sitting in his room')

vâqe'e pl واقعه vaqâye' event, occurrence (with the verb pish-âmadan 'for an event to occur': واقعهٔ مهمی پیش آمد vâqe'eye mohemm-i pish-âmad 'an important event occurred')

## Exercise 18

(a) Change the verbs in the following sentences to totally impersonal constructions (باید برود) bâyad béravad 'he must go' باید برود; bâyad raft 'one must go'; میتوان رفت mitavânad béravad 'he can go' میتواند برود mitavân raft 'one can go'):

۲ می توانم حدس بزنم ۲ نباید فراموش کنیم ۳ نمی شود از اینها بترسی ۴ باید از آن ماجرا تعریف کنند ۵ ساعت ۱۱ شب باید بخوابیم

(b) Change the verbs in boldface to the participial absolute, making any necessary adjustments, and then translate:

۱ آن اتفاق **افتاد** و همه برگشتند. افتادند.

۲ ما براه **افتادیم** و او در خانه ماند. ۶ وارد اطاق **شدند** و نشستند.

۳ واقعهٔ مهمی پیش آمد و نتوانستند ۷ به شهر برمیگردیم و همیشه آنجا

می

۴ آنرا خودم دیدم و باور نمیکنم. ۸ اورا شناختیم و پیشش رفتیم. ۵ لیلی هنوز نرسیده بود و آنها براه

## (c) Read and translate into English:

۱ وقتی که فهمیدند که شما نمیخواهید بروید خودشان براه افتادند.

۲ میدانستم که حتمًا واقعهٔ خیلی مهمی پیش آمده است.

۳ دیدم که شما در آن ساختمان زندگی میکنید.

۴ حدس زد که چرا هنوز نیامده اند.

۵ گفتم که نمی شود حرفهایش را باور کرد.

ع ميداً نستم كه آن اتفاقي كه هميشه از آن ميترسيدم خواهد افتاد.

۷ شنیدم که همسایگان ممکن است قبل از فردا برگردند.

۸ از کجا میدانستید که زمستان سردی خواهد بود؟

۹ خیلی بعید است که آن اتفاقی که میگوئید بیفتد.

۱۰ لباسمرا درآورده و روی تختخواب دراز کشیده خوابم برد.

## (d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. One can guess that all have gone to sleep.
- 2. It is not possible to show you those things now.
- 3. One cannot get lost in that small village.
- 4. I don't like this color.
- 5. Should we throw those old things away?
- 6. Do you believe that such a thing happened?
- 7. Where do you want to sit?
- 8. Did Shahla say she was coming to your house tonight?
- 9. I told Hassan that you wouldn't believe (it1).
- We didn't realize that anything had happened.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> This type of 'it' required by English is not expressed in Persian when the reference is clear in the mind of the speaker.

## حرس نوزوهم

## Lesson Nineteen

## § 55 The past subjunctive.

55.1 Formation of the past subjunctive. The past subjunctive is formed from the past participle and the present subjunctive of *budan* (i.e., its formation is similar to that of the past narrative, but the forms of 'to be' are subjunctive). Stress remains on the last syllable of the participle in all verbs, simple and compound. A paradigm, from *raftan*, is as follows:

rafté-bâsham رفته باشم	rafté-bâshim رفته باشیم
rafté-bâshi رفته باشیٰ	rafté-bâshid رفته باشید
rafté-bâshad رفته باشد	rafté-bâshand رفته باشند

The negative past subjunctive is formed by prefixing the negative  $n\acute{a}$ - to the participle.

nárafte-bâshim, &c. نرفته باشیم nárafte-bâshim, &c.

Examples of various types are as follows.

that you have returned برگشته باشی bar-gashté-bâshi that you have returned برگشته باشی nábude-bâshad that he/she/it not have been dâshté-bâshim that we have had that you have loved

bàr-nádâshte-bâshand that they have not picked up

There are no exceptions to this formation. The present and past subjunctives of داشتن dâshtan (and داشتن dashtan) are identical.

- 55.2 Uses of the past subjunctive.
- (a) The past subjunctive is used for the doubtful past realization of verbs of necessity ('must have'), possibility ('can have'), desire, wishing, etc., where the complement is anterior to the main verb.

الد رفته باشد. bâyad rafte-bâshad. He must have gone.

-bâyad ân kâr-râ karde بايد آن كاررا كرده باشد. bâshad.

He must have done that thing.

. shâyâd âmade-bâshand شايد آمده باشند

They may have come.

vâqe'e-ye mohemm-i واقعهٔ مهمی باید پیش bâyad pish-âmadehâshad.

Some important event must have come up.

némitavânad ân kâr-râ نميتواند آن كاررا كرده

باشد. karde-bâshad.

He cannot have done that thing.

némitavânestam ân kâr- نمیتوانستم آن کاررا کرده râ karde-bâsham.

I couldn't have done it

سمكن أنيست آنرا ديده momken nist ân-râ dide-bâshid.

It isn't possible for you to have seen it.

momken nábud ân-râ ممكن نبود آنرا **ديد**ه . ماشید dide-bâshid

It wasn't possible for you to have seen it.

omidvâr-am be shomâ امیدوارم به شما خوش khosh-gozashtehâshad.

I hope you have had a good time.

(b) The past subjunctive is used in past expressions after the conjunctions of condition and concession.

be shart-i mítavânid بشرطى ميتوانيد برويد که کارتان را کرده

béravid **ke** kâr-etân**-**râ .اشىد karde-bâshid

You can go provided you have done your work.

némitavânid yâd-gerefte- نميتوانيد ياد گرفته

اینکه bâshid magar inke madrase rafte-bâshid. You can't have learned unless you have gone to school.

némitavânid masjed-e نمتوانيد مسجد گوهر شادرا دیده باشید بجز اىنكە مشهد رفته باشيد.

gawharshâd-râ didebâshid bejoz ínke mashhad rafte-bâshid. You can't have seen the Gawhar-Shad Mosque unless you have gone to Mashhad.

خودش نوشته باشد، افكارش مال او نست.

háttâ agar-ham in ketâb- Even though he may حتى اگرهم اين كتابرا râ khod-esh neveshte~ bâshad, afkâr-esh mâle u nist.

have written this book himself, the ideas in it are not his.

#### LESSON NINETEEN

§ 56 Back-formation of infinitives and denominative verbs. As has been seen, many verbs in Persian have irregular present stems. Quite a few verbs, in addition to their original infinitives, have also a "regularized" back-formed infinitive made by adding the regular infinitival ending -idan (occasionally -dan) to the present stem.

" gardidan 'to turn' گردیدن جardidan 'to turn' گردیدن جardidan 'to turn' گردیدن جardidan 'to turn' رستن رستن معناه ورئیدن جazardan 'to grow' رستن معناه gozâshtan گذار جazardan 'to put, place' گذاشتن

This process results in two past stems, usually more or less identical in meaning—although occasionally differing slightly in usage—with one present stem. The same regular infinitival ending -idan is used to form denominative (derived from nouns) verbs.

ifahm 'understanding' > فهميدن fahmidan 'to understand' فهم فهم dozd 'thief' > دزديدن dozdidan 'to rob' دزديدن raqsidan 'to dance'

§ 57 Temporal use of 4 ke. When the conjunction 4 ke is used in a temporal sense ('when'), it can never be the first word in the clause. A subject pronoun must be interpolated if there is no element other than the verb. Such temporal clauses always precede the main clause.

anhâ ke raftand, akbar آنها که رفتند، اکبر آمد. âmad.

u ke mord, tanhâ او که مرد تنها ماندند. mândand.

bachche ke budam, بچه که بودم زندگی zendegi sâdetar bud.

intawr **ke** harf-mizani, اینطور که حرف میزنی، man némitavânam من نمیتوانم حرفهایترا harfhâ-yet-râ bâvarkonam. When they went, Akbar came.

When he died, they were left alone.

When I was a child, life was simpler.

When you talk like this, I can't believe what you say.

<sup>[</sup>בעבענט gardidan is used to replace -shodan in compounds to avoid excessive repetition. Hence, פאר ב מבענט vâred-gardidan could be used to replace פאר ב מבנט vâred-shodan.

The original verb, ستن<sub>rostan</sub>, is now obsolete and has been replaced by ruidan.

By convention گذاشتن gozâshtan is spelled with zâl, while گذاشتن gozâshtan is spelled with zâl, while گذاشتن

The temporal clause follows the main clause only when it introduces a single action that interrupts an on-going, continuous act or when it is preceded by hanuz and a negative remote past tense used in the sense of 'had scarcely, had barely' (see §41.1c).

ketâb-mikhândam ke كتاب ميخواندم كه خبر khabar-e ân vâge'e آن واقعه رسيد. resid.

I was reading when news of that event arrived

مجتبی پا شد و از اطاق

rajab sohbat-mikard ke رجب صحبت میکرد که mojtabâ pâ-shod-o az otâq khârej-shod.

Rajab was talking when Mojtaba got up and left the room.

be hammâm-e hâjj به حمام حاج هاشم hâshem nazdik- نزدیک میشدم که قلبم

mishodam ke qalb-am istâd.

I was approaching the Hajj Hashem Bath when my heart stood still.

man hanuz bidâr من هنوز بیدار نشده بودم náshode-budam ke که صدای سماوررا

sedâ-ye samâvar-râ shenidam.

I had scarcely waked up when I heard the sound of the samovar.

§ 58 Impersonals with آدم âdam. The totally impersonal construction (§52) is used where the impersonal 'one' is the subject of the main verb. When the impersonal is other than subject, the impersonal pronoun آدم âdam 'one' is used. It is always marked by -râ when it is the direct object of a verb. Such impersonal sentences are much more common in Persian than 'one' is in English.

نميتوان آدمرا باين آسانى *némitavân âdam-râ be in* It's not possible to fool *âsâni gul-zad.* **one** so easily.

némigozârand âdam kâr- They won't let **one** do نمیگذارند آدم کار خودرا e khod-râ bokonad. one's work.

cherâ **âdam**-râ ânqadr چرا آدمرا آنقدر اذیت aziyat-mikonand?

Why do they annoy one so?

## Vocabulary 19

*ágar* if ântawr thus, like that intawr thus, like this

bar-khâstan/ برخيز bar-khiz- to rise up, arise, stand up (literary)

#### LESSON NINETEEN

پا شدن pâ-shodan to get up, stand up (colloquial)

پدید شدن padid-shodan to appear, come into view و بدید شدن -e pish ago

tanhâ alone, only (as an attributive and predicate adjective, tanhâ means 'alone, by oneself'; when it means 'only,' it precedes the word it modifies, e.g. تنها چیزی که دیدم *tanhâ chiz-i ke didam...* 'the only thing I saw...' and کاری که کردم *tanhâ kâr-i ke* kardam... 'the only thing I did...')

جز، بجز (be)joz (+ neg.) except, only (joz, or bejoz, with a complementary مجز این کار دیگری از negative means '(nothing) except,' as in joz in, kâr-e digar-i az dast-ash bar-nemiâyad دستش بر نمیاید 'he can't do anything except this,' or 'he can only do this'); / جز/ (be)joz in-ke unless

حتى háttâ even دكان cokkân shop, small store

-be بشرطی که sharâyet condition, qualification شرط شرطی shart-i-ke provided that, on condition that

afkâr idea, thought افكار fekr pl فكر

qavi strong, powerful قوى koshtanl كشتن kosh- to kill مطمئن motma'enn sure, certain مگر اينكه mágar in-ke unless

ناپدید nâpadid not visible; ناپدید شدن nâpadid-shodan to disappear

nemudan/نمودن nemâ- to appear, seem (intrs.); to represent, show (trs.) (this verb is often used as a replacement for -kardan in compounds to avoid excessive repetition, and in that case it loses its primary meaning; the first vowel of *nemudan* is variable: it is pronounced nemud-/nemâ-, namud-/namâ-, and nomud-/nomâ-)

yâd memory (yâd also occurs in expressions for which there is no infinitival construction: يادم آمد yâd-am âmad 'I remembered' and يادم رفت yâd-am raft 'I forgot.' These expressions are used in all tenses and moods. The verb is always third-person singular with yâd as the subject; the subject of the English construction is expressed as a pronominal enclitic after yâd.)

yâd-dâdan to teach yâd-gereftan to learn یاد گرفتن

#### Exercise 19

(a) Give the appropriate past subjunctive form of the verbs in parentheses and then translate:

۱ علی و رضا ماید دیروز \_\_\_\_ (رفع ۲ خلی بعد است جنان واقعه ای \_\_\_\_ (میش آمدن). ۳ کر نمی کنم آن اتفاقی که میکسید ..... (افقادن). ۴ ایک دارد آنها قل از ما \_\_\_\_ (براه افتادن). ۵ امدوارم که محر آنهارا به شام \_\_\_ (شان دادن). ع نمی توانید این چنرارا ارزان \_\_\_\_ (خریدن). ۷ بمیار المیان ماید حای دیگری \_\_\_\_ (رفتن). ۸ آن آ قا باحمال قوی باید دو روز میش \_\_\_\_ ربم ۹ مكن نست كه من وارد خانه شما\_\_\_\_ (ثدن). ۱۰ او ثاید آنهارا \_\_\_ (کشقن). ۱۱ شانمی توانید این را قبلاً \_\_\_\_ (دیدن). ۱۲ امک ن زارد که ما اینمه را \_\_\_\_ (ماد ۱۳ تها چنری که ممکن است آنها \_\_\_\_ (ندیدن) ا ۱۴ شا شاید\_\_\_ (یاد رفتن). ۱۵ نمی تواند ان کاررا \_\_\_\_ (کر دن) بچز اینکه خوب \_\_\_\_ (ماد کر فتن (b) Read and translate the following:

۱ تها واقعه ای که پیش آمد زیاد مهم نبود.
۲ آنقدر قیمتها کران شده است که کمر اینکه آدم خیلی پولدار باشد نمیتواند کو چکترین چنری دا بخرد ۴ حدس زدم که خیلی بعید است آنها بهم بمچنان فکر کنند.
۴ یادتان نرود چند تا تخم مرغ از دکان بیاورید ۵ ماشین با نیج دقیقه راه نرفته بود که دبی که در آن نافار خورده بودیم ناپدید شد ۶ مکر میکر دم که بهانجا نشته اید ۷ بشرطی میتوانید بشینید که جا باشد ۸ پیش از اینکه آن حجه فارا ببندیم ، مطمئن باشیم که بهه چنر درست است. ۹ به او گفتم که جانجا بشیند و برنخنرد. ۴ به او گفتم که جانجا بشیند و برنخنرد. ۱۰ ماعت شش بعد از خر ۲۹ استنداه ۱۳۳۹ بود که به اصفهان رسیدیم. ۱۰ ماعت شش بعد از خر ۲۹ استنداه ۱۳۳۹ بود که به اصفهان رسیدیم. ۱

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. I must have eaten something bad this morning.
- 2. He can't have died: I saw him just (همين) yesterday.
- 3. Her life must have been relatively quiet.
- 4. You can't have seen me last year unless you were in Iran too.
- 5. Get up (sing.)! Let's go to town.
- 6. Even the children here seem old: they must have seen a lot of evil.
- 7. Ali can't have gone to sleep already.
- 8. It's not possible for them to have thrown all my books away!
- 9. They should be here at six o'clock, provided nothing bad has happened.
- 10. The only thing I know is that (این است که) they are sitting in that room.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>For the reading of dates, see Appendix B.

## Composition

Write a short composition either on what you do every morning or on what  $y_{0q}$  did this morning, using as much of the following vocabulary as you can.

otâq-e khâb bedroom boland-shodan to get up بلند شدن مدار شرن bidâr-shodan to wake up jam'-kardan to gather together chây dorost-kardan to fix tea hammâm bathroom خمر دندان khamir-e dandân toothpaste dastshui washbasin (ومتثونى dam-e dastshui 'at the washbasin') ومأنها من المالي والمالي والما dandânpâkkon toothbrush واندان ماک کور، dush-gereftan to take a shower rakhtekhâb bedclothes, sheets rish-tarâshidan to shave sar-e kâr raftan to go to work sar-e kelâs raftan to go to class sar-o surat shostan to wash the face savâr-e otobus shodan to get on the bus sâbun soap صابون sobhâne breakfast; صجانه درست کرون sobhâne dorost-kardan to fix علت زون qalt-zadan to toss and turn qahve dorost-kardan to make coffee 'I put on my clothes') لباسم را بوشير ( lebâs-pushidan to get dressed لباس بوشيدن

## لارتس بيستم

## **Lesson Twenty**

8 59 Uses of the subjunctive III: Adjectival clauses. The subjunctive is used in adjectival clauses of the following types.

59.1 When the antecedent of the relative clause is a true indefinite (i.e. the 'someone who, anyone who' type). Compare and contrast the indicative with the subjunctive in the following examples:

-dombâl-e kas-i migar دنبال کسی میگردم که -dam ke fârsi balad فارسی بلد **باشد**.

I'm looking for someone (anyone) who knows Persian.

dombâl-e **ân mard-i** mi- د نبال آن مردی میگردم gardam ke fârsi balad gardam **ke** fârsi baladast.

I'm looking for the man who knows Persian.

sa'y-mikonam chiz-i pay- I'm trying to find some-اسعی میکنم چیزی پیدا dâ-konam ke be kâr thing I can use. bébaram.

sa'y-mikonam ân chiz-i- سعی میکنم آن چیزی را râ paydâ-konam ke

shomâ be kâr mibarid.

I'm trying to find the thing you use.

مثل Included in this category is the subjunctive used in descriptive clauses after mesl-e 'like' when the complement of mesl-e is indefinite.

jam'iyyat, mesl-e barf-i- جمعیت، مثل برفی که آب شود، به پراکندگی

ke âb shavad, be parâkandegi raft.

The group dispersed like snow that was melting.

mesl-e palang-i ke joft-e مثل پلنگی که جفت khod-râ gom karde-غرش میکرد. bâshad qorreshmikard.

He growled like a leopard that had lost its mate.

This type of indefinite adjectival clause includes all the relative pronouns and conjunctions like هرچه hárche 'whatever,' هرکه hárke 'whoever,' هرکه hárkojâ 'wherever,' هروقت hárvaqt 'whenever' and هروقت hárchand 'however many/ much.' These same relative words also occur as definite, in which case they mean 'everything that,' 'everyone who,' 'everywhere' and 'every time that' and are followed by the indicative. Contrast the following pairs, and note especially the present and past subjunctives.

1 3		
هرکه بیاید باید صبر کند.	harke bíâyad, bâyad sabr-konad.	Whoever comes must wait.
هرکه میاید دلش میخواهد بماند.	harke míâyad del-esh mikhâhad bémânad.	Everybody who comes wants to stay.
هركه آمده باشد نميخواهم اورا ببينم.	harke âmade-bâshad, némikhâham u-râ bébinam.	Whoever may have come, I don't want to see him.
هرکه آنجا رفته است خوشش آمده است.	harke ânjâ rafte-ast khosh-esh âmade-ast.	Everybody who has gone there has liked it.
هرچه بگویم فرقی نمیکند.	harche béguyam, farq-i némikonad.	Whatever I may say, it won't make any difference.
هرچه میگوید درست است.	harche míguyad dorost- ast.	Everything he says is right.
هرکجا بروم بازهم به همینجا برمیگردم.	harkojâ béravam, bâz- ham be haminjâ bar- migardam.	Wherever I may go, I'll still come back here.
هرکجا میروم چیز جالبی پیدا میکنم.	harkojâ míravam, chiz-e jâleb-i paydâ- mikonam.	Everywhere I go I find something interesting.
هروقت بيايد بگوئيد من نيستم.	harvaqt bíâyad, béguid man nistam.	Whenever he comes, say I'm not here.
هر وقت ميايد اقلاً پنج ساعت ميماند.	harvaqt miâyad aqallan panj sâ'at mimânad.	Every time he comes he stays at least five hours.
50.2 The subjunctive co	amplements any negative e	expression The "could" that

59.2 The subjunctive complements any negative expression. The "could" that often comes into the English is built into the Persian subjunctive.

## LESSON TWENTY

hichkas-i ânjâ nábud ke هیچکسی آنجا نبود که فارسی حرف **بزند**. fârsi harf-bézanad.

who could speak Persian.

man hammâl nistam ke من حمال نيستم كه آن ân sanduqhâ-râ béba

ân sanduahâ-râ bébaram.

I'm no porter that I should carry those trunks.

There was no one there

injâ hich-i nist ke be اینجا هیچی نیست که ىدرد شما بخورد. dard-e shomâ bókhorad.

There's nothing here that could be of any use to you.

hichkas-i-râ nádidam ke هیچ کسی را ندیدم که آن ân ketâb-râ nákhânde ân ketâb-râ nákhândebâshad.

I never saw anyone who hadn't read that book.

fekr-**némikonam** in be فكر نميكنم اين بدردتان dard-etân **bókhorad**. dard-etân bókhorad.

I don't think this will be of any use to you.

in chiz-i **nist** ke ânhâ این چیزی **نیست** که آنها nádânand.

This is not anything they don't know.

59.3 The subjunctive is used after comparatives with  $a = 2 \dots 2 a = 2 a + 2 a = 2$ This construction corresponds to the English 'too...to do something.'

shomâ bâhushtar az ân شما باهو شتر از آن هستىد hastid ke harfhâ-ye u-râ bâvar-konid.

You are too intelligent to believe what he says.

ابنطور گریه کند.

bozorgtar az ân-ast ke بزرگ تر از آنست,که intawr gerye-konad.

He is too big to cry like this.

59.4 The present subjunctive is used after کاشکر kâsh (or کاشکر kâshki) 'would that, I wish' for future wishes. Unfulfilled wishes in the past will be given in §62.

!kâsh intawr bémânad كاش اينطور بماند!

I wish it would stay like this!

!kâshki bíâyand كاشكى بيايند

I wish they would come!

## § 60 Uses of the infinitive.

60.1 The Persian infinitive functions like the English gerund, or verbal noun in '-ing,' and is used substantively (as a noun) as the subject of a verb and complement of a preposition.

*qam-khordan fâyede ná-* There's no use in **being** dârad. **sad**.

از گریه کردن خسته شد. az gerye-kardan khaste He grew tired of crying. shod.

وا**رد شدن** در زدم. qabl az vâred-shodan I knocked before enterdar zadam. ing.

bachchehâ shoru' be The children started run-میچه ا شروع به **دویدن** مردند. **davidan** kardand. **ning**.

60.2 Adverbial modifiers of the infinitive precede the infinitive.

يو**د رسيدن** فايده ندارد. zud residan fâyede nádâ- There's no use in arrivrad. ing early.

به صحیح نوشتن توجه be sahih neveshtan Pay attention to writing داشته باشید. tavajjoh dâshte-bâshid. correctly.

60.3 Semantic objects of the infinitive.

(a) Non-specific and generic objects precede the infinitive and form compounds.

rakht-shostan dar chonin It was difficult to wash رخت شستن در چنین khânehâ-i sakht bud. clothes in such houses.

tambr-jam'-kardan sar- Stamp-collecting is a تمبر جمع کردن سرگرمی garmi-e khub-i-st. good hobby.

آب گرم کردن مشکل **âb-garm-kardan** moshkel It isn't difficult **to heat** بیست. water.

(b) Modified and definite objects of the infinitive are either linked to the infinitive by the *ezâfe* or occur as pronominal enclitics.

shostan-e rakhthâ-ye Washing dirty clothes is شستن رختهای کثیف shostan-e rakhthâ-ye washing dirty clothes is مستن رختهای کثیف میشگی shegi-ast.

. از **دیدنتان** خوشحالیم. az didan-etân khoshhâl- We're happy to see you. im.

بعد از **دیدن آنها** یادم آمد ba'd az didan-e ânhâ After seeing them I re-مکه آنهارا قبلا دیده yâd-am âmad ke ânhâ- membered I had seen râ qablan dide-budam. them before.

## LESSON TWENTY

(c) Infinitival subjects are either linked to the infinitive by the ezâfe or are pronominal enclitics when there is no definite object.1

qabl az vâred-shodan-e قبل از وارد شدن آنها . دررفته بودم **ânhâ** darrafte-budam.

I had run away before they came in.

ba'd az sarshenâs- بعد از سرشناس شدن اه ما ديگر اورا نديديم. **shodan-e u**, mâ digar u-râ nadidim

After he became well known, we didn't see him any more.

(d) When an infinitive serves as complement to an adjective, it is linked by the ezâfe.

sobh-e zud âmâde-ye صبح زود آمادهٔ رفتن بود. raftan bud.

He was ready to go early in the morning.

-sargarm-e nâme سرگرم نامه نوشتنيم.

We're busy writing letters.

mashqul-e zarf-shostan- I'm busy washing مشغول ظرف شستنم.

dishes.

mashqul-e shostan-e مشغول شستن ظرفهای zarfhâ-ye kasif-am.

I'm busy washing the dirty dishes.

(e) The infinitive after در حسال dar hâl-e often translates into an English progressive tense (liké the French en train de faire).

mâ dar hâl-e gush ما در حال گوش کردن

kardan budim-o u dar بوديم و او در حال hâl-e sohbat-kardan.

We were listening, and he was speaking.

## Vocabulary 20

be dard khordan to be of use, to be useful (the person for whom مدرد خوردن something is of use or benefit is expressed as an ezâfe complein be dard-e man né- این به درد من نمیخورد mikhorad 'this is of no use to me')

ىلد بودن balad-budan to know, know how, know about (what one knows is 139

In modern Persian both subject and definite (or modified) object of an infinitive are not expressed together. Such a construction as 'her washing the dirty clothes,' classically expressed by شستن او رختهای کثیف, shostan-e u rakhtâ-ye kasif-râ, is now circumlocuted as a noun clause (تکه او رختهای کثیفرا شست) 'the fact that she washed the dirty clothes'). تمبر جمع کردن من The subject of an infinitive with a generic object may be expressed, as in tambr-jam'-kardan-e man 'my collecting stamps.'

a noun complement of balad-budan, e.g. فارسى بلدم fârsi balad-am 'I know Persian"; 'to know how to do something' is ملدم فارسى حرف بزنم expressed as a following subjunctive, e.g. balad-am fârsi harf-bezanam 'I know how to speak Persian '

bi ân-ke without, unless (in English 'without' is followed by a gerund; in Persian bi ân-ke is followed by a subjunctive, which is necessarily personal, e.g. بي آنكه برويد نمي بينيد bi ân-ke béravid, némibinid 'without going (unless you go), you won't see it')

jâleb nice, interesting

و dombâl-e after, on the heels of: دنبال چیزی کسی گشتن dombâl-e after, on the heels of chiz-i/kas-i gashtan to look/search for something/somebody

sargarm busy (see usage note to سرگرم below)

sa'y-kardan to try (+ present subj.)

sinemâ cinema, movie theater

shoru' beginning; شروع شدن shoru'-shodan to start, begin

شروع شدن المسلمة على المسلمة المس (intransitive); הית פש אני shoru'-kardan to begin, start (be + infinitive, doing something)

shu- to wash شو shostanl شستن

غم خوردن; qam grief; غم خوردن qam-khordan to be sad, grieve فایده fâyede pl فواید favâyed benefit, use فرق کردن با farq difference; part (in the hair); فرق make a difference to (someone)

فیلم film film, movie gerye weeping; گریه کردن gerye-kardan to cry, to weep mesl-e in-ke (+ subj.) as though are followed by either مشغول mashqul busy, occupied (مشغول and مشغول a complementary noun or an infinitive with the ezâfe, or they are من سرگرم (مشغول) این preceded by be + noun or infinitive, e.g. من به این کار man sargarm (mashqul)-e in kâr-am or کارم man be in kâr sargarm (mashqul)-am 'I'm سرگرم (مشغول) أم busy with this job'; مشغول refers to occupation and being busy in a broad sense, whereas سرگرم is normally restricted to pleasurable activities); مشغول کار خود شدن mashqul-e kâr-e khod shodan to mind one's own business

مرچند hárchand however much/many

hárche whatever مركحا hárkojâ wherever hárke whoever هر که

hárvagt whenever هروقت

#### Exercise 20

(a) Complete the following sentences using the verbs given in parentheses and then translate:

۱ ونبال کار حالی ممر وم که \_\_ (کرون). ۵ بعد از \_\_ (رسین) رمنا، ما ممه براه امآدی ع هرکه چنین روایی را \_\_ (کرون)، حمّا خوب \_\_ (یاو ۷ ثما هرکحا انهارا \_\_ (کذاشتن)، فرقی نمی کند ۸ قل از \_ (ثناختی) اش فکر مکر دم کبی دیک هرجه \_\_ (کم کر دن) ماید\_\_ (سدا کر دن<sup>:</sup> \_\_\_ (خواندن) این ۱۲ آنطور که او \_\_\_ (کرمه کر دن)، ماید اتفاق خیلی مدی برایش \_\_\_ (افتادن). ۱۳ آن بحه کوچکتر از آن است که \_\_ (مدرسه رفتن).

## (b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Whoever said that knows nothing.
- 2. Whatever you do and wherever you go, they will be looking for you.
- 3. I'm trying to tell you about my friends in Iran.
- 4. Zahra is too clever to listen to what he has to say.

- Before coming here, by chance I found something that may be of use to you.
- 6. I like learning things I didn't know before.
- 7. He's trying to find something to do tonight.
- 8. This won't be of any use to you unless you learn it well.
- 9. I don't think the film has started, and the theater isn't far.
- 10. He started speaking before he stood up.

## **Supplementary Vocabulary: Common Materials**

The adjectival form is indicated in parentheses. Although almost all materials are theoretically capable of taking the -in ('made of') adjectival suffix, in practice not all do so.

sofâl(in) clay, pottery sang(i) stone ajor baked brick, tile âluminium aluminum آکومینیوم م. آبری âhan(in) iron simân cement سمال A abr(i) foam rubber shishe(i) glass abrisham(i) silk talâ(i) gold طلا ostokhân(in) bone استوان felezz(i) pl -ât metal فار و کر berenj(i) brass qal'i tin ballur(in) crystal kâshi glazed tile pârche(i) cloth pashm(in) wool kâqaz(i) paper pelâstik(i) plastic بالمسكم pambe(i) cotton kâhgel mudbrick کامی charm(in) leather kattân(i) linen chub(in) wood gach(i) plaster chini china lâstik(i) rubber halabi tinplate mes(in) copper moqavvâ cardboard khest brick sorb(i) lead

#### LESSON TWENTY

## **Review IV**

- (a) Review the vocabulary lists for lessons 16-20.
- (b) Read and translate:

۱ بیچ نوشم نمیآید دنبال چنین چنرانی بکر دم.
۲ نمی توانید حدس بزنید ما کجا بوده ایم.
۳ هر وقت وارد خانه او می شوند مشغول کار دیگریست.
۴ نه غم خور دنیان نه کریه کر دنیان فایده دارد.
۵ معمولاً نمیشود اینهارا تعیم داد.
۷ ممن است آنها بهتر از شا بلد باشند.
۸ باور می کنید که امکسان دارد که او هم چنین کاری را کر ده باشد؟
۴ کار ما زیاد پیش نرفته بود که فهمیدیم پول بیشتری لازم است.
۴ کار ما زیاد پیش نرفته بود که فهمیدیم پول بیشتری لازم است.

- (c) Translate the following into Persian:
  - 1. Don't you want to get under way early tomorrow?
  - 2. It makes no difference to me where you found them. Give them to me!
  - 3. Before you get up, let me say this.
  - 4. We cannot go forward. What should we do now?
  - 5. Have you forgotten to throw those things away?
  - 6. It's possible for you to have a good time there.
  - 7. He said he was coming, but I don't think he knows the way.
  - 8. What time do they usually go to sleep?
  - 9. He doesn't want to tell about that event.
  - 10. I don't love you anymore.

## Additional Vocabulary: Academic Fields and Related Vocabulary

eqtesâd economics اقصاد adabiyât literature

doktorâ doctorate, Ph.D. elâhiyât divinity, theology dandânpezeshki dentistry درانزگی اتان ثای bâstânshenâsi archaeology reshte field رثة bakhsh department, division روانای ravânshenâsi psychology bumshenâsi ecology ومثابي ravânkâvi psychiatry روان کاوی behdâri public health سداري riâziyât mathematics راضات parastâri nursing pezeshki/tebb medicine برسكي، طب zaminshenâsi geology رمن شاسی zistshenâsi biology رستشناس târikh history ارد المارة setâreshenâsi astronomy takhassos specialization shimi chemistry شمي tarbiat-e badan physical ed. tatbiqi comparative تطبقي olum-e siâsi political science علوم ساسي farhang culture فرس tamaddon civilization تران jâme'eshenâsi sociology حامعه ثناسي falsafe philosophy فلره fawq-e lisâns master's degree فوق لسانس jânvarshenâsi zoology حانورشاسي fizik physics فنرمك jarrâhi surgery راجي lisâns bachelor's degree joqrâfiâ geography حغرافا mardomshenâsi anthropology مردثاء jangaldâri forestry حگواري hoquq law me'mâri architecture khâvarshenâsi oriental studies musiqi music مورثقي dâmpezeshki veterinary medimohandesi engineering dâneshkade faculty, school honarhâ-ye zibâ fine arts

# حربن بيست ويكم

### **Lesson Twenty-One**

- 8 61 Conditionals. Conditional constructions in Persian fall into two basic categories, possible and impossible. In the following discussion the terms protasis (the 'if' clause) and apodosis (the result clause) will be used. The normal word for 'if' in Persian is Si ágar.
- 61.1 Possible conditionals are further divided into the actual and the doubtful.
  - (a) In actual conditionals the protasis refers to an action or state that is assumed to be real and actually pertaining. In this type the verb of the protasis is indicative, and 'if' really means 'since.'

If you know (i.e. since you know), why don't you say so?

take us along too.

(b) The doubtful conditional is the type in which the condition set forth in the protasis may or may not be fulfilled or may or may not have been fulfilled. In doubtful conditionals referring to present or future time, the verb of the protasis is either present subjunctive or past absolute; the verb of the apodosis is present, future, or imperative. Although there is very little difference between the present subjunctive and past absolute in the doubtful conditional, the subjunctive implies doubt on the part of the speaker as to'whether or not the condition can be fulfilled. The past absolute is used when the speaker is less concerned with the doubtfulness of the situation than with the eventuality of the condition.

agar bébinam-esh اگر ببینمش (دیدمش)، (**dídam-e**s**h**), salâm-e سلام شمارا ميرسانم. shomâ-râ miresânam. If I see him I'll give him your regards.

agar u-râ paydấ-konam If I find him, I'll kill him! اگر اورا پیدا کنم (کردم)، (-kardam), míkoshamesh!

esn: (agar béravid (raftid), اگر بروید (رفتید)، inhâ-râ farâmush-النهارا فراموش نكنيد. nákonid.

If you go, don't forget these.

Doubtful conditionals referring to past time take the past subjunctive in the protasis.

agar u-râ **didé-bâshid**, اگر اورا **دیده باشید** پس pas mídânid man che

тідиуат.

-agar gonâh-karde اگر گناه کرده باشد، باید

bâshad, bâyad e'terâf-

konad.

agar chonin kâr-i-râ اگر چنین کاری را کرده **باشد**، خیلی زحمت

kardé-bâshad, khavli zahmat-keshide-ast.

If you've seen him, then you know what I'm saying.

If he has done something wrong, he should admit

If he has done such a thing, he has gone to a lot of trouble.

61.2 The impossible conditional, also called contrafactual and irrealis—i.e. the conditional that either cannot be fulfilled in the future or cannot have been fulfilled in the past—uses the past continuous tense in both protasis and apodosis as the irrealis mood. Inasmuch as Persian does not normally distinguish between past irrealis ('if I had been') and future irrealis ('if I were to be'), the correct tense for translation into English must be gained from context.

agar míâmadid, shomâ- اگر میآمدید، شمارا râ mídidam.

If you had come, I would have seen

you.

If you were to come I would see you.

would have been اگر میگفتند، مجبور agar mígoftand, majbúr- obliged to go.

mishodim béravim.

would have been obliged to go.

If they were to say so, we would be oblig-

If they had said so, we

we would be obliged to go.

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

agar be harfhâ-ye man اگر به حرفهای من گوش **gúsh-mikardid**, intav میکردید، اینطور

gúsh-mikardid, intawr némishod.

If you had listened to me, it wouldn't have turned out like this.

budan do not take the بودن dâshtan (and دوست داشتن dâshtan (and داشتن continuous mí- prefix, even in the irrealis.

أن agar jâ-ye shomâ budam, If I were you, I wouldn't شما بودم، آن شما بودم، آن شما بودم، آن شما بودم، آن شما بودم، آن

agar man chonin chiz-i- If I had such a thing, I اگر من چنین چیزی را râ **dâshtam**, némifo-داشتم، نمىفروختم. rukhtam

wouldn't sell it.

In less formal and colloquial Persian the past irrealis is expressed in either or both parts of the conditional by the remote past.

agar u-râ dide-budam, اگر اورا دیده بودم، به او be u gofte-budam.

If I had seen him, I would have told him.

agar injâ mânde-bud, اگر اینجا مانده بود، námorde-bud.

If he had stayed here, he wouldn't have died.

agar do ruz-e digar dar اگر دو روز دیگر در شهر shahr **mânde-budam**. مانده بودم دیوانه divâne mishodam. مى شدم.

If I had stayed in town two more days, I would have gone crazy.

61.3 In conditionals of all types agar is often omitted, particularly in less formal Persian. When it is omitted in possible conditionals, the subjunctive is used in the protasis. In contrafactual conditionals both verbs are in the irrealis (past continuous).

bekeshid.

بخواهيد موفق شويد، békhâhid movaffaq sha- If you want to succeed. بايد زحمت بكشيد. vid, bâyad zahmat-

you must work hard.

kâr-am tamâm bésha- کارم تمام بشود، همراهتان vad, hamrâh-etân vad, hamrâh-etân miâve

If my work is finished, I'll come along with you.

muyum. tormoz-am némigereft, ترمزم نمیگرفت چکار chekâr-mikardim?

If my brakes hadn't held, what would we have done?

némigereft, fawq-esh نميگرفت، فوقش mímordim-o râhat-میشدیم. mishodim.

If they hadn't held, at most we would've died and been at peace.

 $\S$  62 Other irrealis constructions. The irrealis mood (past continuous) is not limited to conditionals but is used for unfulfilled obligation ('should have,' cf. 'must have' in  $\S55.2a$ ) with بايد $b\hat{a}yad$  and its synonyms, بايست $b\hat{a}y\acute{e}st$ , ميايست míbâyesti, and ميبايستي míbâyesti.

.bấyad míraftam باید میرفتم

I should have gone.

بايست ميآمدند. bâyést míâmadand. They should have come.

bâyésti mídânestid ke mâ You should have know بایستی میدانستید که ما némiâim. we weren't coming.
میایستی کاری میکردیم.
míbâyesti kár-i mikardim. We should have done

something.

All constructions that normally require the subjunctive are in the irrealis mood when they are contrafactual.

behtar bud ke diruz zud- It would have been better بهتر بود که دیروز زودتر tar miraftim. had we gone earlier

vesterday.

behtar bud nemiâmadid. It would have been better بهتر بود نمي آمديد.

had you not come.

The irrealis mood occurs after کاشر kâsh or کاشک kâshki ('would that, I wish') for unfulfilled wishes in the past (cf. §59.4 for unfulfillable wishes for the future).

.kâshki míâmad کاشکی می آمد

I wish he had come.

kâsh man be donyâ کاش من بدنیا نمیآمدم! némiâmadam!

Would that I had never

.kâshki injâ budid کاشکی ابنجا بودید

Wish you were here.

been born!

§ 63 Expressions of temporal duration. In present expressions of temporal duration, where English uses the present perfect, the length of time is given in Persian with -ast followed by ke (optional) and (1) the present tense of 'to be':

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

se sâl-ast (ke) injâ I've been here for three اينجا hastam. years.

(که) اينجا hastam. years.

(که) اينجا khayli vaqt-ast (ke) It's been like this for a

I've been here for three

intawr-ast. اینطور است.

long time.

(2) the past narrative of states, where English uses the present perfect. This category includes most negatives, as in 'haven't/hasn't done something for X amount of time':

panj sâl-ast ke shawhar- پنج سال است کُه esh morde-ast.

Her husband has been dead for five years.

do sâ'at-ast ke hamânjâ دو ساعت است که neshaste-id.

You've been sitting there for two hours.

shesh sâl-ast ke u-râ ná- I haven't seen him for شش سال است که اورا .dide-am

three years.

do hafte-ast ke az khâne دو هفته است که از خانه birun **nárafte-ast**. سرون نرفته است.

She hasn't gone out of the house for two weeks.

(3) the present continuous of actions, where English uses the progressive present perfect:

do sâ'at-ast ke kâr- دو ساعت است که کار

I've been working for two hours.

میکنم. سنگ که کار mikonam.

se ruz-ast ke bârân سه روز است که باران míbârad.

It's been raining for three days.

63.1 In past expressions of temporal duration, the length of time is given with bud followed by (1) the simple past of budan:

se sâl bud ke ânjâ budam I had been there for three سه سال بود که آنجا بودم years when...

(2) the remote past of states:

shesh sâl bud ke u-râ شش سال بود كه اوْرْا nádide-budam.

I hadn't seen him for six years.

panj sâl bud ke shawhar- Her husband had been پنج سال بود که شواهرش esh morde-bud. dead for six years.

(3) the past continuous of on-going actions:

se ruz bud ke bârân سه روز بود که باران mîbârid.

It had been raining for three days.

63.2 'Since' followed by the present perfect in English is rendered in Persian by از وقتی که az váqtike (or equivalent) followed by the present.

az vaqt-i ke man injâ از وقتیکه من اینجا هستم . اورا ندیدهام hastam, u-râ nádideam.

I haven't seen him since I've been here

az vaqt-i ke bâ amsâl-e از وقتی که با امثال آنها ânhâ sar o kâr dârad, سرو کار دارد اورا u-râ nâdide-im.

Ever since he's been dealing with the likes of them, we haven't seen him.

az ruz-i ke u-râ míshenâ- He's been like this ever از روزی که اورا میشناسم sam hamintawr-ast. since the day I came t

since the day I came to know him.

### Vocabulary 21

باران آمدن bârân rain; باران باریدن bârân-bâridan or باران âmadan to rain

است  $(mi)b\hat{a}yest(i) = b\hat{a}yad$ 

bar (prep.) over, upon, at, against (highly idiomatic)

barf-âmadan to برف آمدن barf snow; برف باریدن barf-bâridan or برف

يرسيدن porsidan to ask (az someone)

tamâm-e all of, the whole; تمام شدن tamâm-shodan to be finished, to be over; تمام كردن tamâm-kardan to finish (trs.)

ju- to seek<sup>1</sup> حستن

jostoju-kardan to search for, seek (normally takes a "sandwiched" complement, as jostoju-ye chiz-i kardan 'to search for something')

cherâq light, lamp; torch, flashlight چراغ

ahvâl condition, state احوال hâl pl حال

خاموش کردن ; khâmush silent; off, out (light, machinery) خاموش

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>A common verb in classical Persian, simple *jostan* has become quite rare in the modern language, its place having been taken by جستجو کردن jostoju-kardan. It is still used in a number of compounds.

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

mush-kardan to turn out, to turn off, to silence

روشن rawshan lit, light, bright; روشن کردن rawshan-kardan to turn on, light

rawqan oil روغن

avaz-kardan to change (transitive) عوض کردن

mâshin automobile, car ماشين

havâ weather, air هوا

yâftan/ياب yâb- to find¹

### Exercise 21

(a) Complete the following with the proper mood and tense and translate:

ا یافتن is seldom used in modern Persian, and never in colloquial Persian (where پیدا کردن is used), in its simple state; it was very common in classical Persian and is still used in compounds like کار یافتن kâr-yâftan 'to find work, to get employed.'

(b) Complete the following using irrealis constructions and translate:

(c) Give appropriate answers to the following:

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

- 1. How long has it been raining? It's been raining for three days.
- 2. We turned on the lights two hours ago, so they've been on for two hours.
- 3. If he had started earlier, he would have finished his work.
- 4. If the weather is good tomorrow, we can go to town and buy some things.
- 5. How long ago did you throw that food away?
- 6. I wish you hadn't said those things to me.
- 7. No matter how many times (= however much) you ask me, I won't tell you the answer.
- 8. It must have rained last night.
- 9. You should have put all the lights out when you finished your work.

Additional Vocabulary: Mishaps

10. If I had known the answer, I wouldn't have asked you.

### beham-khordan to collide zamin-khordan to fall down zir-gereftan to run over bimârestân hospital bihush unconscious sor-khordan to slip shekastan/shekan- to pellekân stair, staircase break (transitive and tasâdof-kardan to have لصاوف intransitive) an accident qash-kardan to faint hordan be to run into, kabud-shodan to get collide with khis wet gelgir fender dawidan/davidan to run פעת ש leh-shodan to get mashed rânandegi-kardan to J liz slippery J liz-khordan to slide drive (a vehicle) rânande driver راث rol steering wheel

Write a short composition using as much of the vocabulary given above as you can.

# ہریں بیسٹ و وور

### **Lesson Twenty-Two**

- $\S$  64 Uses of the subjunctive IV: Adverbial clauses. The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses introduced by certain conjunctions.
- 64.1 Temporal conjunctions. Temporal clauses in Persian tend to precede the main clause, whereas in English the opposite is true.
  - (a) Conjunctions meaning 'before' (قبل از اینکه qabl az in-ke, پیش از اینکه qabl az in-ke) are invariably followed by the present subjunctive regardless of the tense of the main clause; for English translation, the tense depends upon context.

**qabl az in-ke man bíâ-** They had already gone قبل از اینکه من بیایم **yam**, ânhâ rafte- **before I came**.

- pish az in-ke béravid, bâ I want to see you before پیش ازینکه بروید با شما shomâ kâr dâram. you go.
  - (b) tâ followed by the negative present subjunctive means 'until' (literally, "so long as...not") with reference to future time. This type of clause invariably precedes the main clause of the sentence.

tâ shomâ náravid man- I won't go until you do. من هم ham némiravam.

تا كارتان را نكنيد tâ kâr-etân-râ nákonid, You can't go until you ... نمى توانيد برويد. némitavânid béravid. do your work.

- (c)  $\[ \]$  tâ meaning 'by the time that' is followed by the present subjunctive. The verb of the result clause is in the present perfect.
  - ا تا به فرودگاه برسیم tâ be forudgâh béresim, By the time we get to the airport, the plane will have gone.

تا بیایند دیر شده است. tâ bíâyand, dir shode-ast. By the time they come, it will be too late.

### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

64.2 The conjunctions of purpose ( $\forall t \hat{a}, \forall t \hat{a} ke$ ,  $\forall t \hat{a} ke$ , and  $\forall ke$  'in order that') introduce a purpose clause. These conjunctions are invariably followed by the present subjunctive regardless of the tense of the main clause. Whereas temporal clauses precede the main clause, purpose clauses always follow the main clause.

ار ببینم. I'm coming to see you. bébinam.

ال مار ببینم. آثا شمارا ببینم. bébinam.

ال مارک شمارا ببینم. آثا شمارا ببینم. آثا شمارا ببینم. آثا شمارا ببینم. آثا شمارا ببینم. المناب تا اینکه شمارا تعمیر کند. شمارا تعمیر کند.

64.3 All conjunctions of concession, provision, and exception are followed by the subjunctive, present or past depending upon the temporal relationship to the main clause.

konad

. agar-ham bémiram, bâz- Even though I may die, اگرهم بميرم بازهم ميروم I'm still going. ham míravam. agar-ham shomâ dide-اگرهم شما دیده باشید báshid, bâz-ham Even though you may have seen it, I still bâvar-némikonam. don't believe it. be shart-i ke shomâ بشرطی که شما بیائید من Provided you come, I'll bíâid, man-ham come too. míâyam. bi ân-ke bâ cheshm-e بى آنكه با چشم خودم khod-am bébinam, I won't believe it without seeing it with my bâvar-némikonam. own eyes.

- § 65 Participial forms. There are three distinct types of active participle in Persian, (1) the participial of agency, (2) the verbal adjectival participle, and (3) the participle of manner.
- 65.1 The **agent participle**, which may be used both adjectivally and substantively as a noun, has two formations, one for simple verbs and another for compounds.
  - (a) Simple verbs form the agent participle by adding -(y)ande to the present stem.

SIMPLE INFINITIVE PRESENT STEM

AGENT PARTICIPLE

'nevisande 'writer' نویسنده ، neveshtan نویس neveshtan نوشتن

'forushande 'salesperson' فروشتن forukhtan فروش forukhtan فروختن

khânande 'reader, singer' خواندن khândan خواندن

guyande 'speaker, announcer' گوینده goftan گوینده آمدن âmadan آ â- > آينده âyande 'coming, future'

juyande yâbande-ast.

He who seeks finds.

(b) Compound verbs form the agent participle from the nonverbal element and the simple present stem of the verb. The resulting compound is a single word, with stress on the final syllable.

COMPOUND INFINITIVE

پاک کردن pâk-kardan to erase >

dânesh-jostan to seek دانش جستن knowledge >

sahar-khâstan to get up سحر خاستن at dawn >

boland-goftan to speak بلند گفتن loudly >

fârsi-goftan to speak فارسي گفتن

ruznâme-neveshtan to روزنامه نوشتن write newspapers >

أب گرم كردن âb-garm-kardan to heat water >

khabar-negâshtan to خبر نگاشتن report news >

ketâb-forukhtan to sell کتاب فروختن

AGENT PARTICIPLE

pâkkón eraser ياککې

dâneshjú student دانشحو

saharkhíz early riser سحرخيز

لندگو bolandgú loudspeaker

fârsigú Persian-speaking فارسے گو

ruznâmenevís روزنامه نویس iournalist

آبگر مکہ آ *âbgarmkón* waterheater

khabarnegâr reporter خبر نگار

ketâbforúsh bookseller کتاب فروش

Contrary to this principle of formation, a few modern terms, especially of a commercial nature and loan-translations, form compound agent participles on the pattern of the simple verb. They are very limited in occurrence.

tahvilgirande تحويل گيرنده tahvil-gereftan to accept تحويل گرفتن consignment >

consignee

### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

emzâkonande signatory امضاک دن emzâ-kardan to sign > امضاک دن

65.2 The verbal adjective is formed by suffixing -(y)â to the present stem. This form, which means possessed of a quality inherent in the verb, occurs only with and is limited to a very small number of simple verbs, practically limited to the following:

INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	VERBAL ADJECTIVE
tavânestan توانستن	<-ravân توان	<i>tavânâ</i> capable توانا
khândan خواندن	 <i>khân-</i> >	khânâ legible خوانا
dâshtan داشتن	دار dâr- >	دارای dârâ possessing (as in دارا dârâ-ye sharâyet qualified) شرایط
dânestan دانستن	clân->	دان dânâ knowing, wise
didan دیدن	. <i>bin-</i> >	يينا binâ sighted, capable of seeing
residan رسیدن	res- > رس	resâ far-reaching (voice) رسا
shenidan شنیدن	<-shenaw شنو	shenavâ capable of hearing شنوا
goftan گفتن	<-gu گو	guyâ capable of speech گویا
gereftan گرفتن	<-gir گير	<i>girâ</i> attractive گيرا

65.3 The participle of manner is formed by adding  $-(y)\hat{a}n$  to the present stem. This participle is used adverbially to describe a state or manner in which something is done. Verbs that form verbal adjectives in  $-(y)\hat{a}$  do not form participles of manner in their simple states. All compound verbs potentially take this form, although in practice there are not that many in use.

.خندان وفت. khandân raft.

She left laughing.

oftân o khizân az sha- افتان و خيزان از شرابخانه râbkhâne âmadand.

They came from the tavern, stumbling and reeling.

**yârabbguyân** bâ marg **یارب گویان** با مرگ ruberu shodand.

Saving "O Lord," they faced death.

-na'rezanân hamle نعره زنان حمله کردند.

Shouting, they attacked.

65.4 Other productive agent constructions are as follows.

آرایےش 'kâr gar 'worker,' کارگر kâr gar 'worker,' کارگرو kâr suffix کارگرو

ârâyesh 'adornment' آرایشگر (ایشگر arâyeshgar 'hair dresser,' پژوهش pazhuhesh 'research' آهنگر pazhuheshgar 'researcher,' آهنگر âhan 'iron' پژوهشگر âhangar 'ironmonger, blacksmith,' آهنگر tamâshâ 'spectacle' تقاشا shâgar 'spectator,' and مسکر mes 'copper' مسکر mesgar 'coppersmith.'

- (2) The Turkish agent suffix چى -chi is quite productive: پست post 'post, mail' > درشکه چې doroshke 'carriage' پستچې doroshkechi 'carriage driver,' and شکار shekâr 'hunt' > شکار shekârchi 'hunter.'
- (3) Arabic agents usually assume the shape  $C_1aC_2C_2\hat{a}C_3$  (i.e. -a- after the first consonant and a doubled second consonant followed by -â-), as in خراط harrâf loquacious (< خراط مرف harrâf loquacious (خراط خرف harrâf loquacious (خراط خرف harrâf loquacious (خراط مرف harrâf loquacious (خراط المرف المر

### Vocabulary 22

amâde ready آماده

avâz voice, singing voice; آواز کردن âvâz-khândan to sing

ágar...ham although اگر...هم

bâz-ham still, nonetheless بازهم

(game, bet بردن bordanl بردن بردن

بس bas enough; از بس که az bas-ke so much...that

ba'd az ân-ke after (conj.)

be kâr bordan to use, employ

pas az in-ke after (conj.)

piâde on foot, by foot, pedestrian; پیاده رفتن piâde raftan to go on foot; پیاده شدن piâde-shodan to get out, off (of vehicles)

pish az in-ke before (+ subj.)

tâ until, by the time, in order that (see also Appendix A)

tamâshâ spectacle; تماشا كردن tamâshâ-kardan to watch

حرکت کردن; harakat motion, movement حرکت کردن harakat-kardan to take off, start moving

בرد dard pain; درد کردن dard-kardan to hurt, ache

دير dir late; دير کردن dir-shodan to get late (of time); دير کردن dir-kardan to be late (of people), to come late

راه افتادن, (be)râh-oftâdan to get under way, "hit the road," be on one's way

A clause introduced by az bas ke is the main clause in English, and the main clause in Persian is the subordinate clause of English, e.g. از بسکه کار کرده ایم خسته شده ایم az bas-ke kâr-karde-im, khaste-shode-im 'we've worked so much that we've gotten tired.'

#### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

sâkhtan/ ساختن sâz- to make, build شام shâm dinner صبحانه sobhâne breakfast

ferestadan/فرستادن ferest- to send

forudgâh airport فرودگاه

gabl az in-ke before (+ subj.) قبل از اینکه

kelid key, switch

ناهار nâhâr lunch, midday meal

inegâh-dâshtan is stop (trs.), hold, keep (this compound of dâshtan takes mi- and forms a regular imperative, (گهدار (ید) inegah-dâr(id), and subjunctive, ماهدار اومدار inegah-dâram)

havâpaymâ airplane هواييما

### Exercise 22

(a) Give the agent participles for the following verbs:

۱ درس خواندن	ء نباس شستن	۱۱ كتاب فروختن
۲ بردن	۷کشت	۱۲ عیک ساختن
۳ بار بردن	۸ نمودن	۱۳ آدم کشتن
۴ غم ننوردن	۹ یاد کر فتن	۱۴ دندان ساختن
۵ شتن	۱۰ بطری باز کر دن	۱۵ کم خوابیدن

(b) Change the verbs in boldface to participles of manner (make any necessary adjustments and/or omissions):

۱ از اطاق به اطاق میرفت و چراغ روشن میکرد.

۲ بالاخره رسیدیم ولی پرسیدیم و پرسیدیم.

۳ در حالی که روی تختخواب <mark>میفتاد</mark> شروع به گریه کرد.

۴ در حالی که برمیخاستند شروع کردند به صحبت کردن.

۵ دراز م**ی کشید**م که خوابم برد.

۶ <sub>بچه</sub>ها **گریه میکردند** و پیش مادرشان آمدند. ۷ همانطور در حالی که **حرف میزد** برخاست و رفت.

### (c) Read and translate into English:

۱ فردا صبح زود آمادهٔ رفتن تهران باشید!

۲ موز ناهٔ رمان را نخورده بودیم که صدای ماشین محمدا شنیدیم که میآمد

۲ موز ناهٔ رمان را نخورده بودیم که صدای ماشین محمدا شنیدیم که میآمد

۲ مهتر است با موابیا برویم ، یا میژود با ماشین بهم رفت ؟

۵ قبل از اینکه باران بیاید ماشین را نزدیک ده کوچی گلهداشته بودیم.

۶ فوریکه کار ما پیش میرود، تا تام ثود با بهه پیر شده ایم.

۷ زود باش! نمیخوانهم دیر کنم.

۸ از بسکه دیر کر ده اسب، تا به فرودگاه برسیم بروابیا رفته است.

۹ کی از مشهورترین آواز خوانهای ایران شجریان است.

۹ کی از مشهورترین آواز خوانهای ایران شجریان است.

### (d) Translate into Persian:

- 1. Stop the car right here. I want to get out.
- 2. Before you eat dinner, don't forget to wash your hands.
- 3. I guessed they wouldn't throw those things away.
- 4. Before eating lunch I like to stretch out and sleep for a few minutes.
- 5. The announcer is saying something interesting. Let's listen.
- 6. I usually ask before taking anything from (از روى) his desk.
- 7. By the time they get here everything will be finished.
- 8. We can't have dinner until your brother and sister arrive.
- 9. If you go on foot, you won't arrive until 6 o'clock.
- 10. I doubt you can get to the airport before the plane takes off.

### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

### Additional Vocabulary: Travel

ره کی daraje-ye yek first class asbâb belongings, things e'lân-kardan to andaraje-ye do second در ورو class istgâh station dosare round-trip ومره רנופ א פני rezerv-kardan to reserve الرر bârbar porter restorân restaurant رستوران bâzres conductor sari'ossayr express سريع السير bâtel invalid saku platform belit ticket مليط pardâkht-kardan to pay âdi ordinary عادي aatâr train قطار pul-e naqd cash نول تقد tâksi taxi ماکسی kârt-e e'tebâr credit card کارت اعتبار مافرت mosâferat travel, trip; مافرت کر دن mosâferat-ت tran train tuâlet toilet توالرس kardan to travel yeksare one-way chamedân suitcase

Write a short composition about a trip you have taken.

# حرین بیسٹ و سوم

### **Lesson Twenty-Three**

§ 66 Abstraction of substantives. All substantives (adjectives and nouns) are abstracted by suffixing -i. For substantives ending in -e, the abstraction is -gi.

	SUBSTANTIVE	A	ABSTRACTION
پیر	pir old >	پیری	pirí old age
سیاه	siâh black >	سیاهی	siâhí blackness
بچه	bachche child >	بچگی	bachchegí childhood
آماده	âmâde ready >	آمادگ <u>ی</u>	âmâdegí readiness
ديوانه	divâne mad >	ديوانگي	divânegí madness
پزشک	pezeshk physician >	پزشکی	pezeshká (the study or practice of) medicine
- v	dandânpezeshk dentist >	دندانپزشكى	dandânpezeshkí dentistry
نماينده	nemâyande representative >	نمایندگی	nemâyandegí representation

The abstracted adjective is used in the expression be in (or  $\hat{a}n$ ) ... i, equivalent to the English 'so' or 'such a.'

Let's not go so early باین زودی نرویم.

khâne-i be ân bozorgi I had never seen a house معاندای بآن بزرگی ندیده nadide-budam. so big (such a big house).

The abstracted adjective is also used in the idiom  $be \dots i-e \dots$ , equivalent to the English 'as ... as ....'

این به خوبی آن است. This is as good as that. This is as good as that. This job is not so hard as in that one.

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

khâne-i be bozorgi-e ân- I had never seen a house خانهای به برزگی آنرا râ nádide-budam. as big as that one.

66.1 The abstractions of substantives relating to offices and ranks are often used by extension not only for the office or rank itself but also for the place where the office is conducted.

66.2 The abstractions are also used to define the purpose for which things are employed.

sup-khordan to eat soup > supkhor soup eater > supkhor soup khori soupspoon

rakht-shostan rakhtshu
to wash clothes > washer >

zarf-shostan to wash dishes > zarfshu dishwashing liquid

supkhor soup eater > supkhor soup khori soupspoon

rakhtshu
washtub

tasht-e rakhtshui
washtub

mâye'-e zarfshui
dishwashing liquid

§ 67 Double-substantive compounds. Compounds composed of two substantives (noun-noun or adjective-noun) render substantives. Stress, as in all substantives, is on the final syllable. Generally the first element of a double-substantive compound indicates a quality or modification of the second element, as in شكسته shekaste 'broken' and على del 'heart', which form شكسته shekaste 'broken-hearted,' and as in وسست mehmân 'guest' and دوست dust 'friend,' which form وسست mehmândúst 'hospitable.' It is often helpful when first encountering a double-substantive compound to put the two elements together and add '-ed.'

ماهرو mâhru "moon-faced" > beautiful سنگدل sangdel "stone-hearted" > hardhearted مرازدست darâzdast "long-armed" > aggressive

parishânkhâter "disturbed-minded" > distressed, upset پریشانخاطر kutâhqad "short-statured" > short in stature

Not all compounds are quite so transparent in meaning, and some have extended metaphorical applications, such as

خر گوش khargush "donkey-eared" > rabbit تردامن tardâman "wet-skirted" > disgraced, scandalous

67.1 Particularly productive first elements for this type of compound are خوش khosh- ('well, good'), غ bad- ('bad, ill') and بن bi- ('without').

well-dressed خوشلباس **khoshleb**âs ill-dressed بدلباس

خوشبخت khoshbakht lucky, fortunate

بدبخت unlucky, unfortunate

بیکار **bi**kâr unemployed, idle

bihawsele impatient بىحوصلە

A fairly productive second element is کار -kâr.

farâmush**kâr** forgetful فراموشكار

kasâfat**kâr** messy, sloppy

67.2 All double-substantive compounds are abstracted by suffixing -(g)f.

shekastedelí brokenheartedness شکسته دلی

mehmândustí hospitality مهماندوستي

درازدستی darâzdastí aggressiveness

badbakhtí misfortune بدبختی bihawselegí impatience

§ 68 Adjectives/adverbs in -âne. The suffix -(g)âne is used to make adverbs from words that are primarily adjectival and also to make adjectives of substantives whose primary connotations have become purely nominal. Although as a general rule most adjectives can be used as adverbs (غوب خوب خوابيدم ketâb-e khub-i 'a good book' and خوب خوابيدم khabidam 'I slept well'), there are some words, like مؤدب mo'addab 'polite' and خوشبخت khoshbakht 'lucky,' that are by convention exclusively adjectival. Such words add the -(g)âne suffix when used adverbially.

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

mo'addabane politely مؤدي mo'addabane politely

khoshbakht lucky > خوشبختانه khoshbakhtâne luckily

ىدىخت badbakht unlucky > يديختانه badbakhtâne unfortunately

Similarly, although many nouns can be used indiscriminately as adjectives, by شاعر bachche 'child,' and بجيه 'bachche 'child,' and برادر shâ'er 'poet,' are used exclusively as nouns. To make them adjectival the -(g)âne suffix is added.

پادر barâdar brother > بادر barâdar**âne** brotherly بچه bachche child > بچگانه bachcheg**âne** childish shâ'erâne poetic(al), romantic شاعرانه shâ'er poet >

These are regularly abstracted by adding the -(g)i suffix, e.g. برادرانگی barâdarânegi 'brotherliness' and پکانگی bachchegânegi 'childishness.'

§ 69 Magar. The interrogative particle مگر mágar is used (1) with a negative verb when an affirmative answer is expected. In this sense English uses an affirmative verb followed by a negative tag question. The affirmative answer to a negative question is introduced by  $ch\acute{e}r\mathring{a}$  (like the French si), not by  $b\acute{a}le$ .

?magar náraftid? cherâ, You went, didn't you مگر نرفتید؟ چرا، رفتم. raftam.

Yes, I did.

magar khod-etân You were there yourself, مگر خودتان نبودید؟ چرا مشطور ماه magar khod-etân you? Yes, I بودم ولی ندیدم.

budam vali nádidam.

was, but I didn't see it.

?magar intawr nist مگر اینطور نست؟

That how it is, isn't it?

(2) Mågar is also used with an affirmative verb when a negative answer is expected. In this sense English uses a negative verb followed by an affirmative tag question.

che midânand? magar چه میدانند؟ مگر آنجا ânjâ budand?

What do they know? They weren't there, were they?

? مآنند مگر míâyand magar?

They aren't coming, are they?

(3) The particle also occurs as کرنه màgar ná after an affirmative statement as a tag question to induce agreement (like the French n'est-ce pas?).

?fahmidid, magar na فهمیدید، مگر نه

You understand, don't

you?

أنها هم ميآيند، مگر نه؟ ânhâ-ham miâyand, magar na?

They are coming too, aren't they?

### Vocabulary 23

أنچه آفه ânche that which, what (a relative pronoun: when it takes -râ, the relative ke is added, e.g. آنچه گذشت ânche gozasht 'that which passed,' but آنچه آفتید نشنیدم ânche-râ ke goftid náshenidam 'I didn't hear what you said.'

edâme continuation; ادامه دادن به edâme-dâdan be to continue ادامه estefâde benefit, benefiting; استفاده کردن از estefâde-kardan az to make use of

eshkâl pl اشكال داشتن -ât difficulty, problem: اشكال eshkâl اشكال eshkâl اشكال الثنائي eshkâl nto have a problem, for something to be wrong; اشكالي eshkâl-i nádârad it's all right, "no problem"

של bâlâ up (adv.), upstairs

بالاي bâlâ-ye over, above (prep.)

نخشيدن bakhshidan to excuse, forgive (be) someone (a mistake, direct object)

پائين pâin down (adv.), downstairs

پیشنهاد کردن; pishnehâd-kardan to suggest پیشنهاد نشنهاد کردن pishnehâd-kardan to suggest تمیز

dobâre again, a second time دوباره

divâne mad, crazy ديوانه

zir-e under, beneath (prep.)

sardard headache<sup>1</sup> سردرد

salâm hello, greetings; سلام کردن به salâm-kardan be to say hello to, to greet

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Most aches and pains are compounded similarly with -dard, as گوش درد gushdard 'ear-ache,' عردرد kamardard 'backache,' and عردرد deldard 'stomachache' (see Supplementary Vocabulary for parts of the body). When dard precedes with the ezâfe, a metaphorical pain is implied, e.g. درد سر dard-e sar 'pain in the neck' and درد دل dard-e del 'heart-ache.'

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

شکستن shekastan/شکن shekan- to break (transitive and intransitive) کثافت kasâfat dirt, dirtiness کثافت kasif dirty کثیف agarna otherwise گرنه mágar see §69

### Exercise 23

(a) Read the following words and tell what they mean:

۱۱ فراموش کاری	آ آ قائی
۱۲ سنحتی	۲ بزرگی
۱۳ دوری	۳ کو تاہی
*	۴ کوتاه قدی
۱۵ بربختی	۵ سادکی
۱۶ زودکذری	ع زودی
۱۷ پولداری	۷ جوانی
۱۸ مفیدی	۸ خوشحانی
19 کهسکی	۹ باربری
۲۰ بخشن کی	۱۰ دانائی
	۱۲ سختی ۱۳ دوری ۱۴ نرد کمي ۱۵ مربختی ۱۲ پولداری ۱۷ پولداری ۱۸ سفیدی

(b) Return to exercise a in Lesson 22 and make abstractions of the words created (skip #10).

(c) Answer the following questions:

ا کمر آن نامه إرا نفر ساديد؟ ٢ به خانهٔ مانمي آيند کمر ؟ ٢ به خانهٔ مانمي آيند کمر ؟ ۸ با ماشین میرویم ، مکر نه ؟ ۹ مکر نادر خوردید ؟ ۱۰ مکر نمیدانید آن آ قا کسیت ؟ ۵ مکر آنقدر بول دارید؟ ع فارسی بلدید، مکر نه؟ ۷ مکر آماده نیستید؟

(d) Read and translate into English:

۱ کی دو تا اسک ال داشتم و اگرنه زودتر میرسدیم.
۲ در ایران هر وقت آدمی مؤدب وارد اطاق میثود باید به بهمه سلام کند
۲ نیچه آن دیوانه میگوید درد سر میآورد.
۲ دام را سکستید ولی بازیم غم نمی خورم.
۸ به درس خواندنتان حماً ادامه دیمید
۲ خانم ، بیخید، وقت است که ما با بهریکر خداحافظی کنیم.
۸ کسی که چنین حرفهانی را باور کند باید خیبی زودباور باشد
۹ من میخواستم پزشی بخوانم ولی پدرم پشهاد کر د که دندانسزشی بخوانم.
۹ من میخواستم پزشی بخوانم ولی پدرم پشهاد کر د که دندانسزشی بخوانم.
۱ شبی آن سایس بیچوقت ندیده بودم. خوشجانه چراغ بهراه داشتیم.

- (e) Translate into Persian:
  - 1. Try to keep this room clean.
  - 2. This is more childishness than madness.
  - 3. Didn't they try to stop the car?
  - 4. Can one get to (reach) those distant cities by airplane?
- It's unlikely such a thing would happen again.
- 6. We knew they would be late.
- 7. Is there any place in this vicinity (نزدیکیها) we can sleep tonight?
- 8. You don't want to forgive someone

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

o Didn't you say hello to the ladies and gentlemen who came late?

who has done such a thing, do you? 10. You'd better (بهتر است که شما) continue with your work, otherwise you'll never finish.

### Supplementary Vocabulary اعصن کی مدن A'zâ-ye Badan Parts of the Body

âranj elbow *abru* eyebrow ارو *ostokhân* bone استحوان angosht finger, toe bâzu upper arm bini nose مبنى l pâ foot تان pestân breast posht back(side)<sup>1</sup> رفت pelk eyelid pahlu side بهلو pishâni forehead jegar liver²

châne chin حانه cheshm eye حثر به halq throat

dast hand وست

del stomach, heart<sup>3</sup>

damâq brain; nose واع

dandân tooth ونران

dahân mouth دان

ري rokh cheek

rokhsâre cheek

S, rag vein

rish beard رسش

rie lung رم

zânu knee

زمان zabân tongue

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> With reference to people, پیشبت posht normally refers to the backside; euphemistically & kamar is used for the back. <sup>2</sup> In Persian the liver is the seat of emo-

جگرگوشه tions; hence expressions such as jegargushe 'a corner of the liver' for a jegarsuz 'liver- جگرسوز burning' for 'heartbreaking.'

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> When دل del refers to a physical organ (or pain), it means 'stomach'; metaphori-قلب .cally it is the heart in all applications معده Qalb is the physical heart only, and me'de is the physical organ stomach.

sâed forearm kamar waist, back sâg leg gardan neck galu throat sebil mustache sar head gune cheek sine chest shâne shoulder تانه ∫ *lab* lip moch wrist, ankle shast thumb shekam stomach, belly mardomak pupil (of the eye) asab pl عصاب a'sâb nerve مره mozhe eyelash azale pl عضله azalât musme'de stomach موره cle *awrât* private parts r mu hair nâkhon fingernail, toenail قا *qalb* heart kapal buttocks

# وربن بیس و جھارم

### **Lesson Twenty-Four**

§ 70 'As...as possible.' The English 'as...as possible' is rendered in Persian by هر چه hárche and the comparative adjective.

bâyad harche zudtar باید هرچه زودتر برسیم. beresim.

bâ sedâ-ye harche با صدای هرچه بلندتری bâ sedâ-ye harche bolandtar-i goftam.
گفتم.

harche bishtar sa'y-

kardand.

We must arrive as soon as possible.

I spoke in as loud as voice as possible.

They tried as much as they could.

Adverbial constructions formed from  $b\hat{a}$  ('with') or from abstracted compound e harche tamâmtar in order to هرچه عامتر -e harche tamâmtar circumlocute a long or awkward harche...tar construction.

bâ ehterâm-e harche با احترام هرچه تمامتر tamâmtar ta'zim-kard.

با شكسته نفسى هرچه bâ shekastenafsi-e har-che tamâmtar dombâl-e harfhâ-yesh-râ gereft.

He bowed as respectfully as possible.

He began to speak again as self-deprecatingly as possible.

§ 71 'The more...the more.' The Persian equivalent of the idiom 'the more ...the more' is هرچه ... تر ، ستر ، harche ...tar, ...tar.

. بهتر، بهت

Clauses introduced by harche with reference to future time and situations that may not take place take a subjunctive verb.

harche bolandtar beguid, The louder you speak, the هرچه بلندتر بگوئید بهتر می شنو ند. behtar mishenavand. better they'll hear.

harche zudtar râh biof- هرچه زودتر راه بیفتیم ن tim, zudtar miresim.

The earlier we hit the road, the earlier we'll arrive.

harche u-râ bishtar هرچه اورا بیشتر ببینید bebinid, kamtar dustesh khâhid dâsht. داشت

The more you see of him, the less you'll like him.

With reference to past or present continuous tenses (i.e. situations that either have taken or are taking place), the indicative mood is used.

harche u-râ bishtar هرچه اورا بیشتر می بینم míbinam, bishtar dust- more I like him.

esh dâram. .

The more I see him, the

§ 72 Factitive verbs. The factitive verbal formation ('to make or cause to do or be') is achieved by adding the regular infinitival ending -ân(i)dan to the present stem of the simple verb. Most of these verbs occur with both factitive endings -ânidan and -ândan. The present stem of all such factitives is regularly formed as -ân-.

INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	FACTITIVE INFINITIVE
رسیدن <i>residan</i> to arrive >	res- > رس	رساند(یی) دن resân(i)dan to make something arrive, deliver
khâbidan to خوابیدن sleep >	<-khâb- خواب	khâbân(i)dan to put خوا با نـ(يـــ)ــدن to sleep, to lay (something) down
بر گشتن bar-gashtan to return >	برگرد bar- gard->	بر گردان(ی <u>ـ) دن</u> return (something), bring/take back
gozashtan to گذشتن pass (int.) >	eozar-> گذر	gozarân(i)dan to گذران(یی)ـدن make pass, spend (time)

?in nâme-râ ki miresânad? Who'll deliver this letter این نامه را کی می رساند؟

bâyad bachchehâ-râ be باید بچههارا به مدرسه madrase beresânim.

We have to take the children to school.

. bachchehâ-râ khâbân بچههارا خواباندید did?

Did you put the children to bed?

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

u-râ ru-ye zamin khâbân- They laid him down on .dand خواباندند the ground. .ba'd, bar-migardânam بعد بر میگردانمت I'll bring you back afterwards. khâhesh-mikonam, in خواهش میکنم این -ketabhâ-râ be ketâb Please return these books to the library. khâne bargardânid. ruz-i-râ dur az mohit-e روزی را دور از محیط They were spending a شلوغ شهر در بیابان می گذراندند. sholuq-e shahr dar biâday in the country, far bân migozarândand. from the crowded milieu

The only exception in factitive formation is نشستن neshastan 'to sit,' the factitive of which is نشأندن neshândan 'to sit (someone) down, to quell (rebellion), to quench (fire).'

of the city.

group.

be fâsele-ye sisad— They sat me down under فاصلهٔ سیصد چهارصد از جمع زیر chahârsad qadam durtar a tree at a distance of three or four hundred marâ neshândand. paces away from the

Factitive compounds and participles are regularly formed.

امهرسان nâme-resândan to deliver نامهرسان nâme-resân messenger idetters > nâmeresân messenger ideters تشنشانی nâmeresân messenger تشنشانی آ شنشانی آ شنسانی آ شنشانی آ شنشانی آ شنسانی آ شنسانی آ شنسانی آ شنشانی آ شنسانی آ شنسانی

§ 73 Verbal nouns. Verbal nouns are formed from many simple verbs (not compounds) by suffixing  $-(y) \acute{e} sh$  to the present stem.

"INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	VERBAL NOUN
'dânestan 'to know دانستن	clù dân->	'dânesh 'knowledge دانش
igarmudan 'to order' فرمودن	farmâ- >	farmâyesh 'order, command' فرمايش
' <i>raftan</i> 'to go رفتن	<-wrac رو	'ravesh 'method, manner روش
'âmukhtan 'to learn' آموختن	<-amuz آموز	'âmuzesh 'instruction آموزش
'gashtan 'to turn' گشتن	<- gard گرد	"gardesh 'stroll' گردش
	170	

پروردن parvaresh 'education' پرورش parvaresh 'education' پروردن parvaresh 'education' پروردن kushidan 'to strive' کوش kushesh 'attempt' کوششدن âsâyesh 'rest, relaxation' آسایش âsâyesh 'rest, relaxation'

Many of these verbal nouns then combine with simple verbs to form compounds, like دانش جستن dânesh-jostan 'to seek knowledge' (whence دانش جستن dâneshju 'student'), کردش کردن parvaresh-dâdan 'to nourish,' گردش کردن gardesh-kardan 'to stroll,' and کردش کردن kushesh-kardan 'to strive.'

§ 74 Infinitival adjectives. Infinitives form adjectives by suffixing -f. Depending on the meaning of the verb, this adjectival form means 'that which ought to be...,' 'can or should be...' or 'about to be..., on the verge of....' This form often renders the English adjective in '-able.' The negative is formed by prefixing na- or nâ-.

در آن موقع قيافهاش dar ân mawqe' qiâfe-ash At that moment his face در آن موقع قيافهاش didani bud. was a sight to see.

در آنجا چیزی **دیدنی dar** ânjâ chiz-i **didani** nist.

There is nothing worth seeing there.

qiâfe-i dust-dâshtani قیافهای دوست داشتنی dâsht.

He had a likeable face.

-ست. *ânche gofte-ast bâvar* آنچه گفته است باور **nakardani**-ast.

What he said is **unbelievable**.

mortakeb-e gonâh-e مرتكب گناه **نابخشودنی** nâbakhshudani-ast.

He has committed an unforgivable sin.

Vocabulary 24

آتش زدن ; âtesh fire آتش گرفتن atesh-gereftan to catch fire آتش ودن atesh-zadan to set fire

âmukhtan/ آموز âmuz- to learn

esterâhat-kardan to rest استراحت كردن esterâhat rest; استراحت

istâdan/ایست ist- to stop, stand still

istâde budan to be standing (ایستاده ام istâde-am 'I'm standing'; ایستاده بودن istâde-budam 'I was standing')

ענגט boridan to cut

be qadr-i ... ke to such an extent that, so much ... that

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

teshne thirsty تشنه

تقدیم taqdim presentation, offering; تقدیم کردن taqdim-kardan to offer, to present

خالي khâli empty, void

khaste tired خسته

khalvat empty, not crowded خلوت

da'vat-kardan to invite دعوت کردن da'vat invitation; دعوت

sholuq crowded شلوغ

فقط دو دفعه faqat only (either (1) precedes what it modifies, as in فقط من فقط این را 'faqat do daf'e raftam 'I only went twice,' من فقط این را "man faqat in-râ miguyam 'I'll say only this,' or (2) comes at the end of the sentence)

قبول کردن; qabul-kardan to accept قبول کردن gorosne hungry

moddat period (of time) مدت

inazdik near; نزدیک بودن nazdik -budan or نزدیک -shodan (impersonal + subj.) nearly, almost: نزدیک بود بیفتم nazdik bud bioftam 'I almost fell'

inazar view, sight; به نظر آمدن be nazar âmadan to seem, appear نشاندن neshândan/نشاندن neshân- to make sit down; to quench, extinguish (fire); to quell (rebellion, commotion)

### Exercise 24

(a) Read and translate the following sentences:

۱ بقدری خستهام که فقط میخواهم استراحت کنم.

۲ بازار بقدری شلوغ بود که جای خالی پیدا نمیشد.

۳ هرچه تشنهتر باشی، آب خوشمزهتر است.

۴ بهتر است با ماشين برويم. اگرنه، من نميآيم.

۵ نزدیک بود از گرسنگی و تشنگی بمیریم.

۶ وقتی که دیدم خانهٔ همسایه آتش گرفته است به آتشنشانی تلفن کردم. ۱۳۶

هنوز ده کیلومتری از شهر نرفته بودیم که ماشینی روبروی ما ایستاد و مردی  $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$ پیاده شد. ۸ شما به نظر خسته میآئید. چرا کمی استراحت نمی کنید؟

### (b) Translate into Persian:

- 1. We told her that the earlier we get under way tomorrow morning, the better.
- 2. I tried as hard as I could to put the fire out, but it was no use.
- 3. The sooner you send that letter you've written, the sooner it will arrive
- 4. Let's take a stroll in the garden before the rain comes.
- 5. They must have had some difficulty; otherwise they would have been here by now.
- 6. I've never seen such a dirty room! You don't think I'm going to clean it up, do you?
- 7. He must be mad if he thinks I'm going to do this again.
- 8. She came in and very politely offered everyone tea.
- 9. Shiraz seemed crowded when I arrived, but it is not so crowded as Tehran.
- 10. Pour some of that dishwashing liquid into the water so that the dishes will come out clean.

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Jânvarân Animals khargush rabbit pestândârân mammals khoffâsh bat وك khuk pig âhu deer, gazelle asp horse bâlen whale babr tiger
boz goat rubâh fox L sag dog palang leopard بالكري palang leopard بالكري khar donkey sanjâb squirrel شر shotor camel شر shaqâl jackal

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

shir lion	tâvus peacock
fil elephant فراً م	tuti parrot طوطی
gâter mule	oqâb eagle
kargadan rhinoceros	ال qâz goose
kaftâr hyena کفتار	<i>qu</i> swan
gâv cow	ورقاول qarqâvol pheasant
gâvmish ox	gomri dove قمري
أر gorâz boar	kabk partridge
gorbe cat	<i>kabutar</i> pigeon
gorg wolf	karkas vulture کرگھ
gusâle calf کوماله	<i>kalâq</i> crow
gusfand sheep	gonjeshk sparrow
موس <i>mush</i> mouse	الكل laklak stork
maymun monkey	mâkiân hen
	<i>mâhikhâr</i> heron ما مبيحوار
parandegân birds	<i>murq</i> chicken مرع
ונפל ordak duck	<i>murqâbi</i> duck, waterfowl
bâz hawk, falcon	<b>0,</b>
ملبي bolbol nightingale	hasharât insects
belderchin quail بلدرجين	bid clothes moth
buqalamun turkey بوقلمون	parvâne butterfly, moth
parastu swallow	pashe mosquito
joqd owl	halazun snail حكز ون
khorus rooster	zambur bee, wasp
واركوب dârkub woodpecker	susk beetle
shotormorq ostrich شترمرغ	shepesh lice شیش
	177

ankabut spider

kerm worm

kerm-e shabtâb firefly

kazhdom scorpion

magas fly

i malakh locust, grasshopper

murche ant

i i muriâne termite

ا المالة hazârpâ centipede

khazandegân reptiles خرندگان lâkposht turtle مارمولک mârmulak lizard سنگ nahang alligator, crocodile

zuhayâtayn amphibians فوحت تمين samandar salamander غور ماف

jânvarân-e daryâi aquatic animals شرحتاک kharchang crab sadaf oyster سرت mâhi fish

### **Reading Passage**

آن مرد آمد و پسر بچههائی را که خانه نداشتند دعوت کرد تا با او به جای بهتری بروند. پون بچهها از او محبت دیده بودند با او رفتند. آن مرد خوب بچهها را بخانهٔ خودش برد. در خانهٔ آن مرد دو مرد خوب دیگر هم بودند. آنها به بچهها پول دادند، شام دادند، رختخواب گرم هم دادند و فردا صبح بآنها گفتند اگر میخواهید همیشه دارای یک چنین زندگی باشید، باید مطیع و فرمانبردار باشید. پچهها چون محبت دیده بودند قبول کردند، و یک هفتهٔ بعد هر کدام در یک نقطهٔ شهر مشغول جیببری شدند و آنچه از استاد آموخته بودند در موقع کار بکار میبردند و آخر

يسر بحه pesarbachche boy; دعوت کون da'vat-kardan to invite.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> مطيع mahabbat affection; رختخواب rakhtekhâb bedding (sheets, etc.); مطيع moti' obedient; مطيع farmânbardâr submissive.

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

شبها با جیب پر به خانه برمیگشتند و هرچه کار کرده بودند بآن سه مرد خوب تقدیم میکردند، و روزگارشان بخوبی و خوشی میگذشت.<sup>1</sup>
یک روز یکیشان گیر افتاد و در کلانتری بقیه را هم لو داد. آنها را محاکمه کردند و به دارالتادیب فرستادند. سه ماه در دارالتادیب بودند و در این مدت از دیگران خیلی حزها یاد گرفتند.<sup>2</sup>

از «توبه» اثر خسرو شاهانی ا

در موقع عمل ;noqte spot استاد ;jib-boridan to pick pockets جیب بریدن ;noqte spot نقطه inoqte spot موقع عمل ;ruzegâr time, days.

<sup>2</sup> افتادن gir-oftâdan to get caught, nabbed; کر نتری kalântari police station; بقیه baqiye the rest, the others; الو دادن law-dâdan to inform on; عا کمه کردن mohâkeme-kardan to sentence; عا کمه کردن dârotta'dib reformatory.

توبه tawbe repentance; خسرو شاهانی (asar-e by: خسرو شاهانی Khosraw-e Shâhâni Khosrow Shahani, modern Iranian short-story writer.

# ورس بیس و پنجم

## **Lesson Twenty-Five**

§ 75 The passive. The passive voice, which can be made from transitive verbs only, is formed by conjugating, in all tenses and moods, the auxiliary verb shodan with the past participle of the verb, as گفته شدن < goftan 'to say' گفته شدن < goftan 'to say' گفته شدن < shodan 'to be said.'

PRESENT	گفته میشود	gofte mishavad	it is said
FUTURE	-	gofte khâhad shod	it will be said
PAST	گفته شد	gofte shod	it was said
PAST HABITUAL	••	gofte mishod	it used to be said
PRESENT PERFECT	گفته شده است	gofte shode-ast	it has been said
PAST PERFECT	گفته شده بود	gofte shode-bud	it had been said
PRESENT SUBJ.	,	gofte shavad	that it be said
PAST SUBJ.	گفته شده باشد	gofte shode-bâshad	that it has been said

The passive is used in Persian only when the personal agent is not expressed. There is no passive construction to render 'it was said by me'; such sentences must be expressed in the active ('I said it'). Inanimate instruments are expressed in passive constructions with the preposition  $\frac{1}{2}b\hat{a}$  (see examples below).

		1 1 , ,	1 ,
يده	چنین چیزهائی <b>د</b> <b>نمیشود</b> .	chonin chizhâ-i <b>dide</b> nemishavad.	Such things are not (to be) seen.
	هیچ سر و صدائ <sub>و</sub> داخل خانه <b>ش:</b> نمیشد.	hich sarosedâ-i az dâkhel-e khâne shenide nemishod.	No noise could be heard from inside the house.
	این نامه باید هر <b>با</b> پست <b>فرستا</b>	in nâme bâyad harche zudtar <b>bâ</b> post <b>feres-</b> <b>tâde shavad</b> .	This letter must be sent by post as soon as pos- sible.

#### LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

be nazar miâyad ke bâ به نظر مآيد كه ما هفت تبر کشته شده hafttir koshte shodeast. است.

It appears that he was killed with a pistol.

Compound verbs with transitive verbal elements do not normally form passives. Instead, an intransitive compound with a passive sense is formed by changing the transitive verbal element into a corresponding intransitive one, such as كردن -khordan خوردن < zadan - زدن shodan and- شدن < kardan-

-nâm-e u-râ farâmush نام اورا فراموش كردند.

They forgot his name.

. نام او فراموش شد. nâm-e u farâmush-shod. His name was forgotten

nâm-e barande-râ e'lâm- They will announce the نام برندهرا اعلام میکنند. mikonand.

nâm-e barande e'lâm- نام برنده اعلام میشود. mishavad.

. rezâ-râ kotak-zadand ضارا کتک ; دند. rezâ kotak-khord.

name of the winner.

The name of the winner will be announced.

They beat Reza up.

Reza got beaten up.

§ 76 Uses of the past participle. The past participle, especially of compound verbs, can be used as an attributive adjective, as in English.

مزارع كشت شدة دهكده را آساري ميكد.

âb-e in qanât zaminhâ-o The water from this canal mazâre'-e **kesht-shode**ye dehkade-râ âbyârimikard.

irrigated the cultivated lands and fields of the village.

زنها لباسهاي نشسته zanhâ lebâshâ-ye شانرا در بقچه پیچیدند.

nashoste-shân-râ dar boqche pichidand.

The women wrapped their unwashed clothes in bundles.

kaff-e otâq bâ gelimhâ-ye The floor of the room كف اطاق با گليمهاي یاخورده و زیلوهای نخنما فرش شده بود.

pâ-khorde-o ziluhâ-ye nakhnomâ farsh-shodebud.

was spread with worn rugs and threadbare carpets.

The past participle is also used as an adjectival complement to the direct object of a verb, in which case it comes directly before the verb.

yek vaqt bud ke man یک وقت بود که من خودرا ميان اين خرآبهها، كوهها و بيابانها گمشده

khod-râ miân-e in kharâbehâ, kuhhâ-o biâbânhâ gom-shode گمان میکردم. gomân-mikardam.

There was a time when I thought myself lost among these ruins, mountains, and deserts.

kârhâ-ye khod-râ karde کارهای خودرا **کرده** و o nakarde gozâsht.

She left her chores half done ("done and not done").

The past participle of certain transitive verbs is used as a passive substantive and normally occurs in the plural. This usage often takes the place of relative-clause constructions.

از گفته هایش زیاد سر az **goftehâ**-yesh ziâd sar I didn't get much out of درنیاوردم. dar-nayâvordam. what he said

neveshtehâ-ye in نوشتههای این نویسنده

the works (writings) of this writer

The past participle of intransitive verbs used substantively gives the force of a perfect participle, as رفته, rafte 'one who has gone' and رفتگان, raftegân 'those who have gone.'

be yâd-e dargozashtegân in memory of those who به یاد درگذشتگان

have passed away

فراموش شدههای عصر farâmush-shodehâ-ye asr-e gozashte

the forgotten things of a by-gone era

§ 77 Diminutives: -ak and -che. (1) The diminutive suffix  $\sqrt{\phantom{a}}$  -ak is used for true diminution, denigration, and contempt as well as for endearment, depending upon the tone of delivery and/or context.

> morq chicken > مرغک morqak chick پسر pesar boy > پسر pesarak kid, dear boy مرد mard man > مردک mardak fellow tefl child > طفل teflak brat, darling child طفلک

Many diminutives in -ak often have extended metaphorical connotations, like

arus bride > عروس arusak doll عروسک

#### LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

suratak mask صورت surat face > صورت suratak mask صورت sorf snow > في المعتملة barfak frost عرف sorkh red > مرخک sorkh red >

(2) The diminutive suffix -che is used for diminution of inanimate objects only.

باغ په bâqche garden plot باغچه bâqche garden plot باغچه ketâb book > تابچه ketâbche pamphlet کتاب daryâche lake

## Vocabulary 25

أشنا ما âshnâ bâ acquainted with jelaw-e in front of جلو bedun-e without بدون jahân world حهان posht back; posht-e behind بشت râst right, true (a thing); يشت سر posht-زمان zamân time, era e sar-e behind (a person) direction, side; taraf-ປື tâ (preposition) up to, une toward til, as far as; (conjunction) majbur obliged (+ subj. 'to as soon as (+ past tense), do something') ever since (see also Apma'ruf be known for pendix A) 'mavâqe مواقع mawqe' pl موقع تقسیم ;taqsim division تقسیم taqsim-kardan to time, opportunity; dar mawae'-e at the time of divide nesbat be in relation to

#### Exercise 25

(a) Turn the verbs in boldface into passives. Delete the agent where necessary, and make any other necessary adjustments.

۱ رضا کتابمرا گم کرد.
۲ نمی توان اینهارا شست.
۲ نمی توان اینهارا شست.
۲ ایشانرا روی زمین نشاندهاند.
۲ آنچه کرده بود بخشیدند.
۲ آنچه کرده بود بخشیدند.
۹ آینرا بکار نمی بریم.
۹ ماشین را نگهداشته بودند.

۱۰ آنهارا در این شهر پیدا نمی کنید.

## **Reading Passage**

مه در سرون شرمرو در روستای ماخان زمینی خرید و خاندای ساخت و خاندان خود را در سرون شهر مرو در روستای ماخان در سه فرسکی شهر مرو که این کودک در آنجا چشب باز کر ده بود با چند روستای دیمر از آن پررش بود مه مه بررش بود مه مه برر عبدالرحمن، در میان جوانم دان مرو به مقام بیار بلندی رسیده بود و ایثان بطوع و رغبت اورا براههائی و پیثوانی خود اختیار کر ده بودند میمون در این محیط جوانم ددی و بزرکواری، در میان دلاوران معروف مرو، رشد کرده و کم کم جوان برومندی شده بود مردم مرو و جوانم دان آن دیار، پس از مه مه امید شت ای به بسر رشید او بودکه، چون وارد زندگی شد، کنیهٔ ابومهم را اختیار کر د و اینک دیگر «ابومهم عبدالرحمن خراست نی» در بههٔ خراسان به جوانم دی و فوت و بخشف دیم و ایران پرستی معروف شد و بخشف دیم و ایران پرستی معروف شد و بخشف دیم و ایران پرستی معروف شد و

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>A.H. 109 = A.D. 727-28. For the reading of dates, see Appendix B.

Marv Merv, modern Mary, city on the Oxus in modern-day Turkmenistan; مسلم المسلم بالمال المسلم المس

رشد کردن; delâvar warrior, brave دلاور ; bozorgvâr great دلاور ; delâvar warrior, brave دلاور ; roshd-kardan to mature برومند (kam-kam little by little, gradually; برومند borumand worthy, prosperous; برومند diâr region; رشید rashid eldest; دیار konye nickname; اینک دیگر inak digar here then; خراسان Khorâsân Khurasan (northeastern province of modern Iran; formerly extended to the Oxus); فتوت fotovvat manliness; برستیدن parastidan to worship, serve.

در آن زمان جوانمردان مرو پسران خودرا از خردسالی و از بمان اول که به دسرسان می رفتند و خط می آموخند به مسلک و مرام خود آثنا می کر دند و از بمان آغاز زندگی، به آمین ایران قدیم، سواری و تسراندازی و مشت زنی و شمشیرزنی و کمنداندازی و نیرواندازی و زوبین بازی را یاد می دادند عبدالرحمن ِ جوان در این فون از بمسالان خود برتری بافته بود <sup>2</sup>

## Review V

(a) Read and translate the following into English (unfamiliar words can be found in the Persian-English Vocabulary):

۱ برادرم در وزارتخانهٔ آموزش و پرورش کار میکند و پسردانی ام در وزارتخانهٔ خارجه، ولی تنها کاری که میکند دفتر نشینی و کاخذبازی است.
۲ غرق ثبوندگان کشی منگسته امید زندگی را از دست داده بیچ کوششی نمیکر دند که خودشان را به جای امن و امانی برسانند
۳ تا وارد قطار شدیم یک آقای خیلی مهربانی به ما که کرد که حپرانهایمان را بالای صندلیها بخوابانیم
۴ هرچه بیشتر سعی کنید، احمال موفق شدن بیشتر میشود.
۵ از چه ابزاری استفاده کر ده اید که کارتمان را باین خوبی انجام دادید؟

أودسال khordsâl young; دبيرستان dabirestân school (modern 'high school'); خط khatt أخط maslak career; مسلك marâm goal.

ع رفتارش و حرفهایش بقدری بچکسانه است که اگر می دیدید و می شنیدید باور نمی کر دید ۷ دیروز شارا دیدم که طرف شهربانی میرفتید. مکر در آنجا کار داشتید؟ ۸ تا دیر نشده میخواهند یک کاری انجام دهند ۹ یک ساعت است در بمینجا نشته ام منظن بر شا. ۱۰ شعار وزارت آموزش و پرورش ایران این بود که «توانا بؤؤ هرکه دانا بؤوی».

## (b) Translate the following into Persian:

- 1. If I had thought you were coming yesterday, I would have been here.
- 2. Before they turned the loudspeaker on, we couldn't hear a thing.
- 3. If you've finished all the work you had to do, you can go.
- 4. If we can find a salesperson in this department store to take our money, we can buy the things we've selected and get home early.
- 5. I'm thinking about<sup>2</sup> studying dentistry, but my mother says that surgeons have a larger (more) income.
- 6. The books you brought from the library this morning may have been heavy, but they weren't so heavy as the ones I took back yesterday.
- 7. The earlier you get under way, the sooner you'll arrive.
- 8. You don't know how difficult my life has been. However unlucky you may have been, you haven't been so unlucky as I have.
- 9. The amount of money they have spent on the house they are building is unbelievable.
- 10. The boys who were caught, sentenced, and sent to the reformatory learned lots of things from the other children, with whom they became friends there.

.(.subj + أدر فكر اين هستم كه<sup>2</sup>

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>Bovad$  (an archaic present tense from budan) = ast (see §88).

Part Two بخش دوم

رستور زبان متون Classical and قدیمی Archaic Usages

New Persian has a thousand years of literature, which, thanks to the conservatism of the language, can be read today without a great deal of difficulty. There are, naturally, features of earlier stages of the language that have become obsolete in modern Persian, but they are few and easily mastered. It is not easy to assign a date to the point at which these features became archaic and/or obsolete because they continued to be used in written Persian and especially in poetry long after they ceased to be alive in the spoken language. Many are still used today in the higher registers of the literary language.

§ 79 Euphonic -d-. When the preposition بيان be is followed by a pronoun or a demonstrative, it becomes bed-,  $^1$  as in بدان be in بدين bedin, بدين bedin, in بدين bedan بدين bedan بدين bedan بدين bedan بدين bedan is maintained in modern literary style, especially in certain fixed phrases like بدين وسيله bedan بدين وسيله bedan in that manner.'

§ 80 The optative and the negative imperative. The third-person singular optative is formed by replacing the regular third-person singular ending -ad with -âd. This formation is obsolete in the modern language. The negative optative prefix is  $m\hat{a}$ .

ke Rostam man-am, k'am mámânâd For I a nâm / neshinâd bar ma'tam-am pur-e endure

Sâm.

For I am Rustam—may my name not endure! May the son of Sâm sit at my funeral. —Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>$ Bed- is actually a reflex of the Middle Persian preposition الله pad. In Early New Persian there were two prepositions, the Persian ba (< pad) and the Arabic به be-, but they became conflated and are both be in modern Persian.

#### CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

The optative of budan is irregularly formed as ياد bâd, negative ماد mábâd.

chonin dâd pâsokh ke in nist dâd / hedin rôz khorshêd rawshan **mábâd!** 

Thus he answered, "This is not just. On this day may the sun not shine! -Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

In classical usage the negative prefix má- was normally used to form the nega-گیان مار که náraw 'don't go' and نرو máraw for modern مرو tive imperative, as gomân mábar ke... 'don't think that....'

8 81 The vocative enclitic. In classical usage, maintained to the present in a few expressions, -(y)â is added as a vocative enclitic, as خدایا khodâyâ 'O God!,' shâhanshâhâ 'O king of kings!' and حافظا Hâfezâ 'O Hâfez!' The same enclitic is added to interjections, like دردا darda 'oh, woe,' دريغيا darêga 'oh, alas,' and certain verbal forms like مبادا mábâdâ 'oh, may it not be.'

When goft is used as "he said in response," the enclitic -â is often appended.

/ vaz khel'at-e to vasf kojâ gôyam man? / **goftâ** ke ma-râ máju be arsh-o be behesht / nazd-e del-e khod, ke nazd-e del pôvam man.

goftam malekâ to-râ kojâ jôyam man? I said, "O king, where should I search for thee? And how should I describe thy robe of honor?" He said (in reply), "Seek me not on the throne or in heaven but in thine own heart, for I dwell within hearts." - Attâr

§ 82 Dative usages. The enclitic -râ, now used as the specific direct-object marker, originally functioned as a dative marker. It indicated both indirect and dative-possessive constructions.

یادتابی را تندم که بکشق اسری اتارت کر د (معدی)

pâdishâh-ê-**râ** shenidam ke be koshtan-e asir-ê eshârat-kard.

I heard of a king who indicated that a prisoner should be killed. -Sa'di.

in mozhde ma-râ nist.

This good news is not for me. -Sa'di

حوران بهشی را دوزخ بود اعراف \* از دوزخان برس که اعراف بهشت (معدی)

hurân-e beheshti-râ dôzakh bovad a'râf / az dôzakhiân pors ke a'râf behesht-ast.

For the houris of paradise purgatory would be hell: ask the inhabitants of hell, for whom purgatory would be paradise. - Sa'di

شران بود مراجله نجیب \* در هنر نادر و در شک<sub>ل</sub> عجیب (حامی)

shotorân bud ma-**râ**, jomle najib / dar honar nâder-o dar shakl ajib

I had ("there were to me") camels. noble all, in skill rare and in form amazing. —Jâmi

garche manzel bas khatarnâk-ast-o maqsad nâpadêd / hich râh-ê nist k' ô-râ nist pâyân: qam-mákhor.

'Though the stages are dangerous and the goal not in sight, there is no road to which there is not an end: grieve not! - Hâfez

This dative construction was the normal Early New Persian way to express possession until داشتن dâshtan developed its modern meaning of 'to have.'

وى را بنده اى بود فتح نام (قانو سامه) h nâm. **He had** a slave ("to him was a slave")

vay-râ bande-ê bud Fath nâm.

named Fath. - Oâbusnâme

Whereas nouns in Early New Persian marked by -râ are dative and not objective, pronouns marked by  $-r\hat{a}$  are oblique, i.e. any case but subjective, so they are either dative or objective.

ô-râ goftand.

ر They said **to him** (dative). اورا بر مثت

ô-râ bar posht gereft.

He took him (objective) on his back.

Get some money and come so that I can zar bégir-o bíâ tâ **to-râ** ânjâ bara**m**. take you (objective) there.

## CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

to**-râ** vajh-ê nemâyam ke...

I'll show you (dative) a way in which...

مرا دل از حان بر باید داشت و بر رنج کرسکی، بل تلخی مرک، دل بنهاد (ابوالمعالی نصرالله) لمه و دمیهٔ بهرامثایی)

márâ del az jân bar bâyad dâsht-o har ranj-e gorosnegi, bal talkhi-e marg, del benehâd.

It will be necessary for me (dative) to detach my heart from life and expect the torment of starvation—nay, the bitterness of death. - Abol-Ma'âli Nasrollâh, Kalile-o Demne

The pronominal enclitics, in addition to the use preserved in modern Persian as possessives and direct objects, also functioned as pronouns in the dative and dative-possessive. It is especially important to note the "floating" quality of these pronominal enclitics, i.e., unlike modern Persian, they do not always have a direct syntactical relationship with the words to which they are affixed but often indicate indirect objects or possession of some other word altogether in the sentence.

che guyam-at?

What should I say to you?

واعظ، عذاب دوزخ و میخارگان مکو \* حز این فه

vâ'ez, azâb-e dôzakh-o maykhâregân mágô! / joz in fasâne nist-at afsâne-ê degar?

Preacher, don't talk of the torment of hell and wine-drinkers! Don't you have any fables besides these? - Fâni

ز بیقوتی اش خاست از حان نفیر \* وطن ساخت کر دیکی آبکیر پس از مسدتی کر د آنجا درنک \* درافت دغوکش ماکه بخنک (حام

ze bêquti-ash khâst az jân nafir / vatan Because [the old bird] had nothing to sâkht gerd-e yek-ê âbgir // pas az mod- eat, there arose a cry from its soul. dat-ê kard ânjâ derang / dar-oftâd qôk-ê-'sh nâgah be chang.

Then it settled by a pond. After waiting there for a time, suddenly a frog fell into its clutches. - Jâmi

§ 83 Circumpositions. Instead of the simple preposition followed by its com-

plement as in modern Persian (بسرسرش bar sar-esh 'on his head'), in Early New Persian what is now the preposition was commonly a postposition (i.e., after the noun) and the noun was preceded by be, forming a circumposition, as بسرش بسر be sar-ash bar 'on his head' and يزمين اندر be zamin andar 'in the earth.'

bénâlid bar kerdegâr-e jahân / ba zâri He cried out to the maker of the world; hami ârzu kard ân- // ke lakht-ê ze zôr- in misery he made a wish that he ash setânad hami / ke raftan be rah bar tavânad hami.

would take away a bit of his strength so that he could walk on the road

-Ferdawsi

bas nâmvar be zêr-e zamin dafn-karde- Many a famous one have they buried and / k'az hasti-ash be ru-ye zamin bar beneath the earth, of whose existence neshân namând.

no trace remains on the face of the earth. - Sa'di

§ 84 The perfective aspect: the be-prefix. In early New Persian the verbal prefix bé- (identical to, and indeed the origin of, the modern subjunctive and imperative prefix) indicates the perfective aspect of the verb. that is, the action or state of the verb done once, suddenly, or finally (the Greek agrist, the French passé simple, and a feature with which students of Slavic languages are all too familiar). This usage was maintained in poetry long after it ceased to function in normal prose-writing. Since English has no formal way of expressing the perfective aspect, circumlocutions must be sought for proper translation.

in bégoft-o béraft.

He blurted this out and got up and left.

del-am bésôkht.

- My heart went up in flames.

پرر بخدید و ارکان دولت مپندیدند و برادران بحان برنجدند (معدی، کلسان)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> A verb marked by the be- prefix is specifically perfective, but a verb that lacks the prefix is simply not marked: it can be either perfective or imperfective in aspect.

#### CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

. <sub>pasa</sub>ndidand-o barâdarân be jân héranjidand.

pedar békhandid-o arkân-e dawlat bé- The father burst out laughing, the ministers of state expressed approval, and the brothers smarted with mortal pain.

-Sa'di, Golestân

he yazdân **bé**nâlid k' ay kerdgâr / hedin kâr in bande-râ pâs-dâr.

All at once he cried out to God, "O Maker, protect this slave in this endeavor." —Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

ân pir lâshe-râ-ke sepordand zêr-e gel / khâk-ash chonân **bé**khord k'azô ostokhân námând.

That old corpse they entrusted to the clay was so gobbled up by the earth that not even the bones remain.

-Sa'di, Golestân

chon-ke چونکه 85 Cho(n). In modern Persian چون chon usually occurs as and means 'because.' In classical Persian, however, چون chon (together with its shortened form \_\_\_\_ cho) poses special problems because it can be a causal conjunction ('because, since, as'), a temporal/conditional conjunction ('when, if'), a preposition ('like'), and an interrogative ('how?'). When followed directly by a verb, it is a conjunction, but otherwise only context determines how it is used.

cho gâsed shod, payâm-e ô bord: / shod shishe-ye mehr dar miân khord.

When the messenger left, he took his message: thus was the vial of love between them shattered. - Nezâmi

shakhs-ê hame shab bar sar-e bêmâr gerist / chon rôz shod, ô bémord o bêmâr bézist.

A person wept all night over a sick man. When day came, he died and the sick man lived. - Sa'di

cho pêsh-e yusof âmad ebn-e yâmin / neshând-ash hamnafas bar takht-e zarrin.

اكر صد سال كسر آتش فروزد \* جو يكدم اندران اقتد ببوزد (سعدى)

agar sad sâl gabr âtesh forôzad / cho yekdam andar ân oftad, bésôzad.

When Benjamin came before Joseph. he sat him next to himself on the golden throne. - Attâr

Although a Zoroastrian kindles the flame for a hundred years, when (if) he falls into it for an instant, he will go up in flames. - Sa'di

حيه باشد ار ثود از بند غم دلش آزاد \* حو بهت حافظ مسكين غلام و چاكر دوست (حافظ)

che bâshad ar shavad az band-e gam del-ash âzâd / cho hast hâfez-e meskin qolâm-o châkar-e dôst?

What would happen were his heart released from the bonds of grief, since poor Hâfez is a slave and servant to the beloved? — Hâfez

نها نه منم ستررسده \* کو دیده که صد حو من ندیده (نظامی)

tanhâ na man-am setam-reside / ku dide ke sad cho man nádide?

It is not I alone who have suffered onpression. Where is the eye that has not seen a hundred like me? - Nezâmi

دوران تقاحو ماد صحرا

dawrân-e bagâ cho bâd-e sahrâ bóg'zasht / talkhi-o khoshi-o zesht-o zêbâ bóg'zasht.

The era of existence passes like a desert wind: bitterness and sweetness, ugly and beautiful pass away. - Sa'di

پادشاه خویش را دانستام \* حون روم تنها حو نتوانستام (عطار)

pâdishâh-e khêsh-râ dâneste-am / chon ravam tanhâ, cho nat'vânesteam?

I know my king, [but] how can I go alone, unable as I am? - Attâr

§ 86 The continuous marker hami. The older continuous marker is Anni. Unlike its modern reflex & mi-, it does not have to be prefixed to the verb, and it often follows the verb, especially in poetry. It generally connotes a continual repetition of action, like 'to keep on doing something' in English.

#### CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

hami bud bôs o kenâr o nabid.

There was continual kissing, embracing and wine. - Ferdawsi

cheshmân-ash hamchonân dar <sub>chashmk</sub>hâne **hami** gardid.

His eyes kept on turning in their sockets. -Sa'di

<sub>yâr-e</sub> mehrbân âyad **hami**.

bô-ye juy-e Muliân âyad hami / yâd-e The scent of the Mulian river keeps coming; the memory of the beloved friend keeps coming. -Rudaki

§ 87 The past habitual and conditional. Whereas the ملي hami marker gives the continuous sense ('to keep on doing, to do over and over'), the past habitual ('used to') was formed in older Persian by the addition of an enclitic -i to the past verb. Like the modern past habitual it was also used for the irrealis mood.

ráftimi رفتیمی ráftidi رفتیدی ráftandi رفتندي

sayyâdân ânjâ besyâr **âmadandi** o bedân navâhi dâm-nehâdandi.

Many hunters used to come there and set snares in those regions.

-Kashefi, Anvâr-e Sohayli

خواحه نزرک احمد حن هر روز بسرای خوش مار دادی و تا ناز پیشین بنشتی و کار براندی من با بسران او بودمی و آنچه فرمودی نوشتی (نظامی عروضی) جهار مقاله)

khâje-ye bozorg, ahmad-e hasan, har rôz-ê be sarây-e khêsh bâr dâdi o tâ namâz-e pêshin bén'shasti o kâr *bérândi. man bâ pesarân-e ô budami o* conducting administrative affairs. I ânche farmudi neveshtami.

The great master Ahmad son of Hasan used to hold court every day at his house and sit until the noon prayer, was with his sons, and I would write down everything he would say.

-Nezâmi Aruzi, Chahâr Magâle

اگر شاه را شاه بودی پدر \* بسر بر نهادی مراتاج زر اگر مادر ششاه بانو بدنی \* مراسیم و زر تا بزانو بدی (فردوسی)

agar shâh-râ shâh **budi** pedar / be sar bar **nehâdi** marâ tâj-e zar. // Agar mâdar-e shâh bânu **bŭdi** / marâ sim o zar tâ ba zânu **bŭdi**. If the king had had a king for a father, he would have placed on my head a crown of gold. If the king's mother had been a lady, I would have silver and gold up to my knees.

-Ferdawsi, Shâhnâme

\* نیم کل بشیدند و توبه بشکستن ( رعدی)

kasân-ke dar ramazân chang míshekastandi / nasim-e gol béshenidand-o tawbe bésh'kastand. Those, who would have been smashing harps during Ramadan, suddenly smelled the rose-scented breeze and broke their yows of abstinence.

-Sa'di

§ 88 The archaic present stem of *budan*. In addition to the present stem باش  $b\hat{a}sh$ -, which survives in modern Persian for the subjunctive, there was another present stem of *budan*, namely بسو bov-, which gives the following present paradigm:

بوم	bovam	بويم	bovim
بوی	bovi	بويد	bovid
بود	bovad	بوند	bovand

The negative is regularly formed with the ná- prefix (ببوی nábovam, نبوی nábovi, &c.). Unfortunately the third-person singular بسود bovad 'he/she/it is' is identical to the past tense, بود bud 'he/she/it was.'

§ 89 The archaic negative copula. In addition to the negative copula as in modern Persian (see §18), there was another negative copula formed by adding the present copulative endings to the negative particle *na*.

náyam نیم	náim نئيم
nái نئی	náid نئيد
nist نیست	náyand نیند

#### CLASSICAL AND ARCHAIC USAGES

§ 90 The archaic past narrative. The archaic past narrative tense is formed by adding the pronominal endings, not directly to the past participle, but to a form of the third-person singular past narrative where an elision of the -e of the participle to the -ast of the third person takes place (thus افتاده است oftâdé-ast > أ oftâdást). The paradigm is as follows.

oftâdástam افتادستم oftâdástim افتادستیم oftâdásti افتادستي oftâdástid افتادستىد oftâdást افتادست oftâdástand افتادستند

The form also occurs in the past habitual-conditional:

oftâdástami افتادستمي oftâdástimi افتادستيمي oftâdástii افتادستس oftâdástidi افتادستىدى oftâdásti افتادستي oftâdástandi افتادستندي

These forms occur with some frequency in poetry.

كاكثى آن ثب وآن روز كه ترسيرم ازانْ \* نُفتادسيْ و سث ادى نشدسى تعار (حاقانی)

kâsh-ki ân shab o ân rôz ke tarsidam az ân / náfotâdasti o shâdi náshodasti had not befallen and joy had not timâr.

Would that the night and day I feared turned to grief. - Khâqâni

§ 91 The gnomic past. A special use of the past in classical Persian, quite common in poetry, is equivalent to the Greek gnomic agrist, i.e., the simple past used for proverbial sayings and statements of general validity. The present is used in English. فرق تأہی و بندکی برخاست \* حون قصنای مبشة آمد پیش (معدی)

farq-e shâhi o bandegi bar-khâst / chon qazâ-ye nebeshte âmad pêsh.

The distinction between kingship and slavehood disappears when "written fate" (death) comes forth. -Sa'di

دوران تقاحو ماد صحرا بكذشت \* تلخ و خوشي و زشت و زما بكذشت (معدى)

dawrân-e bagâ cho bâd-e sahrâ bóg'zasht / talkhi o khoshi o zesht o zêbâ bóg'zasht.

The era of existence passes like a desert wind: bitterness and sweetness, ugly and beautiful pass away. - Sa'di

این یک دو سه روزه نوبت عمر کذشت \* چون آب بجریب ار و چون باد بدشت هرکز عنسه دو روز مرا سیساد نکشت \* روزی که نیامدست و روزی که کذشت (خیام)

in yek-do-se-rôze nawbat-e omr gozasht / chon âb be juybâr o chon bâd be dasht // hargez qam-e do rôz marâ yâd nagasht / rôz-ê ke nayâmadast o rôz-ê ke gozasht. This one-, two-, or three-day period of life passes like water in a stream and like wind on a plain. Never do I worry about two days: the day that has not yet come and the day that is past.

-Khayyâm

Part Three بخش موم بخش موم Colloquial متور زبان Transformations

Colloquial Persian is the version of the language used for ordinary, everyday oral communication in Iran. Until recently it was rarely, if ever, ever written in any form, but now written representation has become fairly common. Equivalents are given in this section in the Arabic script, but such "transcriptions" are used only for representing colloquial speech in some novels and short-stories, for very informal writing like notes, and for humorous effect. Where no equivalent is given in the Arabic script, it means that such phenomena have no conventional representation.

## § 92 Phonological transformations.

92.1 In almost all words in all environments -ân- becomes -un-.

Only a few words are not subject to the  $\hat{a}n > un$  transformation (e.g., داستیان dâstân "story," ایران irân "Iran," and قرآن  $qor'\hat{a}n$  "Koran").

92.2 In a few words -âm- becomes -um-:

but these are isolated instances, and  $\hat{a}m > um$  is not a general transformation in colloquial Persian.

92.3 -st- is generally pronounced -ss- (and almost never represented in the Arabic script), as in

92.4 Final -ar becomes -e in the following words:

92.5 Final -e followed by any enclitic becomes -á-.

#### COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

92.6 In the narrative tense final  $-\epsilon$  drops when followed by enclitic -i and stress moves to the vowel of the enclitic.

92.7 The plural suffix  $-h\hat{a}$  tends to become  $-\hat{a}$ , as indeed almost all intervocalic h tends to be elided. When  $-h\hat{a}$  is suffixed to words ending in  $-\hat{e}$ , both  $-\hat{e}$  and -h-are elided.

92.8 Most words ending in -âh and -â' lose the final consonant.

§ 93 The copulas. The short copula has two forms, one used after consonants and -i and another used after vowels other than -i.

Following consonants and -i the present copulas are:

Following vowels other than -i, the present copulas are:

## Examples:

خوبم	khub-am	I'm all right	khub-im خوبيم	we're all right
خوبي	khub-i	you're all right	khub-in خوبين	you're all right
خوبه	khub-e	he/she/it's all right	khub-an خوبن	they're all right
ً كجام	kojâ-m	where am I?	kojâ-ym كجايم	where are we?
کجای	kojâ-y	where are you?	kojâ-yn كجاين	where are you?
کجاست	kojâ-st	where is he/she/it?	kojâ-n کجان	where are they?

The long copulas are as follows.

هستم	hástam	I am	هستيم	hástim	we are
هستی	hásti	you are	هستين	hásti <b>n</b>	you are
هست	hást	he/she/it is	هستن	hástan	they are

In most environments the distinction in meaning in written Persian (see §22) between the long and short copulas has been lost altogether, and generally in spoken Persian the distinction between the long and short copulas is purely one of usage. The long copulas are used (1) for emphasis, as in written Persian (khub hást! "it is good"), (2) after the non-specific enclitic in all persons except the third singular (bachchâ-ye khub-i-hastan "they're good children," but bachcheye khub-i-e "he's a good child"), (3) always after -(a)m, the colloquial reflex of enclitic -ham (khúb-am-hast "it's good too"), and (4) after any word ending in a vowel other than -í and -é (which becomes -á- before the short copulas, see §92.5).

#### § 94 Verbal inflections.

94.1 The past stem of almost all verbs remains as in written Persian (a notable exception is *tunestan* for *tavânestan*). Some of the personal endings, however, undergo slight changes and reductions:

-am	-im
-i	-in
(-esh)	-an

An example is the past absolute inflection of raftan:

ráftam رفتم	ráftim رفتیم
ráfti رفتی	ráftin رفتین
(رفتش ráft(esh)	ráftan رفتن

The third-person singular zero ending of written Persian is often replaced in spoken Persian by -esh. Its use is optional.

94.2 Present stems, with exceptions noted below in §95, remain as in written Persian, as does the *mi*- progressive marker. The personal endings for stems ending in consonants are:

-am	-im
-i	-in
-е	-an

as in the inflection of gereftan:

mígirim میگیرم mígirim

## COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

mígiri میگیری	mígirin میگیرین
mígire میگیره	mígiran میگیرن

For stems ending in vowels, the personal endings are:

-m	-ym
<b>-y</b>	-yn
-d	-n

as in the inflection of umad-/â- (âmadan):

míâm ميام	míâym میایم
míây میای	míâyn میاین
míâd میاد	míân میان

94.3 The past narrative tense is inflected as follows (for the transformation  $\ell a$ - $\delta$ - $\delta$ - and  $-\ell$ - $\delta$ - see §92.5 above).

raftám رفتهام	raftím رفتهایم
raftí رفتهای	raftín رفتهاین
rafté رفته	raftán رفتهاند

Note that, except in the third person singular, the only distinction between the past absolute and past narrative is one of stress. In all negatives (náraftam), progressives (míraftam) and compounds (bár-dâshtam), i.e., where the primary stress is removed from the verb itself, the past narrative and the past absolute differ only in the third person singular (náraft-nárafte, míraft-mírafte, bár-dâsht-bárdâshte).

94,4 The formation of the subjunctive of simple verbs is identical to that of written Persian (using the colloquial form of the present stems given below in §95, e.g., הענות, של béram, אינ béram, בעבות, béram, בעבות, béram, בעבות, bíâm, בעבות várdâram). In compound verbs, however, the bé- prefix is becoming more and more prevalent in spoken Persian, and with the exception of truly close compounds like vardâshtan, the bé- prefix is as likely as not to occur with compounds of -kardan and -shodan.

## § 95 Reduced, altered, and contracted colloquial verbal stems.

WRITTEN	PAST STEM	PRESENT	PRES. 1ST SING.	IMPERATIVE
FORM		STEM		
آوردن	âvord-	-âr-	mí <b>âr</b> am	b <b>íâr</b> (in)
انئاختن	(a)ndâkht-	-ndâz-	mí <b>ndâz</b> am	b <b>ándâz</b> (in)

برداشتن	var-dâsht-	var-dâr-	<b>vár-</b> mi <b>dâr</b> am	vár-dâr(in)
توانستن	tunest-	tun-	mí <b>tun</b> am	bé <b>tun</b> (in)
خواستن	khâst-	khâ-	mí <b>khâ</b> m	bé <b>khâ</b> (yn)
دادن	dâd-	d-	mí <b>d</b> am	bé <b>deh</b> , bédin
دانستن	dunest-	dun-	mí <b>dun</b> am	bé <b>dun</b> (in)
ر فتن	raft-	r-	mí <b>r</b> am	bó <b>ra</b> w, bé <b>r</b> in
شدن	shod-	sh-	mí <b>sh</b> am	béshaw, béshin
شستن	shost-	shur-	mís <b>hur</b> am	bés <b>hur</b> (in)
شكستن	sh(e)kast-	shkan-	mís <b>hkan</b> am	bé <b>shkan</b> (in)
شنيدن	shenid-	shn(av)-	mís <b>hn(av)</b> am	bés <b>hnaw</b> , bés <b>hn</b> in
شناختن	sh(e)nâkht-	shnâs-	mís <b>hnâ</b> sam	bés <b>hnâ</b> s(in)
گذاشتن	g(o)zâsht-	(g)zâr-	mí( <b>g)zâr</b> am	béz <b>âr</b> (in), bó <b>gzâr</b> (in)
گذشتن	g(o)zasht-	(g)zar-	mí( <b>g)zar</b> am	bézar(in), bógzar(in)
گفتن	goft-	g-	mígam	bé <b>gu</b> , bégin
نشستن	n(e)shast-	(n)shin-	mí( <b>n</b> )s <b>hin</b> am	bé(n)shin(in)
نوشتن	n(e)vesht-	nvis-	mí <b>nvi</b> sam	bé <b>nvis</b> (in)

§ 96 The present and past progressive. In written Persian the present and past continuous tenses serve as both habitual and progressive, that is, میروم míraram is both 'I go' and 'I'm going'; میرفتم míraftam is both 'I used to go' and 'I was going.' In colloquial Persian میرفتم míram means only 'I go' and میرفتم míraftam is only 'I used to go.' For the present and past progressive a compound tense formation has developed with dâshtan as auxiliary, and they occur only in the affirmative—no negative exists.

The present progressive ('I am going') of raftan is as follows:

dâram míram دارم میرم	dârim mírim داریم میریم
dâri míri داری میری	dârin mírin دارین میرین
dâre míre داره میره	dâran míran دارن میرن

The past progressive ('I was going') is as follows:

dâshtim míraftim داشتیم میرفتیم dâshtim míraftim داشتی میرفتی dâshti mírafti داشتی میرفتی dâshtin míraftin داشتن میرفتن dâsht míraft داشت میرفتن

Contrast the following:

#### COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

? chekâr-mikonin چکار میکنی: What do you do (for a

living)?

? chekâr-mikonin دارين حکار ميکنين؟ What are you doing?

rezâ doruq-mige. رضا دروغ ميگه Reza tells lies.

.rezâ dâre doruq-mige رضا داره دروغ میگه Reza is lying.

§ 97 The direct-object marker. The specific direct-object marker  $(1, -r\hat{a})$  becomes -ro or -re. Following consonants the r may be dropped, giving -o/-e. The literary منه márâ is regularized to (من man-o. Since the resulting -o enclitic is pronounced exactly like the co-ordinating conjunction -o, it is often-and very confusingly—spelled like the conjunction with a separate vâv.

?in-o didín اینو (این و) دیدین؟ Have you seen this?

kif-e man-o kojâ کیف منو (من و) کجا gzâshtan? Where did they put my

bag?

-inâ-ro kojâ paydâ اینهارو کجا پیدا کردن؟ Where did they find these?

aynak-esh-o gom-karde. کرده He's lost his glasses.

!dar-o vâ-kon درو واكم: Open the door!

When a direct object is followed by -(a)m, the reflex of -ham, the direct-object marker is omitted altogether.

un-am didam. اون هم دیدم I saw that one too. chizâ-ye shomâ-m چیزهای شماهم آوردم âvordam. I brought your things too.

As in the classical language, the reflex of  $-r\hat{a}$  is often used in spoken Persian as a dative, especially with verbs of motion and expressions of time.

shirâz-(r)o náraftam. شيرازو (شيرازرو) نرفتم I haven't gone to Shiraz.

tamâm-e shahr-o تمام شهرو گشتیم gashtim. We went all about the city.

emshab-(r)o haminjâ امشبو وامشبرو) Sleep here tonight. békhâbin. همينجا بخوابين

§ 98 The emphasizing particle -ke. The particle ke, not to be confused with the relative pronoun (§40) or the temporal conjunction (§57), serves to emphasize the word it follows. The same effect is achieved in English by voice intonation.

اینکه ردست نیست نیست in doróst-ke nist. This is not right.

§ 99 Pronominal enclitics. There are two sets of pronominal enclitics, one postconsonantal and the other postvocalic. Following consonants, the enclitics are:

-am	-emun	pedár <b>am</b> پدرم	pedár <b>em</b> un پدرمون
-et	-etun	pedáret پدرت	pedáretun پدرتون
-esh	-eshun	pedá <b>resh</b> پدرش	pedáreshun پدرشون

Following vowels, the enclitics are:

-m	-mun	khuná <b>m</b> خو نهم	khuná <b>mun</b> خونهمون
-t	-tun	khunát خونەت	khunátun خونەتون
-sh	-shun	khunás <b>h</b> خو نەش	khunáshun خونەشون

§ 100 Prepositions. Most prepositions remain as they are in written Persian. dar 'in, inside' is seldom used in spoken Persian, however; in its place tu (optionally tu-ye) is used. Prepositional phrases of location tend to follow the verb, unlike written Persian.

رفتن تو(ی) اون خونه ráftan tu(-ye) un khune. They went into that house.

gozâshtamesh tu(-ye) I put it in the drawer.

keshu.

Come in!

In expressions of motion toward and location in, prepositions are generally dispensed with entirely in spoken Persian.

#### COLLOQUIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

del-am míkhâst béram دلم میخواست برم تهرون tehrun.

I wanted to go to Tehran.

man emruz némikhâm من امروز نمیخوام بمونم bémunam khune.

I don't want to stay at home today.

bâyad un daftar-e dige باید اون دفتر دیگه ماشه bâshe.

He should be in that other office.

Contrary to written usage, the pronominal enclitics can be added to all prepositions. With the enclitics be becomes béh- (béham, béhet, béhesh, etc.), bâ becomes bâhâ- (bâhâm, bâhât, bâhâsh, etc.) and hamrâh becomes hamrâhâ-(hamrâhâm, hamrâhât, hamrâhâsh, etc.). The only other simple preposition in common use is az, bar being obsolete and dar being either omitted or suppleted by tu.

béhesh nágoftin zud بهش نگفتین زود بیاد؟

Didn't you tell him to come early?

Ali was with me.

ali bâhâm bude. على باهام بوده

Who's that with her?

?un hamrâhâsh kíe اون همراهاش كيه ?ázesh khosh-et némiâd ازش خوشت نمياد

Don't you like it?

## Appendix A

#### The Uses of U Tâ

I. The preposition  $t\hat{a}$  can mean 'until,' 'up to,' 'down to,' 'all the way to,' Or 'by' (with reference to time).

(With reference to time).

I work until 5 o'clock.

I read up to page 40.

Be here by 6 o'clock.

The resolved to solve the puzzle down to the last square.

- II. The conjunction  $t\hat{a}$  has a variety of meanings depending upon its usage.
- (1) With the present indicative it usually means '(for) as long as,' 'as far as,' or 'ever since' for situations that continue into the present.

He's been like this **ever since** I've کا اورا مثنائه میمنطور است known him. **As far as** I remember, nothing has

As far as I remember, nothing has changed.

" ا ادم مآید میچ چنری عوض نشده است As far as I remember, nothing has د ما دمام درگئی مرا زهر آلود خوامد کر د As long as I am alive it will poison my life.

- (2) With the subjunctive tâ means:

  - (b) 'until' (when the  $t\hat{a}$ -clause follows the main verb) I'll wait until you come.
  - (c) 'by the time that' with reference to the future; see §64.1(c)

#### APPENDIX A

By the time we get to the airport, the plane will have gone.

(d) 'in order that' for a purpose clause, which always comes at the end of a sentence; see §64.2

I'm coming (in order) to see you.

(e) With the negative present subjunctive tâ means 'until' (always at the head of the sentence); see §64.1(b)

I won't go until you do.

(3) With the past, tâ means

(a) 'by the time' with reference to the past:

By the time we got to the airport, the plane had gone.

(b) 'as soon as' الماق شدم ديدم كه كسى آنجا نيت As soon as I entered the room I saw that there was no one there.

(c) 'ever since' and 'as long as'

This clock had been in our house for as long as I could remember.

(d) 'until'

He kept going until he reached رفت تابه تریز رسید

(4) With the negative present perfect tense, tâ means 'before':

The acrobats set up their stage so that مركد كم في ساط خود ابر ما كر دند كه تا در نشده و مردم به خانهاشان نرفتاند کاری انحام دمند

they could accomplish something before it got late and people went to their houses.

## Appendix B

## Telling Time, Days of the Week, Months of the Year, Reading Dates. **Arithmetical Operations**

## **Telling Time**

? ساعت چند است sâ'at-e chand-ast

.sâ'at-e dah-ast

sâ'at-e dah-o rob'-ast.

sâ'at-e dah-o nim-ast.

sâ'at-e yâzdah-o rob' It's a quarter to eleven است. kam-ast. (ten forty-five).

What time is it?

It's ten o'clock.

It's ten fifteen.

It's ten thirty.

early morning (dawn)

morning (generally)

before noon (AM)

## Divisions of the Day

bâmdâd ماراد

sobh صبح و sobh و منطور و منطور و qabl az zohr فطر ba'd az zohr

after noon (PM)

noon

late afternoon, early

evening

night

midnight

sâ'at-e shesh-e qablaz- 6 AM today zohr-e emruz

sâ'at-e shesh-e ba'daz- 6 PM tomorrow zohr-e fardâ

shab أمرش nimeshab, nesf-e shab

sâ'at-e nim ساعت نیم

12:30 PM

210

#### APPENDIX B

## Days of the Week

? امروز چندشنبه است emruz chandshambe-ast? What day of the week is it today?

emruz shambe-ast. Today's Saturday.

chahârshambe Wednesday چهارشنبه shambe Saturday چهارشنبه

بنجشنبه yekshambe Sunday پنجشنبه panjshambe Thursday

doshambe Monday جمعه jum'e Friday

seshambe Tuesday سهشنيه

Because traditionally the day of the week starts at sundown, the night is generally called the "eve" of what we call the next day.

shab-e jom'e Thursday night ("the eve

of Friday")

shab-e yekshambe Saturday night ("the eve شب یکشنبه

of Sunday")

In modern times, however, most of these expressions have become obsolete. The only one left in common use is *shab-e jom'e* for 'Thursday night.'

When *shab* is placed after the name of the day, it means the night following that day, as in English.

jom'e shab Friday night جمعه شب پکشنبه شب yekshambe shab Sunday night

The plural is used for expressing 'on Mondays,' etc.

panjshambe**hâ-**o jom'e**hâ** We don't work on پنجشنبهها و جمعهها کار kâr-némikonim. Thursdays or Fridays.

#### Month's of the Year

The Iranian calendar begins each year at the vernal equinox (imawruz = 1) Farvardin), which usually falls on March 21st. The first six months contain thirty-one days each; the second five months contain thirty days each; the last month contains twenty-nine days except in leap years, when it has thirty. The Iranian months correspond to the signs of the zodiac.

fasl-e bahâr SPRING . فسل بهار farvardin (March 21–April 20, Aries)

```
יל מוניים ordibehesht (April 21-May 21, Taurus) איל לפיים אוריים האוריים אוריים אוריי
```

The Solar Hegira era (هجرى شمسى hejri-e shamsi) is used in Iran. On Nawruz, the vernal equinox and Iranian New Year's Day, the Solar Hegira era is 621 years behind the Christian era. An on-line conversion program is available at www.payvand.com.

On March 21, 1976 (1 Farvardin 2535) the Imperial (شاهن shâhanshâhi) era was proclaimed. On Nawruz the Imperial era was 559 years ahead of the Christian era. The Imperial era was cancelled after about two years, and Iran returned to the Solar Hegira calendar.

The other calendrical system in use in Iran is the Islamic lunar Hegira era (A.H., anno hegirae), which began in A.D. 622 with the migration of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina. This calendar is used for determining religious holidays in Iran, and, being lunar, it bears no readily discernible relation to the solar year of the Christian or Solar Hegira calendars. The lunar year falls 11¼ days short of the solar year annually. On-line conversion programs (e.g. www.ori.unizh.ch/hegira.html and www.assirat.org/Hcal) and downloadable calendars are available (www.topshareware.com/Islamic-Calendar-download-6480. htm).

#### APPENDIX B

The Islamic lunar months, which do not correspond with solar months in any readily calculable way, are:

The European-style months used in Persian, taken from French, are as follows:

#### **Reading Dates**

Dates are read in the following fashion. Note particularly where ezâfes fall.

(هـق) ۱۴۲۶ شعبان ۲۶ bist-o sheshom-e sha'bân 26 Shaban 1426 (A.H., (sâl)-e yek-hezâr-o Lunar Hegira)

chahârsad-o bist-o

shesh(-e hejri-e qamari)

## **Arithmetical Operations**

Arithmetical operations in Persian are written from right to left, exactly as they are in English.

Addition (جمع jam'):

 $\Upsilon + \Upsilon = V$  چهار باضافهٔ سه مساوی chahâr be ezâfe-ye se four plus three mosâvi-ast bâ haft equals seven

Subtraction (تفريق tafriq):

 $1 \cdot - Y = \Lambda$  ده منهای دو مساوی  $dah \ minh \hat{a} \cdot ye \ do$  ten minus two mosâvi-ast bâ hasht equals eight

Multiplication (ضرب zarb):

 $\Delta \times \Upsilon = \Delta$  پنج ضرب در سه panj zarb dar se five multiplied by  $mos \hat{a}vi$ -ast  $b\hat{a}$   $p \hat{a}nz$ - three equals fifteen dah

Division (بخش bakhsh or تقسيم taqsim):

Powers are expressed by بتوان be tavân-e

do be tavân-e se two to the power دو بتوان سه ۲<sup>۲</sup>

تمونه ای چند از نثر معاصر و Examples of Contemporary فارسی Persian Prose

میگویند در زمانهای قدیم یک کاسب کممایهٔ کاشی هرچه داشت فروخت و دست زنشرا گرفت و از کاشان خارج شد و رفت و رفت تا به تبریز رسید. در آنجا یک دکان کبابیزی دایر کرد. <sup>۱</sup>

در اولین روزی که دکان آب و جاروب شد، کاسب کاشی به انتظار مشتری نشست و پس از چند دقیقهای چهار نفر از باباشمل های تبریز وارد دكان شدند واز كباب مفصل طلب كردند و با نان خوردند. هنگام خروج از دکان به صاحب دکان بطور آمرانه گفتند «آهای، از پول خبری نیست. صدایت هم درنیاید. اگر میخواهی در امان باشی باید هر روز همینطور از ما پذیرائی کنی. آن هم مجانی. فهمیدی؟ در غیر اینصورت پدرترا در

این حرفهارا زدند و رفتند. کاشی بینوا از ترس بلافاصله دکانرا بست و از تبریز با زنش خارج شد و آمد و آمد تا به شهر و دیار خود، یعنی کاشان، رسید. به محض ورود به خانهٔ قبلی به زنش گفت «در خانهرا محکم ببند!» او هم بست. مرد کاشی بالای بام رفت، رو به شهر تبریز ایستاد و با فریاد و عصبانیت دستهارا مرتب بالا و پائین برد و به لوطیها و باباشملهای تبریز بد و بیراه گفت و با توپ و تشر افزود که «من پدرتانرا درمیآورم! مرا مىترسانىد؟!»

Lâshi native of Kashan کاشی; kaseb tradesman کممایه kâseb tradesman کاسب (Kashanis have a reputation for timidity, while Tabrizis are noted for being "rough and tough"); خارج شدن khârej-shodan to go out; د کان کبابپزی dokkân-e kabâbpazi kabob shop; داير کردن dâyer-kardan to open, run.

<sup>-</sup>entezâr expecta انتظار ;ab-o-jârub-shodan to be swept clean آب و جاورب شدن2 tion; مفصل moshtari customer; باباشمل bâbâshamal ruffian, tough; مفصل mofassal elaborate; خردن *nân* bread (kabob is customarily ordered with either bread or rice); هنگام hangâm-e at the time of; خروج khoruj going out, leaving; صاحب دكان sâheb-dokkân proprietor; آمرانه amerâne imperious; آهاى ahây hey!; يذيرائي كردن از amân safety; يذيرائي كردن از pazirâi-kardan az to receive, take care of; در غير اين صورت adar qayr-e in surat other در غير اين صورت wise; يدّر کسي را درآوردن pedar-e kas-i-râ dar-âvordan to "get" somebody.

يعنى :diâr region ديار ;belâfâsele immediately بلافاصله ;binavâ miserable بينوا<sup>3</sup>

زنش از داخل حیاط فریاد زد «بابا جان، بیا پائین! میخواهی خون راهٔ بیندازی؟» ۱

-Y-

نیم کیلو گوشت گوسفند خریده بودم و از حاشیهٔ خیابان گلچین گلچین بطرف خانه میرفتم که دوستی به من رسید و بعد از خوش و بش و احوال پرسی، دیدم عینک طبی و به اصطلاح «ذره بینی» به چشم دارد. با تعجب گفتم «فلانی، مگر چشمهایت عیب و علتی پیدا کرده؟»

گفت «نه، یک چشمم کمی ضعیف شده بود و اشیارا درست نمیدید و روزنامه درست نمی خوانم. بناچار به چشمپزشک مراجعه کردم و معلوم شد که چشم چپم ضعیف شده و دکتر این عینکرا داد که به چشمم بزنم.» خداحافظی کرد و رفت.

بعد از رفتن دوستم احساس کردم یک چشم من هم ضعیف است. یعنی چه؟ تا چند لحظهٔ پیش که خوب بود. چطور ظرف چند ثانیه یکیاش ضعیف، شده؟ کمی فکر کردم که بدانم کدام چشمم ضعیف است. نتوانستم چیزی بفهمم. لاعلاج همانجا کنار پیادهرو ایستادم و پاکت گوشترا روی زمین

مياط<sup>1</sup> مياط hayât courtyard; فرياد زدن faryâd-zadan to shout; باباجان bâbâ-jân address of endearment خون راه انداختن khun râh-andâkhtan to start a (blood) feud.

وسفند ; gusfand sheep كوسفند hâshie edge; الدوسي khiâbân avenue; حوش و بش gusfand sheep كلچين golchin gingerly, carefully; خوش و بش khosh-o besh chit-chat; احوالپرسي hvâlporsi asking one's condition; عينك طبي عينك علي غيرة aynak-e tebbi prescription glasses; به عين be estelâh idiomatically, "as they say"; اصطلاح عيب غير ayrebin magnifying glass; تعجب ta'ajjob astonishment; فلاني folâni "so-and-so," dummy name; عيب ayb defect, fault; عيب ayb defect, fault; عيب عين غير ashyâ thing; معلوم شيء shay' pl عليار be nâchâr "there was nothing to be done but"; عشم يزشك cheshmpezeshk eye doctor; عملوم شدن morâje'e-kardan be to consult; مراجعه كردن به ma'lum-shodan to become apparent, to be learned; يو chap left.

گذاشتم. چشم چپمرا بستم و با چشم راست کلاغیرا که روی آنتن رادیوی پشت بام خانهٔ مقابل نشسته بود نشانه گرفتم. دیدم درست است. کلاغرا کاملاً می بینم. رنگش سیاه است. نوکش بقاعده است و پاهایش را هم خوب می بینم. خاطرم جمع شد که چشم راستم معیوب نیست و هر عیبی هست در چشم چپ است. ا

کف دستمرا گذاشتم روی چشم راست و با چشم چپ کلاغرا نشانه گرفتم. بی اختیار دلم فرو ریخت. سرم درد گرفت و شقیقه هایم شروع کرد به زدن. گردن کلاغ کوتاه شده بود، نوکشرا درست نمی دیدم، پاهایش محو بود و رنگش خاکستری. یعنی چه؟ دستپاچه شدم. فوری دستمرا از روی چشم راستم برداشتم و چشم چپمرا بستم. دیدم درست می بینم. کلاغ همان کلاغ اولی است، ولی مگر به این زودی امکان داشت که من دست از این آزمایش طبی بردارم؟

پاکت گوشترا روی زمین گذاشتم و به دیوار پیادهرو خیابان تکیه دادم و دیگر بدون اینکه از کف دستهایم کمک بگیرم، با بستن و باز کردن پلکهای چشمم شروع کردم به آزمایش کردن. از بد حادثه نمیدانم کلاغ مورد نشانه و آزمایش من از چه چیز ترسید که رم کرد و پرید و من ماندم بی نشانه. آبرای پیدا کردن هدف تازه ای به تکاپو افتادم ولی از بس هول

احساس کردن المطاه : ya'ni che? what does it mean فانه يعنى چه يعنى چه المساس کردن الملاح ! lahze moment ظرف غمشان sânie second الاعلاج ! lâ'elâj = be nâchâr, see above كنار ; sânie second كنار pâket package; اراست pâket package يشت بام pâderaw sidewalk كنار pâket package مقابل pâket package يشت بام posht-e bâm roof انتن ; moqâbel opposite; مقابل المداور nuk beak كنار المداور pâket ai t should be; عامده به قاعده khâter jam'-shodan to be relieved معيوب ha'yub faulty.

دل فرو ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily بى اختيار ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily كف دست ما فرو ؛ biekhtiâr involuntarily مريختن del foru-rikhtan for the heart to sink شقيقه shaqiqe temple; گردن gardan neck; ويا په شهره په شدن ; khâkestari gray خاكسترى dastpâche-shodan to get nervous; فورى fawri immediately; آزمايش طبى âzmâyesh-e tebbi medical experiment.

از ,pelk eyelid پلک ,takye-dâdan be to lean against کمک takye-dâdan be to lean against تکیه دادنtakye-dâdase as bad luck would have it مورد نشانه takye-dâdase as bad luck would have it مورد نشانه takye-dâdase as bad luck would have it

شده بودم چشم راستم هم دیگر کار نمیکرد. بالاخره گنجشکی را که بفاصلهٔ سیصد متری روی سیم برق خیابان نشسته بود پیدا کردم و بلافاصله با چشم راست امتحان کردم. دیدم در گنجشک بودنش حرفی نیست ولی کمی ریزتر شد، و با چشم چپم که نگاه کردم روی سیم فقط یک نقطهٔ سیاه دیدم. اصلاً و ابداً شباهتی به گنجشک نداشت. مردی را که از کنارم میگذشت صدا کردم و گفتم «داداش، بی زحمت یک چشمت را ببند!»

مردک از همه جا بیخبر نگاه معنیداری به من کرد و قبل از اینکه به دستور من عمل کند و یک چشمشرا ببندد، با کمک دستهایش در جیبهایشرا محکم گرفت و بعد پرسید «چرا؟»۲

گفتم «تو چکار داری؟ ببند!»

مردک که به خیالش میخواهم یا جیبشرا بزنم یا یک چشمه از چشم بندیهای پروفسور شاندو و میرزا ملکم خانرا نشانش بدهم، روبروی من ایستاد و یک چشمشرا بست. گفتم «حالا پشتترا به من بکن و ببین آنطرف خیابان روی سیم چه می بینی؟» باز یکی دیگر از همان نگاههای معنی دار به من کرد و سرش را بطرفی که من نشان داده بودم گرداند و گفت «هیچی!»

that was the object of my aim; رم کردن *ram-kardan* to shy; پریدن *paridan* to fly off/aẅay.

هدف المه hawl-shodan to be terrified; هول شدن; hawl-shodan to be terrified; هدف المحرفي sam wire; حرفى emtehân-kardan to test; عرفى المعتان كردن emtehân-kardan to test; عرفى noqte point, dot; المعتاد نيست در noqte point, dot; نقطه noqte point, dot; اصلا و ابدا aslan o abadan (not) in the least; اصلا و ابدا ahadân resemblance; كنار bizahmat "if it's no bother," المؤمدة.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> معنى دار ;" az hame jâ bikhabar "with no idea what's going on" از همه جا بيخبر ma' anidâr meaningful; در جيب dastur order; عمل کردن amal-kardan be to act on; در جيب mohkam tight.

دیدم این مادرمرده از من کورتر است. پرسیدم «روی سیم چیزی نیست؟» گفت «نه.» گفتم «کور خدا! من با یک چشم سالمم میبینم. تو حطور نمی بینی؟!»

گفت «کور پدرت است! کور مادرت است! خوب، نمی بینم. مگر زور است؟» است؟» ا

یک چشممرا بستم و با چشم دیگرم روی سیمرا نگاه کردم. دیدم من هم چیزی نمی بینم. چشم مُعیوبمرا بستم و با چشم سالمم نگاه کردم. باز هم چیزی ندیدم. دستپاچه شدم که نکند هر دو چشمم معیوب شده.

مُردک با عصبانیت گفت «آخر، مقصودت چیست؟ چه چیزرا میخواهی سنی؟» ۲

گفتم «گنجسكي روي آن سيم بود. حالا نمي بينمش.»

خودشرا کنار کشید و گفت «حتمًا پریده. گنجشک مال شما بود؟» گفتم «نه، من گنجشکم کجا بود؟» انگشت ایمایش را کلنگی کرد و چند بار به بالای شقیقهاش کوبید و گفت «تو هم اگر عقل درستی داشتی، روزگارت بهتر از این بود» و راه افتاد.

از «عینک طبی» اثر خسرو شاهانی ٔ

-٣-

من یک روز گرم تابستان، دقیقًا یک سیزده مرداد، حدود ساعت سه و ربع

مادرمرده mâdarmorde "poor fellow"; کور خدا blind; کور خدا kur blind; کور خدا sâlem sound, good; کور پدرت است sâlem sound, good; سالم kur pedar-et ast... "it's your father who's blind," an impolite rejoinder to the author's having called him a blind fool; مگر زور است؟ magar zur-ast? "Do I have to?"

<sup>.</sup> maqsud intent مقصود ;asabâniyat anger عصبانيت

<sup>&</sup>quot;Where would I get a sparrow من گنجشکم کجا بود؟ man gonjeshk-am kojâ bud? "Where would I get a sparrow from?"; کولنگی کردن angosht-e imâ index finger; کولنگی کردن kolangi-kardan to crook; کوبیدن kubidan to tap; عقل ruzgâr-et behtar bud "you'd be better off."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>خسرو شاهانی Khosraw-e Shâhâni Khosrow Shahani (1929–2002), journalist and humorous short-story writer.

کم بعد از ظهر عاشق شدم. تلخیها و زهر هجری که چشیدم بارها مرا به این فکر انداخت که اگر یک دوازدهم یا یک چهاردهم مرداد بود، شاید اینطور نمی شد.'

آن روز هم مثل هر روز، با فشار و زور و تهدید و کمی وعدههای طلائی برای عصر، مارا، یعنی من و خواهرم را، توی زیرزمین کرده بودند که بخوابیم. در گرمای شدید تهران خواب بعد از ظهر برای همهٔ بچهها اجباری بود. ولی آنروز هم ما مثل هر بعد از ظهر دیگر در انتظار این بودیم که آقا جان خوابش ببرد و برای بازی به باغ برویم. وقتی صدای خورخور آقاجان بلند شد، من سررا از زیر شمد بیرون آوردم و نگاهی به ساعت دیواری انداختم. ساعت دو و نیم بعد از ظهر بود. طفلک خواهرم در انتظار بخواب رفتن آقاجان خوابش برده بود. ناچار گذاشتم و تنها پاورچین بیرون آمدم.

لیلی دختر دائی جان و برادر کوچکش نیم ساعتی بود در باغ انتظار مارا می کشیدند. بین خانه های ما که در یک باغ بزرگ ساخته شده بود، دیواری وجود نداشت. مثل هر روز زیر سایهٔ درخت گردوی بزرگ بدون سر و صدا مشغول صحبت و بازی شدیم. یکوقت نگاه من به نگاه لیلی افتاد. یک جفت چشم سیاه درشت به من نگاه میکرد. نتوانستم نگاهمرا از نگاه او جدا کنم. هیچ نمیدانم چه مدت ما چشم در چشم هم دوخته بودیم که ناگهان مادرم با

ماشق شدن; daqiqan precisely عاشق شدن hodud-e about; عاشق شدن âsheq-shodan to fall in love; خشيدن cheshidan to fall in تلخ cheshidan to taste; خشيدن cheshidan to taste; كسي را به فكر انداختن kas-i-râ be fekr andâkhtan to make someone think.

ي va'de-ye ta-lâ'i promise of something nice; زيرزمين zur force; تهديد tahdid threat; وعدهٔ طلائی va'de-ye ta-lâ'i promise of something nice; عصر asr late afternoon; زيرزمين tu-ye in, inside; تورزمين zirzamin basement; الجبارى garmâ heat: شديد shadid severe; اجبارى ejbâri obligatory; انتظار bâzi play; خورخور bâzi play; بازى pâqâ-jân "daddy"; خورخور gozâshtam-o âma-dan "I upped and came"; ياورچين pâvarchin on tiptoes.

انتظار کسی را کشیدن; 'entezâr-e kas-i-râ keshidan to vait for s.o.; وجود داشتن vojud-dâshtan to exist; درخت sâye shade; درخت aderakht tree; سر و صدا bedun-e without; بازی sar-o sedâ noise; سر و صدا bêzi play; بدون yekvaqt all at once; گردو joft pair; کردن dorosht huge; کردو jodâ-kardan درشت joft pair; جدا کردن

شلاق چندشاخهای بالای سر ما ظاهر شد. لیلی و برادرش به خانهٔ خود فرار

کردند و مادر تهدید کنان مرا به زیرزمین و زیر شمد برگرداند. قبل از اینکه سرم بکلی زیر شمد پنهان شود چشمم به ساعت دیواری افتاد. سه و ده دقیقه کم بعد از ظهر بود. مادر قبل از اینکه بنوبت خود سرش را زیر شمد کند، گفت «خدا رحمت کرد دائیت بیدار نشد وگرنه همه تان را تکه تکه میکرد.» مادرم حق داشت. دائی جان نسبت به دستوراتی که میداد خیلی تعصب داشت. دستور داده بود که بچهها قبل از ساعت پنج بعد از ظهر حتی نفس نباید بکشند. داخل چهاردیواری باغ نه تنها ما بچهها مزهٔ نخوابیدن بعد از ظهر و سر و صدا کردن در موقع خواب دائی جان را چشیده بودیم بلکه کلاغها و کبوترها هم کمتر در آن محدوده پیدایشان میشد چون دائی جان چند بار با تفنگ شکاری آنها را قلع و قمع کرده بود. فروشندگان دوره گرد هم تا حدود ساعت پنج از کوچهٔ ما که به اسم دائی جان موسوم بود عبور نمی کردند زیرا دو سه دفعه الاغی طالبی فروش و پیازی از دائی جان سیلی خورده بودند."

اما آن روز خاطر من سخت مشغول بود و اسم دائی جان خاطرات دعواها و اوقات تلخیهای اورا به یادم نیآورد. حتی یک لحظه از یاد چشمهای لیلی و نگاه او نمی توانستم فارغ شوم و به هر طرف می غلطیدم و به هر چیزی سعی

چه مدت cheshm dar chashm-e ham dukhte staring at each other; تا گهان nâgahân suddenly; شالق shallâq switch; خندشاخهای chandshâkhei made of several branches; ظاهر شدن zâher-shodan to appear; ظاهر شدن farâr-kardan to run away; فرار کردن tahdid-kardan to threaten; وردن penhân-shodan to disappear; رحمت کردن penhân-shodan to disappear; رحمت کردن tekke-tekke-kardan to chop to pieces.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> حق داشتن *haqq-dâshtan* to be right; نسبت به *nesbat be* in relation to; دستور *dastur* -ât order; نفس کشیدن ra'assob fanaticism; نفس کشیدن

dâkhel-e within; مرزهٔ چیزی را چشیدن maze-ye chiz-i-râ cheshidan to have a taste of s.th.; مرد و صدا کردن sarosedâ-kardan to make a racket; کبوتر kabutar pigeon; سر و صدا کردن mahdude limited (period); پیدایشان میشد paydâ-yeshân mishod "they were to be found"; تفنگ شکاری tofang-e shekâri shotgun; تفنگ شکاری qal'oqam'-kardan to exterminate; قروشندهٔ دوره گرد forushande-ye dawregard house-to-house seller; فروشندهٔ دوره گرد wuche lane; موسوم به kuche lane; عبور کردن awsum be named for; کوچه bur-kardan to cross, come through; الاغی zírâ because; طالبی piâzi onion seller; سیلی خوردن sili-khordan to get slapped.

می کردم فکر کنم چشمهای سیاه اورا روشن تر از آنکه واقعًا در برابرم باشد می دیدم. ا

شب باز توی پشه بند چشمهای لیلی به سراغم آمدند. عصر دیگر اورا ندیده بودم ولی چشمها و نگاه نوازشگرش آنجا بودند. نمیدانم چه مدت گذشت. ناگهان فکر عجیبی تمام مغزمرا فراگرفت: خدایا، نکند عاشق لیلی شده باشم! سعی کردم به این فکرم بخندم ولی هیچ خندهام نیامد. ممکن است آدم از یک فکر احمقانه خندهاش نگیرد ولی دلیل نمیشود که احمقانه نباشد. مگر ممکن است آدم اینطور بدون مقدمه عاشق شود؟

سعی کردم کلیهٔ اطلاعاتمرا دربارهٔ عشق بررسی کنم. متاسفانه این اطلاعات وسیع نبود. با اینکه بیش از سیزده سال از عمرم میگذشت، تا آن موقع یک عاشق ندیده بودم. کتابهای عاشقانه و شرح حال عشاق هم آنموقع خیلی کم چاپ شده بود. تازه نمی گذاشتند همهٔ آنهارا ما بخوانیم. پدر و مادر و بستگان، مخصوصًا دائی جان که سایهٔ وجودش و افکار و عقایدش روی سر همهٔ افراد خانواده بود، هر نوع خروج بدون محافظ از خانهرا برای ما بچهها منع میکردند و جرئت نزدیک شدن به بچههای کوچهرا نداشتیم. رادیو هم که خیلی وقت نبود افتتاح شده بود در دو سه ساعت برنامهٔ روزانهٔ رادیو هم که خیلی وقت نبود افتتاح شده بود در دو سه ساعت برنامهٔ روزانهٔ

awqât-خاطرات khâter mind; عوا khâterât memories; عود da'vâ fight خاطرات awqât-talkhi bad mood; الحيظه lahze moment; فارغ شدن از fâreq-shodan az to be free of; فارغ مثان vâqe'an really, actually; در برابر dar barâbar-e opposite, in front of.

يه سراغ کسى آمدن; tu-ye inside of; په سراغ کسى pasheband mosquito net; عرى be sorâq-e kas-i âmadan to come in search of s.o., to look for s.o.; نوازشگر inavâzeshgar caressing; نوازشگر ajib amazing; فراگرفتن maqz brain; فراگرفتن farâ-gereftan to seize; عاشق کسى أشعن شهانه âsheq-e kas-i shodan to fall in love with s.o.; عاشت khandidan be to laugh خنديدن به ahmaqâne stupid; دليل نميشود که ahmaqâne stupid احمقانه thati; مقدمه moqaddame preliminaries.

barresi- مررسی کردن; eshq love عشق eshq love; اطلاع; barresi- فلیه kardan to inventory کلیه mota'assefâne regrettably; وسیع vasi' vast; متاسفانه vasi' vast; وسیع sharh-e شرح حال sheq pl عاشق eshshaq lover; عاشقانه sharh-e شرح حال tâze moreover عاشقانه; ودثه و châp-shodan to be printed چاپ شدن

خود مطلب مهمي نداشت كه به روشن شدن ذهن كمك كند. ا

در مرور اطلاعاتم راجع به عشق، در وهلهٔ اول به لیلی و مجنون برخوردم که قصهاشرا بارها شنیده بودم. ولی هرچه زوایای مغزمرا کاوش کردم، دیدم چیزی راجع به طرز عاشق شدن مجنون به لیلی نشنیدهام. فقط میگفتند مجنون عاشق لیلی شد.<sup>۲</sup>

اصلاً شاید بهتر بود در این بررسی پای لیلی و مجنون را به میان نمی کشیدم زیرا هماسم بودن لیلی و دختر دائی جان احتمالاً بدون اینکه خودم بدانم در استنتاجهای بعدیم مؤثر بود. اما چارهای نداشتم. مهمترین عشاق آشنایم همین لیلی و مجنون بودند. غیر از آنها از شیرین و فرهاد هم، مخصوصًا از طرز عاشق شدن آنها، چیز زیادی نمی دانستم. یک داستان عاشقانه هم که در پاورقی یک روزنامه چاپ شده بود خوانده بودم، ولی چند شمارهٔ اولش را نخوانده بودم و یکی از همکلاسی هایم برایم تعریف کرده بود. در نتیجه شروع ماجرارا نمی دانستم."

صدای دوازده ضربهٔ زنگ ساعت دیواری زیرزمین را شنیدم. خدایا، نصف شب شده بود و من هنوز نخوابیده بودم. این ساعت تا یادم میامد در خانهٔ ما بود و اولین بار بود که صدای زنگ ۱۲ شبرا میشنیدم. شاید این

afkâr افكار fekr pl فكر afkâr افراد makhsusan especially; فكر fekr pl مخصوصًا afkâr thought, idea; عقيده aqide pl عقيده aqâyed belief; فرد fard pl فرد afrâd individual; فرد khânevâde family; عقيده khoruj going out; خروب bedun-e without; خانواده por'at-dâshtan to forbid; جرئت داشتن jor'at-dâshtan to dare; منع كردن eftetâh-shodan to be inaugurated; افتتاح شدن barnâme program; ذهن zehn mind; كمك كردن komak-kardan to help.

adar vahle-ye avval in the در وهلهٔ اول râje' be about; در وهلهٔ اول dar vahle-ye avval in the first instance; واويه bar-khordan be to come across; قصه qesse story; زاويه zâvie وايا zavâyâ corner, recess كاوش كردن kâvesh-kardan to scrape; وايا

get s.o. involved; پای کسیرا به میان کشیدن به میان کشیدن په مواه اصلاه pâ-ye kas-i-râ be miân keshidan to get s.o. involved; پررا غذاه استنام المه ham-esm namesake; استنام estentâj conclusion; موثر ba'di later (adj.); موثر châre remedy; غیر از qayr az other than, aside from; داستان dâstân story; واور قی pâvaraqi the bottom of a page of newsprint, where serialized novels were often printed; همکلاسی hamkelâsi classmate; همکلاسی dar natije as a result.

بیخوابی هم دلیلی بر عاشق شدنم بود. در نیمه تاریکی حیاط که از پشت توری پشه بند سایه های درختها و بته های گلرا بصورت اشباح عجیب و غریبی میدیدم وحشت برم داشته بود چون قبل از اینکه دربارهٔ عاشق شدن یا نشدنم به نتیجه برسم از سرنوشت عشاقی که مرور کرده بودم وحشت کردم. تقریبًا همهٔ آنها سرنوشت غمانگیزی داشتند و ماجرا به مرگ و میر تمام شده بود. ا

لیلی و مجنون مرگ و میر، شیرین و فرهاد مرگ و میر، رومئو و ژولیت مرگ و میر، پل و ورژینی مرگ و میر، آن پاورقی عاشقانه مرگ و میر. خدایا نکند واقعًا عاشق شده باشم و من هم بمیرم! ۲ از «دائی جان نایلئون» اثر ایرج یزشکزاد

٠٤.

یک روز صبح که از خواب بیدار شدم، وضع اطاق و خانهامرا غیر از هر روز دیدم. شهری که من قبلاً در آن زندگی میکردم در منطقهای بود که درخت خرما فقط در گلدانها نگهداری میشد و در زمستان هم حتمًا لازم بود آنهارا با گلدانهای دیگر به گلخانههای سرپوشیده و اطاقهای محفوظ انتقال داد. ولی آنروز صبح وقتی بعادت مرسوم که قبل از بیرون آمدن از رختخواب، قدری

أمريه zarbe strike; نگ zang bell; بيخوابى bikhâbi sleeplessness; نريك dalil bar indication of; خريه târik dark; عبي bayât courtyard; تورى turi netting; عبيب و غريب be surat-e in the shape of; اشباح ashbâh phantoms; عجيب و غريب vahshat bar-dâshtan to terrify; وحشت برداشتن vahshat bar-dâshtan to terrify; به نتيجه sarnevesht fate; وحشت sarnevesht fate; سرنوشت vahshat-kardan az to be terrified by; كردن از

مرگ و مير<sup>2</sup> مير *marg-o mir* death and dying; *Pol-o Verzhini* Paul and Virginie, a pair of youthful lovers in a story by de St.-Pierre; ناپلئون *Nâpole'on* (colloquial pronunciation *Nâpel'on*) Napoleon.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>ايرج پزشكزاد *Iraj-e Pezeshkzâd* Iraj Pezeshkzad (1928–), author and translator.

أخرما ; manteqe region منطقه ; qayr az other than منطقه manteqe region خرما ; وضع أن vaz' situation منطقه إلى منطقه إلى منطقه إلى منطقه goldân flower pot; تركم الله الله الله الله الله golkhâne greenhouse; سرپوشيده sarpushide covered; انتقال إلى الله ومنطوظ والله ومنطوظ enteqâl-dâdan to move, transfer.

به انطرف و آنطرف غلت میزنم و خمیازه میکشم و به اطراف نگاه میکنم، از پنجره به بیرون نگاه کردم، چشمم بر نخلهای بلندی افتاد که در داخل حیاط، شاخههایش از باد تندی تکان میخورد و باز دورتر، سرهای درختان خرمای بسیار دیده میشد. نه، خواب نمی دیدم. مشغول تماشای فیلمی هم نبودم. من خودم بودم که از خواب بیدار شده بودم و با دو چشمم در عالم بیداری درختان نخل را در خارج می دیدم که شاخههایشان از وزش باد میلرزید و صدای خش و خش آن به گوش من میرسید.

خانهام محوطهٔ بزرگی بود که بیشتر به یک باغ متروک و فراموششده شباهت داشت که یک ساختمان پهن با یک ردیف ستون چهارگوش و کوتاه در وسط آن قرار داشت که کف اطاقهای آن با زمین حیاط برابر بود." زمینی که دور تا دور آن ساختمان بود شاید در چندین سال قبل باغچهبندی شده بود که تنها درختان قابل ذکر آن همین نخلها بودند که بدنهای کلفت و گرهدارشان با الیاف قهوهای رنگ، مانند ستونهائی، اینجا و آنجا دیده میشد. در گوشهٔ باغ هم نزدیک سوراخی که در پای دیوار قرار داشت و شاید محل ورود یا خروج آب بود چند درخت کج و معوج که شاخههایشان بطرف زمین خم شده بود خودنمائی میکرد. در باغچهها علفهای خودرو بسیار روئیده بود و مثل بیابانی بود که علفهای بهاریش از تابش آفتاب سوزان تابستان

بعادت مرسوم be âdat-e marsum as usual; غلت زدن galt-zadan to toss and turn; غلت زدن khamyâze-keshidan to yawn; غليان مشيدن

تكان خوردن ; bâd wind بند ; bâd wind باد ; bâd wind أضاحه shâkhe branch داخل takân-khordan to shake; عالم khâb-didan to dream; عالم bidâr awake; عالم bidâr awake; عالم world; خارج ; khârej outside وزش باد khârej outside; كاريدن ; bazidan to tremble خش و خش khesh-o khesh rustle.

she- همباهت داشتن به she- matruk abandoned; متروک matruk abandoned; محوطه shebâhat-dâshtan be to resemble; متون pahn wide, low; رديف radif row; ستون sotun column; قرار داشتن qarâr-dâshtan to وسط qarâr-dâshtan to be situated; قرار داشتن barâbar level.

مور تا دور تا د

خشكيده باشد.ا

از «مرزبان» اثر رضا بابامقدم

-۵-

او توی رختخواب که افتاد و به عادت همیشه روزنامه و مدادرا دست گرفت، دید که نمی تواند جدول را حل کند. توی گوشش زنگ میزد و جدول با خانههای سفید و سیاهش که هر دو براق بود و با نور آزاردهندهای میدرخشید چشمش را میزد. نگاهش روی روزنامه بود، اما قیافه های تهرانی ها و مرتضی خان و خنده ها و حرفهای مسخره شان را میدید و میشنید. میدانست که این کارش به نظر آنها چه اندازه بی معنی و پوچ و ابلها نه است و باز میدانست که جز این، کار دیگری از دستش بر نمی آید. مثل اینکه به آنها یا خودش لج کرده باشد، تصمیم گرفت جدول را تا خانهٔ آخر حل کند. از همهٔ کارهای دنیا تنها این کار از دست او بر می آمد و او میخواست به خودش ثابت کند که دست کم از عهدهٔ این کار بر می آمد و او میخواست به خودش ثابت کند که دست کم از عهدهٔ این کار بر می آید.

gushe corner; سوراخ surâkh hole; گوشه محل ovorud entrance; ورود woruj exit; عروج khoruj exit; عرف مسان و kaj-o mo'avvaj crooked; خم شدن kham-shodan to be bent over; کج و معوج khodnomâi-kardan to display oneself; علف alaf weed; علف hodru wild; علف ruidan to grow; بيابان biâbân wilderness; بهار bahâr spring; بيابان tâbesh heat; بهار âftâb sun; موزان suzân burning; خشکيدن khoshkidan to dry out.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>مرز بان *marzbân* border guard; رضا بابامقدم *Rezâ Bâbâ-Moqaddam* Reza Baba-Moghaddam (1915–1989).

tu-ye in, into; رختخواب rakhtekhâb bed(sheets); معادت هميشه be âdat-e hami-she as usual; مداد medâd pencil; حدول محردن jadval puzzle; حل كردن hall-kardan to solve; آزار دادن nur light; مرتضى خان nur light; قيافه غنه derakhshidan to shine; عرف derakhshidan to shine; مرتضى خان maskhare derisive.

ابلهانه ; puch silly پوچ ; nazar view, opinion بی معنی ; nazar view, opinion نظر هٔ ablahâne stupid; کار از دست برآمدن kâr az dast bar-âmadan to be capable of doing s.th.; کار از دست برآمدن tasmim-gereftan to decide; تصميم گرفتن tasmim-gereftan to decide; الج کردن sâbet-kardan to prove; از عهده برآمدن az ohde bar-âmadan to accomplish.

با سماجت شرح خانههارا میخواند و به مغزش فشار میآورد. میخواست کلمهٔ صحیحرا حدس بزند و جدولرا با اشتباههای خودش کثیف و سیاه زکند. اما کلمههای گوناگون مثل اخگرهائی که از ذغال افروخته میجهد، از گوشه و کنار ذهنش می برید و پیش از آنکه او بتواند آنهارا بگیرد یا ببیند خاموش میشد. اسرش گیج میرفت. زنگ گوشش زننده و آزاردهنده شده بود. پلکهایش سنگین میشد و بهم میرفت. و او که میکوشید آنهارا باز نگهدارد، درد تحمل ناپذیری تخم چشمشرا بیرون میکشید. تمام تنش سست شده بود و نزدیک بود رویهم وا برود. دستهایش که روزنامه و مدادرا گرفته بود تیر میکشید. میخواست روزنامه و مدادرا ول کند و خودشرا شل و بیحال زمین بیندازد. ا

گیج و بی تاب و کلافه شده بود. مثل اینکه اورا با زنجیر بسته بودند و از همه طرف می کشیدند. یکباره با بیچارگی به گریه افتاد. هق و هق گریه میکرد. روی خودش خم شده بود و شانههایش میلرزید و دانههای اشک از زیر عینکش راه می افتاد و روی خانههای جدول می چکید و پخش میشد و رنگ جوهررا ظاهر میکرد."

حس میکرد که در این دنیا به درد هیچ کاری نمیخورد و باطل و بیهوده

samâjat obstinacy; شرح sharh explanation; سماجت sharh explanation; فشار آوردن shâr-âvordan to apply pressure; ملك kalime word; صحيح sahih correct; اشتباه eshtebâh mistake; احكر gunâgun various; گوناگون akhgar spark; اخكر akhgar spark; اخرو afi coal; كنار afrukhtan to light; جستن (جه) jastan/jeh- to jump; كنار kenâr edge; جستن (جه) paridan to fly.

be-ham-raftan to go together, close; سنگین kushidan to try; پلک sangin heavy; بهم رفتن tahammolnâpazir unendurable; تحمل ناپذیر tan body; کوشیدن tokhm-e cheshm eyeball; تخم چشم sost weak; وارفتن ruyeham vâ-raftan to collapse; ول کردن tir-keshidan to tingle; تیر کشیدن shol loose; بیال bihâl listless.

هق و ; zanjir chain زنجير ; kalâfe impatient كلافه , bitâb weak هق و ; kalâfe impatient زنجير ; anjir chain كلافه , beqq-o heqq gerye-kardan to sob هق گريه كردن , kham-shodan to bend over هق گريه كردن , shâne shoulder چاكيدن , dâne-ye ashk teardrop دانهٔ اشک , chekidan to drip شانه pakhsh-shodan to spread كردن , jawhar ink ظاهر كردن , zâher-kardan to make dark.

است. هیچ کاری بلد نبود و کارهای پیش پا افتادهای هم که میدانست تازه نمی توانست از عهدهاش برآید یا از آن استفادهای کند که زندگیش اندکی راحت تر یا دلپذیرتر بشود. دلش میخواست یک نفر بود که سر بر شانهاش بگذارد و تا آنجا که میتواند گریه کند، و او نوازشش کند و دلداریش بدهد. اما هیچکس را نداشت.

زنش هم که کمی آنطرفتر با دهان باز خوابیده بود و نفسهای بلند پرصدا میکشید چنان غرق خواب بود که از صدای گریهٔ او هم بیدار نشد. تنها بود، نشسته بود و تنها و بیچاره زار می گریست. در آخر روزنامه و مداد از دستش افتاد و پلکهای او با خستگی و سنگینی بهم رفت. و پیش از آنکه کاملاً بخواب برود فقط توانست عینکشرا از چشمش بردارد.

از «جدول کلمات متقاطع» اثر فریدون تنکابنی ً

-8.

مرد پس از اینکه نماز ظهررا در مسجد بزرگ بازار خواند بیرون آمد و راهی را گرفت و به یکی از محله های شهر رفت. بچه ها از اینکه موجود ناشناس و عجیبی را می دیدند که همه چیزش برایشان تازگی داشت خوشحال شدند و دنبالش راه افتادند. و چند دلقک و معرکه گیر هم که کارشان به کسادی کشیده بود به خیال آنکه میتوانند از وجود او برای گرمی بازار خودشان استفاده ای ببرند به آنها پیوستند. آدمهای کنجکاو هم طبیعهٔ از

پیش پا ;bihude futile بیهوده ;bâtel uscless باطل ;bâtel uscless حس کردن ا راحت ;andak-i a little bit اندکی ;tâze moreover داپذیر andak-i a little bit دلیدیر ;râhat comfortable دلیدیر ;delpazir pleasant نوازش کردن ;navâzesh-kardan to comfort دلداری دادن deldâri-dâdan to console.

 $<sup>^{2}</sup>$ نفس nafas breath; غرق خواب qarq-e khab fast asleep; زار گریستن zar geristan to weep bitterly.

فريدون ; jadval-e kalemât-e motaqâte' crossword puzzle جدول كلمات متقاطع <sup>E</sup> Feraydun-e Tankâboni Fereidoun Tankaboni (b. 1937), writer of satirical prose.

masjed mosque; محله masjed mosque; مسجد masjed mosque; محله mahalle quarter; محله mawjud being; ناشناس nâshenâs unfamiliar; عجيب ajib strange;

روی کنجکاوی و گداها، شاید به علت احساسی که از مشترک بودن سرنوشت خودشان و این فقیر تازه وارد که اندکی هم دیوانه می نمود می کردند، به حلقهٔ این جمع درآمدند. مرد جوان نمیدانست با آنها چه کند. با خودش میگفت «مسلم است که یکتنه از پس آنها برنمیآیم و هرچه بگویم جری تر خواهند شد.» این بود که تصمیم گرفت پرروئی و ایستادگی کند و به کارشان کاری نداشته باشد. باز به هرکس میرسید سراغ شیخ بهائی و خانهٔ اورا میگرفت و میگفت کار واجبی با او دارد. ا

چند جایکی دو نفر به خیال افتادند که اورا گول بزنند. خودشان یا دیگری را «شیخ بهائی» نامیدند، اما خنده و هیاهوی خیل بیکارهها و تماشاگران کاررا خراب کرد، و مرد جوان باز با سماجت و خونسردی در هر خانه را می کوفت و جلو هر کسرا می گرفت و سؤالش را تکرار می کرد. کارد به کوچهٔ تنگ و باریکی رسید که چند دهاتی فقیر و لاغر میوه هایشان را که روی خرهای لاغرتر از خودشان گذاشته بودند برای فروش عرضه می داشتند. راه بند آمده بود. همه ایستادند. مرد جوان به پیر مردی که میوه می خرید نزدیک شد. از او خواهش کرد که به سؤالش جواب بدهد.

بحهها و بیکارهها از بشت سر او به حلو خیره شدند. چند نفر سرک

معرکه گیر dalqak clown, buffoon; دنبال دلقک dalqak clown, buffoon; معرکه گیر استان در دنبال دانده شده شد در الله فی استان و be khiâl-e ânke thinking, imagining that; کسرمی بازار garmi-e bâzâr briskness of market; گرمی بازار payvastan/payvand- be to join.

<sup>2</sup> ناميدن nâmidan to name, call; هياهو nâmidan to name, call; اميدن hayâhu uproar, commotion; خونسردی نامین نامین tamâshâgar onlooker; تماشاگر khayl crowd; خونسردی نامین نامی

کشیدند.' در یکی دو خانه باز و بسته شد و بعد جمعیت، مثل برفی که آب شود، به پراکندگی رفت. بچهها که دیگر قضیه برایشان شیرینی و لطفی نداشت به خرهای دهاتیها هجوم آوردند و به غارت میوهها مشغول شدند. معرکه گیرها از فرصت استفاده کردند و در یک گوشهٔ فراخ و وسیع کوچه بساط خودرا بر پا کردند که تا دیر نشده و مردم به خانههایشان نرفتهاند کاری انجام بدهند.'

از «اذان غروب» اثر بهرام صادقی "

#### -٧-

من در یک چادر سیاه به دنیا آمدم. روز تولدم مادیانی را دور از کرهٔ شیری نگاه داشتند تا شیهه بکشد. در آن ایام اجنّه و شیاطین از شیههٔ اسب وحشت داشتند. هنگامی که به دنیا آمدم و معلوم شد که بحمد الله پسرم و دختر نیستم، پدرم تیر تفنگ به هوا انداخت. من زندگانی را در چادر با تیر تفنگ و شیههٔ اسب آغاز کردم.

الأغر bârik narrow, thin; باريك bârik narrow, thin; الأغر skinny; باريك khar donkey; عرضه داشتن band-âmadan خرده داشتن band-âmadan to come to a standstill; عرضه داشتن كردن از khâhesh-kardan az to beg, entreat; جلو إجلو sarak-keshidan to poke سرك كشيدن khire-shodan to stare; سرك كشيدن

قضيه ;be parâkandegi raftan to scatter به پراکندگی رفتن ;jam'iyat group جمعیت aqaziye affair; فارت hojum-âvordan to attack; فارت hojum-âvordan to attack هـجـوم آوردن ;forsat opportunity فرصت farâkh broad فرصت besât bar pâ kardan to set up shop.

اذان غروب<sup>3</sup> اذان غروب azân-e qorub evening call to prayer; بهرام صادقى Bahrâm-e Sâdeqi Bahram Sadeghi (1936–1983).

وادر دام châdor tent; چادر الله be donyâ âmadan to be born; چادر الله مادیان میدنیا آمدن be donyâ âmadan to be born; چادر الله mâdiân mare; کره shiri unweaned; کره shiri unweaned; مادیان shihe-keshidan to neigh; شیط ayyâm days; اجنه الله ajenne djinn; اجنه shaytân pl اجنه shayâtin demon; الله shayâtin demon; معلوم على vahshat-dâshtan az to be terrified by; معلوم شدن الله hangâm-i ke at the time when; معلوم شدن ma'lum shodan to be known, to be discovered; ما به حمد الله be hamdellâh with thanks to God; تیر انداختن tir-andâkhtan to fire a bullet; شفنگ havâ air; هوا âqâz-kardan to begin.

در چهارسالگی پشت قاش زین نشستم. چیزی نگذشت که تفنگ خفیف به دستم دادند. تا ده سالگی حتی یک شب هم در شهر و خانهٔ شهری به سر نبردم. ا

آیل ما در سال دو مرتبه از نزدیکی شیراز میگذشت. دستفروشان و دوره گردان شهر بساط شیرینی و حلوا در راه ایل میگستردند. پول نقد کم بود. من از کسانم پشم و کشک میگرفتم و دلی از عزا در میآوردم. مزهٔ آن شیرینیهای باد و باران خورده و گرد و غبار گرفته را هنوز زیر دندان دارم.

از شنیدن اسم شهر قند در دلم آب می شد و زمانی که پدرم و سپس مادرمرا به تهران تبعید کردند تنها فرد خانواده که خوشحال و شادمان بود من بودم. نمی دانستم که اسب و زینمرا می گیرند و پشت میز و نیمکت مدرسهام می نشانند. نمی دانستم که تفنگ مشقی قشنگمرا می گیرند و قلم به دستم می دهند."

پدرم مرد مهمی نبود. اشتباهًا تبعید شد. مادرم هم زن مهمی نبود. او هم اشتباهًا تبعید شد. دار و ندار ما هم اشتباهًا به دست حضرات دولتی و ملتی به بغما رفت. أ

پیزی ;qâsh-e zin saddle horn قاش زین ;qâsh-e zin saddle horn چیزی ;به سر ;chahârsâlegi the age of four قاش تان که chiz-i naguzasht ke it was no time at all before نگذشت که be sar bordan to live.

ایل il tribe; مرتبه martabe time; مرتبه dastforush peddler; عوره گرد adwregard hawker; ایس martabe time; ایس besât-gostardan/gostar- to spread out a carpet; شیرینی halvâ helva, a sweet concoction; بیشم naqd cash; بیشم halvâ helva, a sweet concoction; بیشم add cash; بیشم del-i az azâ dar-âvordan to give oneself consolation; مزه زیر دندان داشتن maze zir-e dandân مزه زیر دندان داشتن pashm wool; کشک bâd o bârân khorde wind-swept and rained on; گرفته gard o qobâr gerefte covered with dust.

قند در دل آب شدن<sup>3</sup> qand dar del âb-shodan for sugar to melt in the heart, to "jump for joy"; زمانی که ¿zamân-i ke when; سپس sepas then, later; تبعید کردن tab'id-kardan to exile; اسب shademân glad; شادمان khânevâde family; شاده shademân glad; اسب asb horse; ام می نشانند zin saddle; نین zin saddle; ام می نشانند mashqi practice (adj.); قشنگ qashang pretty.

<sup>-</sup>haza طفرات ;dâr o nadâr possessions دار و ندار adâr o nadâr possessions اشتباهًا adâr eshtebâhan by mistake دولتر به یغما رفتن ;mellati national ملتی ;dawlati governmental دولتی

دوران تبعید ما بسیار سخت گذشت و بیش از یازده سال طول کشید. چیزی نمانده بود که در کوچهها راه بیفتیم و گدایی کنیم. مأموران شهربانی مراقب بودند که گدایی هم نکنیم. از مال و منالمان خبری نمی رسید. خرج بیخ گلویمان را گرفته بود. در آغاز کار، کلفت و نوکر داشتیم ولی هر دوی آنان همین که هوارا پس دیدند گریختند و مارا به خدا سپردند.

برای کسانی که در کنار گواراترین چشمهها چادر می افراشتند، آب انبار آنروزی تهران مصیبت بود. برای کسانی که به آتش سرخبن و بلوط خو گرفته بودند زغال منقل و نفت بخاری آفت بود. برای کسانی که فارس زیبا و پهناور میدان تاخت و تازشان بود زندگی در یک کوچهٔ تنگ و خاک آلود مرگ و نیستی بود. برای مادرم که سراسر عمرش را در چادر باز و پر هوای عشایری به سر برده بود تنفس در اطاقکی محصور دشوار و جانفرسا بود. برایش در حیاط چادر زدیم و فقط سرمای کشنده و برف زمستان بود که توانست اورا به چهاردبواری اطاق بکشاند."

be yaqmâ raftan to be plundered.

گدائی ; kuche lane کوچه لادائی ; dawrân period طول کشیدن (کیدن ووdâi-kardan to beg; مراقب مامور (ma'mur agent شهربانی ; shahrbâni police مراقب shahrbâni police مراقب shahrbâni police مراقب شهربانی shahrbâni police مراقب شهربانی به شهربانی است و منال مال و منال مال و منال mâl o manâl possessions; خرج khabar news; مال و منال و منال بیخ گلو گرفتن و kharj expense کلفت bikh-e gelu gereftan to have by the throat خرج موارا پس دیدن (میدن مین که hamin-ke as soon as هوارا پس دیدن (گریخ pas didan to see a change for the worse in the weather; گریختن (گریخ وورند الله والاستان والاستان

چادر; govârâ palatable; چشمه cheshme spring; چادر; govârâ palatable; چشمه cheshme spring; چادر; إذراز) مصيبت châdor-afrâshtan/afrâz- to unfold a tent; انبار ambâr reservoir; مصيبت sorkhbon yew; انبار balut chestnut; انبار balut chestnut; مرخ بن balut chestnut; منفل gereftan be to become accustomed to; زغال zoqâl charcoal; نفت manqal brazier; نفل pokhâri heater; فارس fârs Fars, the province فارس fârs Fars, the province و pahnâvar expansive; انبار تابار pahnâvar expansive; ميدان tâkht o tâz galloping; تنگ tang narrow; مرگ marg death; ناستی nisti nonexistence.

ashâyeri برهوا , porhavâ airy پرهوا sarâsar-e omr whole life long پرهوا porhavâ airy عشايرى , ashâyeri tribal برهوا tribal; محصور , tanaffos breathing بانفرسا tanaffos breathing; محصور , mahsur enclosed, confined; حياط châdor-zadan to pitch a tent; سرما sarmâ حياط chahârdivârî an area defined by four walls; مشانيدن , keshânidan to

# از «بخارای من ایل من» اثر محمد بهمن بیگی ٔ

#### -۸-

گنبد طلائی باشکوهی با منارههای قشنگش پدیدار شد و گنبد آبی دیگری قرینهٔ آن نمایان گردید که میان خانههای گلی مثل وصلهٔ ناجور بود. ۲

نزدیک غروب بود که کاروان وارد خیابانی شد که دو طرفش دیوارهای خرابه و دکانهای کوچک بود. در اینجا ازدحام مهیبی بر پا شد: عربهای پاچهورمالیده، صورتهای احمق فینه بسر، قیافههای آب زیر کاه، عمامهای، با ریشها و ناخنهای حنابسته و سرهای تراشیده تسبیح میگردانیدند و با نعلین و عبا و زیرشلواری قدم میزدند." زبان فارسی حرف میزدند، یا ترکی بلغور میکردند، یا عربی از بیخ گلو و از توی رودههایشان درمیآمد و در هوا غلغل میزد. زنهای عرب با صورتهای خال کوبیدهٔ چرک و چشمهای واسوخته حلقه از پرهٔ بینیشان گذرانده بودند. یکی از آنها پستان سیاهشرا تا نصفه در دهن بچهٔ کثیفی که در بغلش بود فرو کرده بود.

drag.

ایل ; Bokhârâ Bukhara, city in modern Uzbekistan بخاراً il tribe; محمد بهمن بیگی Mohammad-e Bahmanbaygi Mohammad Bahmanbegi (b. 1920), a Qashqai educator and founder of the tent-school system in tribal areas in Iran.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> گنبد gombad dome; گنبد talâi golden; باشکوه bâshokuh splendid; مناره menâre minaret; باشکوه padidâr-shodan to come into view; پدیدار شدن qashang beautiful; پدیدار شدن padidâr-shodan to come into view; ناجور vasle patch; وصله nâjur inappropriate, wrong.

agorub sunset; ازدحام kâravân caravan; ازدحام ezdehâm crowd; ازدحام mahib frightful; بيا شدن bar pâ shodan to arise; ياچه ورماليده pâchevarmâlide impudent; بيا شدن pâchevarmâlide impudent; ميرت âb zir-e kâh sly, sneaky; مامهای amâmei beturbaned; ريشه rishe beard; مامهای rishe beard; مامهای tarâshidan to shave; حناسته tasbih rosary, worry beads; تسبيح ana'layn sandals; قدم زدن abâ cloak; علين adaam-zadan to walk about.

روده; bikh-e galu depths of the throat; بيخ گلو bikh-e galu depths of the throat; بلغور كردن rude bowel; علغل زدن وqolqol-zadan to make a racket; خال كوبيدن khâl-kubidan to tattoo; خرك cherk filth(y); واسوخته vâsukhte bleary; حرك halqe ring; پارهٔ بينى pare-ye bini nostril; تا نصفه pestân breast; تا نصفه tâ nesfe half way; فرو كردن baqal lap; فرو كردن foru-kardan to shove down.

این جمعیت به انواع گوناگون جلب مشتری میکرد: یکی نوحه میخواند، یکی سینه میزد، یکی مهر و تسبیح و کفن متبرک میفروخت، یکی جن میگرفت، یکی دعا مینوشت، یکی هم خانه کرایه میداد. '

جهودهای قبادراز از مسافران طلا و جواهر میخریدند. جلو قهوه خانهای عربی نشسته بود، انگشت در بینیش کرده بود و با دست دیگرش چرک لای انگشتهای پایش را در میآورد و صورتش از مگس پوشیده شده بود و شپش از سرش بالا میرفت.

کاروان که ایستاد، مشدی رمضان و حسین آقا جلو دویدند، کمک کردند، خانم گلین و عزیز آقارا از کجاوه پائین آوردند. جمعیت زیادی به مسافران هجوم آوردند. هر تکه از چیزهایشان بدست یکنفر بود و آنهارا بخانهٔ خودشان دعوت میکردند. ولی درین میان عزیز آقا گم شد. هرچه دنبالش گشتند، از هرکه پرسیدند، بیفایده بود."

بالاخره، بعد از آنکه خانم گلین و حسین آقا و مشدی رمضان یک اطاق کثیف گلی از قرار شبی هفت روپیه کرایه کردند، دوباره به جستجوی عزیز آقا رفتند. تمام شهررا زیر پا کردند. از کفشدار و از زیارتنامهخوانها یکی یکی سراغ عزیز آقارا بنام و نشانی گرفتند. ٔ اثری از او بدست نیامد. آخر

jalb-kardan جمعیت <sup>1</sup> jalb-kardan جلب کردن; gunâgun various کوناگون jalb-kardan بخمعیت ا to attract; مشتری moshtari customer; نوحه خواندن nawhe-khândan to wail, lament; مشتری sine breast; جن mohr seal; کفن kafan shroud; متبرک motabarrek blessed کفن kerâye-dâdan to ځنن خوانیه دادن jenn-gereftan to exorcise demons; کونت kerâye-dâdan to rent out.

apbâdarâz long-cloaked; جهود mosâfer traveler; قبادراز gold; جهود javâher jewel; قهوه خانه javâher jewel; جواهر javâher jewel; جواهر jayâher jewel; جواهر jayâher jewel; جواهر bini nose; خانه jâ-ye in between; سگس shepesh lice; از سر بالا shepesh lice; شپش az sar bâlâ raftan to crawl up the head.

مشدی رمضان Mashdi Ramazân masc. proper name; خانم dawidan to run; مضان Khânom Galin fem. proper name; عزيزاً قا Aziz-Âqâ fem. proper name; کجاوه hojum-âvordan be to attack; هـجـوم آوردن بـه hojum-âvordan be to attack; تکه tekke piece.

az qarâr-e at the rate of; روپيه rupie rupee (unit of currency formerly used in Iraq; this story is set at the shrine of Imam Husayn in Kerbela); كفشدار kafshdâr mosque attendant who guards shoes; زيارتنامهخوان ziâratnâmekhân cleric hired to re-

وقت بود، صحن کمی خلوت شد. خانم گلین برای نهمین بار داخل حرم شد و دید که دستهای زن و آخوند دور زنی گرد آمدهاند که بقفل ضریح چشبیده آنرا میبوسد و فریاد میزند. ۱

هرچه از او می پرسیدند مگر چه شده، جواب نمی داد. بالاخره پس از اصرار زیاد گفت: «من یک کاری کرده ام. میترسم سیّد الشهدا مرا نبخشد.» همین جمله را تکرار میکرد و سیل اشک از چشمانش سرازیر بود. خانم گلین صدای عزیز آقارا شناخت. جلو رفت. دست اورا کشید، برد در صحن و بکمک حسین آقا اورا بخانه بردند، دورش جمع شدند. بعد از آنکه دو تا چائی شیرین باو دادند و یک قلیان برایش چاق کردند، عزیز آقا شرط کرد که حسین آقا از اطاق بیرون برود تا سرگذشت خودش را نقل کند. حسین آقا که از در بیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا که از در بیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در طلب آمرزش» اثر صادق هدایت تا در این سادت می می اثر صادق هدایت تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت، عزیز آقا قلیان را جلو کشید و اینجور شروع کرد. تا در سیرون رفت به در تا در بیرون رفت به در سیرون رفت به در بیرون رف

cite the ritual at a shrine; نشانی neshâni description.

عرم; sahn courtyard صحن asar trace; آخر وقت âkher-e vaqt late in the day آخر وقت sahn courtyard; صحم haram sanctuary; عردآمدن دور âkhond cleric, mulla; عردآمدن دور gerd-âmadan dawr-e to gather around; ضريع apofl lock; ضريع خسبيدن غريت arih grate that surrounds a saint's tomb; ضرياد زدن faryâd-zadan to cry فرياد زدن busidan to kiss; فرياد زدن faryâd-zadan to cry out.

اصرار<sup>2</sup> esrâr insistence; سيد الشهدا sayyedoshshohadâ "lord of martyrs," title of Imam Husayn.

ashk tear; جمله sarâzir rolling down; جمله ashk tear سرازیر sarâzir rolling down; جمله aqlyân water pipe, hookah; جاتی کردن châq-kardan to puff on a water pipe to get it going; تقل shart-kardan to stipulate; سرگذشت sargozasht adventure; شرط کردن naql-kardan to relate; اینجور injur thus.

أمرزش (شابط talab-e request for; صادق هـدايـت Sâdeq-e أمرزش أمرزش Sâdeq-e طـلب Sâdeq-e Hedâyat Sadegh Hedayat (1903–1951), one of the foremost writers of modern Persian prose.

خونه از نثر کلایک Examples of مونه ای چند از نثر کلایک Classical Persian فارسی Prose

-1-

د شهری مردی درزی بر دروازه شهر دو کان داشتی بر در گورستان، و گوزهٔ در مینی آویخته بود و بهوسش آن بودی که هر جنازهٔ که از در شهر بیرون بردندی وی سکی در آن کوزه افکندی و بهوسش آن بودی که هر جنازهٔ که از در شهر بیرون بردند و آن کوزه را شی کر دی و باز نک در بهی افکندی. تا روزگاری برآمد، درزی نیز بمرد. مردی بطلب درزی آمد و خبر مرک او نداشت. در دو کانش بسته دید بهسایهٔ اورا پرسد که «این درزی کجاست که حاضر مرک او نداشت. در دو کانش بسته دید بهسایهٔ اورا پرسید که «این درزی کجاست که حاضر میت به بهمایه گفت که «درزی نیز در کوزه افتاد.» از قابو سامه تالیف امیر عفیر المعالی گیک اوس (در سال ۴۷۵ بهجری) تا

-۲-

گویند روزی نوشروان عادل برنشته بود و با خاصکیان بشک ار میرفت و برکنار دہی گذر کر د. سپری را دید نو دسالہ کہ گوز در زمین میشاند نوشروان را عجب آمد زیرا که بست سال گوز کشته بر میدہد گفت «ای سپر، گوز می کاری ؟» گفت «آری، خدایک ان» گفت «چندان بخواہی زیست که برش بخوری ؟» سپر گفت «کشند و خوردیم و کاریم و خورند» ۲

م darzi tailor; دروازه darvâze gate; دوکان dukân variant of دروازه dokkân shop; داشتی dâshti for the verb form, see §87; گورستان gurestân graveyard; کوزه kuze jug, pitcher (in classical orthography, کوزه spells both kuze-ye and kuze-i, the modern کیسوزه âvikht-/âviz- to hang; کیسوز âvikht-/âviz- to hang; هوس havas passion, آویختان آویختان افکن yay he; سنگ sang stone; افکندن (افکن) afkandan/afkan- to toss; سنگ hesâb-kardan to count; علی تعلی کردن tahi-kardan to empty; وزگار برآمدن niz too, also; طلب hâzer present.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> قابوسنامه *Qâbusnâme*, a book of counsel written in 475/1082 by Amir Onsorol-ma'âli Kaykâus for his son; تأليف *ta'lif* composition.

Nushervân Anosharvan, title of the Sassanian king Chosroës I, r. A.D. نــوشــروان<sup>3</sup> الماروان 351–351 مادل (adel just; بادنشستن (bar-neshastan to mount) عادل (khâssegiân elite;

نوشروان را خوش آمد گفت «زه!» در وقت خزینه داررا گفت تا هزار درم به پیر

إو

سیر گفت «ای خداوند، بیچکس زودتر از بنده بر این گوز نخورد.» گفت «چگونه؟» پیر گفت «اکر من گوز نکشتی و خدایک ان ایجاً گذر نکر دی، آنچ بینده رسید نرسیدی و بنده آن جواب ندادی، من این هزار درم از کها یافتی ؟» نوشروان گفت «زازه!» خزیندار در وقت دو هزار درم دیگر بدو داد بهر آنکه دو بار «زه» بر زبان نوشروان رفت!

از ساستنامهٔ خواجه نظام اللک

آورده اند که بازرگانی بود اندکنایه، و میخواست که سفری کند صد من آبن داشت. در خانهٔ دوستی بر سبیل و دیعت نهاد و برفت. چون آمد امین و دیعت را بفروخته بود و بها خرج کرده. بازرگان روزی بطلب آبن بنزدیک او رفت. مرد گفت «آبن تو در بیغولهٔ خانه بنهاده بودم و اختیاطی تام بکرده. آنجا سوراخ موش بود. تا من واقف شدم تام بخورده بود.» بودم و اختیاطی تام بکورده بود.»

شکار shekâr hunt; گوز کردن بر kas-i-râ ajab-âmadan for someone to be astonished; گرز کردن بر kas-i-râ ajab-âmadan for someone to be astonished; کسی زیراکه غیر ترثهٔ keshtan/kâr- to plant; زیراکه bar-dâdan to yield fruit; و ay O (vocative); آری äre yes; خدایگان khodâyegân great lord; چندان zistan/zi- to live.

der vaqt immediately; خزینددار khazinedâr treasurer; درم deram drachma; خزینددار bande slave, for "I"; چگونه chegune how?; آنچ anch archaic spelling for چگونه bahr-e ânke because; أنچ zabân tongue.

<sup>2</sup>سياستنامه Siâsatnâme, a book of counsel for princes written by Khâje Nezâmolmolk (d. 1092).

سفر کردن; andakmâye of little capital, petty اندکمایه: bâzargân merchant بازرگان<sup>3</sup> safar-kardan to take a trip; مربر سبیل bar sa-

مازرگان حواب داد که «راست ممکونی، موش آین ىر خائب دن آمن قادر ماشد» ا امین «راست کار» سشاد شد، معنی بنداشت که مازرگان نرم کشت و دل از آن برداشت کفت «امروز بخانهٔ من مهان باشِ » گفت «فردا باز آیم » رفت و یون بسر کری رسد بسری را از آن او سرد و پھان کر د حون بجتند و ندا در شهر دادند، مازرگان «من بازی دیدم که کودک میسرد.» امن فرباد برداشت که «دروغ ومحال حرا میکونی ؟ بازرگان بخدید و گفت «د شری که موش صد من آین تواند خورد، مازی کودیی را مقدار ده من بر تواند کر فر . وَ دمنُه بهرامثابی (در حدود ۵۳۸ها۱۱۴۳م)، ترحمهٔ ابوالمعالی نصرالله

bil-e in the way of, for; وديعت vadi'at safekeeping; (نه nehâdan/neh- to place; bayqule/ بيغوله; kharj-kardan to spend خرج كردن , bahâ price امين موش ,surâkh hole سوراخ ,ehtiât-kardan to take precaution احتياط كردن ,surâkh hole mush mouse; واقف vâgef aware.

 $^1$ سخت sakht very much, extremely; دندان  $dand\hat{a}n$  tooth; خائيدن  $kh\hat{a}idan$  to gnaw; gâder bar capable of. قادر بر

-del bar دل برداشتن از ;pendâshtan/pendâr- to think نرم ; pendâshtan/pendâr- to think پنداشتن (پندار) dâshtan az to give up hope of; مير mehmân guest; سر sar head مهمان kuy lane; پنهان کر دن penhân-kardan to hide; ندا دادن nedâ-dâdan to herald; باز bâz hawk; کودک ku-برگرفتن ;faryâd bar-dâshtan to cry out محال ,mohâl absurd فرياد برداشتن ,faryâd bar-dâshtan to cry out bar-gereftan to pick up.

مقدار <sup>3</sup> *meqdâr* amount; ستدن (ستان) *setadan/setân-* to take away.

Kalile-o Demne-ye Bahrâmshâhi, a Persian translation of کلیله و دمنهٔ بهرامشاهی Ibn al-Muqaffa''s Arabic Kalila wa-Dimna made by Abolma'âli Nasrollâh ca. 1143. مکر بارت

پادست ای را شنیدم که بکشتن اسری اثارت کرد. بیچاره در آن حالت نومیدی ملک را د ثنام دادن کرفت و سقط کفتن که گفته اند هرکه دست از حب ان بثوید هرچه در دل دارد بکوید ۱

وقت ِ ضرورت چو ناندگریز دست بمیرد سر شمشیر تنیزا إذا یَئِسَ الإنسان طال لِسائه کَسِتَّودِ مَغلوبِ یَصُولُ عَلَی الکَلبِ<sup>۲</sup> ملک پرسید که چه میکوید جو میکی از وزرای نیمحضر گفت ای خداوند، همی کوید ﴿وَالْکَاظِمِینَ الْفَیْظَ وَالْعَافِینَ عَنِ النَّاسِ ﴾ ملک را رحمت آمد و از سرخون او درکذشت. ۴ وزیر دیگر که ضد او بود گفت ابنای جس مارا نشاید در حضرت پادشانان جز براسی سخن گفتن. این، ملک را دشت م داد و نامنرا گفت. ملک روی ازین سخن درجم کشید و گفت آن دروغ وی پندیده تر آمد مرا زین راست

The 8th-century Arabic version was supposedly made from a Middle Persian translation of the Sanskrit original of the Bidpai fables; ترجمه tarjome translation.

اشارت کردن; asir prisoner اسیر pâdeshâh king; بادشاه asir prisoner حکایت eshârat-kardan be to indicate; نومیدی bichâre helpless; خالت hâlat state; منومیدی nawmidi desperation; نومیدی doshnâm-dâdan to curse; مقط گرفتن saqat-goftan دشنام دادن شستن dast az jân shostan to wash one's hands of life, to give up hope of life.

 $<sup>^2</sup>$  ضرورت zarurat necessity; چو cho = chon; گریز goriz (means of) escape; سر شمشیر sar-e shamshir tip of a sword; تیز tiz sharp.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>(Arabic) "When man despairs his tongue grows long, like a cornered cat attacking a dog."

خداوند ; nikmahzar of good counsel نیکمحضر ; nikmahzar of good counsel نیک محضر khodâvand lord; والکاظمین...الناس valkâzemina'lqayza val'âfina 'anennâs "and those who bridle their anger and forgive people" (Koran 3:134); رحمت rahmat mercy; از سرخون کسی در گذشتن az sar-e khun-e kas-i dar-gozashtan to spare someone's life.

که تو گفتی که آن را روی در مصلحتی بود و این را بن ابر خبنی، و خر دمندان گفته اند: دروغی
مصلحت آمنر به که راسی فتنهٔ اکنیز!

هر که شاه آن کند که او کوید حیف باشد که جز کمو کوید!

بر طاق ایوان فریدون نبشته بود:

جسان ای برادر غاند بکس ول اندر جسان آفرین بند و بس"
کمن تکیه بر ملک و دنیا و پشت که بسیار کس چون تو پرورد و کشت "
چو آبنا بر رفتن کند جان پاک چه بر شخت مردن چه بر روی خاک "

صییت کمی از ملوک خراسان، محمودِ سبگنگین را بخواب دید بعد از وفات او به صد سال که جملهٔ وجود او ریخته بود و حاک شده، مکر چثمان او که همچنان در چشمخانه همی کر دید و نظر می کر د. سایر حکا

ابنای جنس náshâyad it is not fitting; نشاید náshâyad it is not fitting; ابنای جنس náshâyad it is not fitting; مضرت râsti truth; ناسزا nâsazâ improp-er; ناسزا nâsazâ improp-er; مناسزا darua lie; مامندن pasandi-dan to approve; درهم کشیدن jaz in; مصلحت maslahat prudence; بنا benâ basis, foundation; مصلحت أميز khobs vileness; خردمند kheradmand wise; مصلحت أميز prudent; به عنه behtar; به behtar; فتنه انگیز pers demonstrations.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> حيف *niku*) good, beautiful. نکو *niku* jood, beautiful.

ayvân portico; فريدون feridun Freidoun, mythical king of Iran; ايوان ayvân portico; طاق tâq arch; ايوان aveshte; طاق nebeshte اندر چيزى بستن ;andar اندر andar اندر إعدى إandar اندر إيلان إغاثة jahân-âfarin world-creator.

on; تکیه کردن بر takye-kardan bar to rely on; پشت کردن بر posht-kardan bar to lean ملک on; پروردن (پرور) ملک donyâ this world; پروردن (پرور) parvardan/parvar- to nourish.

 $j\hat{a}h$  آهنگ کاری کردن  $\hat{a}h$  fang-e  $\hat{k}$ ar-i  $\hat{a}$ robe about to do s.th.; پاک  $\hat{j}$ an soul; پاک  $\hat{j}$ an soul; پاک  $\hat{j}$ ah pure; چه...چه  $\hat{j}$ che...che [what difference does it make] whether...or; تخت  $\hat{j}$ takht throne; خاک  $\hat{j}$ hak dust, earth.

از تعبیر این فرو ماندندگر درویشی که خدمت بجای آورد و گفت «منوز گرانست که ملکش با دکرانست.» بس سنسامور بزیر زمین دفن کر ده اند کز بهتیش بروی زمین بر نسشان نماند ۲ وان پیرلاست را که سپردند زیر گل خاکش چینان بخورد کز و اسخوان نماند ۲ زنده است نام فرخ نوشیروان بعدل گرچه بسی گذشت که نوشین روان نماند ۴ خیری کن ای فلان وغنیمت شار عمر زان پشترکه بانک برآید فلان نمساند ۵ از گلستان معدی (۵۶عه۱۲۵۸م)

ملک malek pl خراسان moluk king; خراسان Khorâsân Khurasan, northeastern province of modern Iran, formerly extended to the Oxus and included much of modern Afghanistan and Turkmenistan; محمود سبکتگین Mahmud-e Saboktegin Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna (r. 998–1030), known for his insatiable appetite for conquest; وفات rikhtan/riz- to decompose; مرايختن ويختن ويختن ويختن ويختن ويختن انظر ويختن انظر کردن nazar-kardan to gaze; مگر sâyer-e all of; مگر hakim pl فرو ماندن از a'bir interpretation; تعبير foru-mândan az to be incapable of; تعبير darvish dervish, poor man; خدمت بجای آوردن negarân worried; نگران molk kingdom; گراه degar variant form of درگر digar.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> بس bas (+ singular noun) many a; نامور nâmvar renowned; دفن کردن dafn-kardan دفن کردن be ru-ye zamin bar see \$83; نشان neshân بروی زمین بر neshân trace.

i nâm renown; فرخ farrokh splendid; نام jzende alive; نام nâm renown; فرخ jarrokh splendid; نام Nushirvân Chosroës I Anosharvan, see p. 238, note 3; عدل justice; روان nushin sweet; روان ravân soul (nushin-ravân is a popular—but false—etymology for Nushirvan).

-۵-

ما نیواما علتی است که اطها در معالبحت او فرو مانند اکر حه امراض موداوی بهمه مزمن است، لین مالیولیا خاصیتی دارد مدر زائل شدن و الوالحن من یحی اندر کتاب معالحت نقراطی که اندر طب کس حنان کت بی نکر ده است) برشمرد از ائمته و محا و فصلا و فلاسعن که حند از اشان مدان علت معلول کشة اند<sup>ا</sup> ما حک یت کر د مرا اساد من که مکی را از آل بویه مالیخونیا بدید آمسید و اورا درین علت حین ان صورت بست که او گاوی شده است. بهمه روز مانک بهی کر د و این و آن را ہمی گفت که «مرا بکشد که از کوشت من حربیهٔ نیکو آید» تا کار مدرجهای بکشد که ننر هیچ نخورد و روز بم آمد و نهار کر د. و اطبا در معالجت او عاجز آمدند ' و خواجه الوعلى اندرين حالت وزير بود، و ثابتثاه علاء الدّوله محّد بن دشمنربار بر وي اقبایی داشت و حلهٔ ملک در دست او نهاده بود و کلی شغل برأی و تدسر او باز گذاشته و الحق بعدِ اسکندر که ارسطاطالیس وزیر او بود، سپج پادشاه حون ابوعلی وزیر نداشته بود. و درین

physician; مرض 'alejat treatment; فرو ماندن 'foru-mândan to fail; مرض 'maraz pl مرض 'alejat treatment; فرو ماندن 'foru-mândan to fail مرض maraz pl مرض 'amrâz disease; مرض sawdâvi melancholic; مرض mozmen chronic مرمن 'sawdâvi melancholic; مراض النام khâssiyat characteristic; الشان تراثل شدن ترهُ توالله توالله خاصيت khâssiyat characteristic; واثل شدن الله تواطى boqrâti Hippocratic; برشمردن الز bar-shomordan az to recount; مرشمردن الز a'emme leader; اثمه hokamâ doctor اثمه facel pl الما fozalâ learned man; فضلا و faylasuf pl فضلا falâsefe philosopher; معلول ma'lul afflicted (be with).

Buyid dynasty, r. 932–1062; پدید آمدن padid-âmadan to appear; صورت بستن surat-bastan to seem, be imagined; پدید آمدن gâv cow; بانگ کردن bâng-kardan to shout (here, to moo); مار بدرجهای کشید که iniku good; نیکو harise porridge; کار بدرجهای کشید که kâr be daraje-i keshid ke it went so far that, it got to the point that; بروزها بسرآمد âjez incapable.

### CLASSICAL PERSIAN PROSE

حال که خواجه ابوعلی وزیر بود، هر روز پیش از صحدم برخاسی و از کتاب شا دو کاعف نه تصنیف کر دی. چون صبح صادق بدمیدی سشاکر دان را بار دادی چون کیا رئیس بهمنیار و ابو مضور بن زید و عبدالواحد جوزجانی و سلیان دشتی و من که باکالیجارم! تا بوقت اسار سقها بخواندیی و در پی او ناز کر دیمی و تا بیرون آمدانی هزار موار از مثابیر و معارف و ارباب جوانج و اصحاب عرائض بر در سرای او کر د آمده بودی. و خواجه برنشتی و آن جاعت در خدمت او برفتذی. چون بدیوان رسیدی موار دو هزار شده بودی. پی بدیوان تا ناز پیش باندی و چون بازگتی بخوان آمدی. جمساعتی با او نان بخوردندی. پی بدیوان تا ناز پیش باندی و چون برخاسی ناز بگر دی و پیش شابشاه شدی و تا ناز دیگر پیش او مفاوضه و محاوره بودی. میان ایشان در مهات ملک دو تن بودند که هرکز ثانی نبودی. و مقصود ازین حکسایت آنت که خواجه را بیچ فراغت نبودی.

Alâ'oddawle Mohammad ebn-e Doshmanziâr, ruler of central and western Persia, r. 1008–1041; ملک Alâ'oddawle ebn-e Doshmanziâr, ruler of central and western Persia, r. 1008–1041; ملک jomle-ye all of; حمله jomle-ye all of; ملک jomle-ye all of; مالک اقتان بر ra'y-o tadbir management; اقتان بر bâz-gozâshtan to turn over; رأی و تدبیر Ala'oddawle الحق Eskandar Alexander (the Great) ارسطاطالیس Arestâtâlis Aristotle; اسکندر sobhdam dawn; کتاب شفا بنوگذاشتن خردن kâqaz page; کتاب شفا kâqaz page; کتاب شفا خافه دهیدن kâqaz page; اسکندر brasnif-kardan to compose; عسب صاحق sobh-e sâdeq true dawn; او brasnif-kardan to compose مسبح صادق shâgerd pupil بار دادن bâr-dâdan to hold court, receive; Kiyâ Bahmanyâr, Abo'l-Mansur b. Zila, Abdol-Vâhed Juzjâni, Solaymân Dameshqi, and Bâkâlijâr are all well-known students of Avicenna's.

پی چون اطبا از معالجت آن جوان عاجز آمدند، پیش شاشاه ملک معظم علاءالدوله
آن حال بمتند و اورا شغیع برا نکمیتند که خواجرا بکوید تا آن جوان را علاج کند علاءالدوله
اثارت کر د و خواجه قبول کر د. پی گفت «آن جوان را شارت دمید که قصاب بمی آید تا
ترا بمثد.» و با آن جوان گفتند. او شادی بمی کر د. پی خواجه برنشت و بمیخان با کوکه بر در
سرای بیار آمد و با تنی دو درفت، و کاردی برست کر فقه گفت «این گاو کجاست تا اورا
بمثم بی این جوان بمچو گاو با کمی کر د، یعنی ایجاست. خواجه گفت «بمیان سرای آریدش و
بمثم بی این او بیندید و فرو افلنید!» ا
بیار چون آن شنید بدوید و به میان سرای آمد و بر بهلوی راست خفت، و بای او
سنده بیار چون آن شنید بدوید و به میان سرای آمد و بر بهلوی راست خفت، و بای او

بیاد پول من سید بردید ربه میان سرای امد و بر پهوی و ست ست، د پای او سخت ببتند پس نواحه ابوعلی بیامد و کار د بر کار د مالید و فرو نشت و دست بر بهلوی او نهاد چنانکه عادت قصابان بوُد پس گفت «وه! این چه گاو لفزیست! این را نشاید کشن. علف دهیدش تا فربه شود!» و برخاست و سرون آمد و مردم را گفت که «دست و پای او

khordan to dine; قيلوله qaylule nap; شدن shodan to go; نماز ديگر namâz-e digar afternoon prayer; مفاوضه mofâveze deliberation; مهمات mohâvere discussion; محاوره mohemmât-e molk important affairs of state; فراغت hargez (+ neg.) never; هرگز farâqat leisure.

ملک معظم malek-e mo'azzam magnificent king; ملک معظم shafi' bar-angikhtan to persuade someone to intercede; اشارت کردن elâj-kardan to treat; علاج کردن eshârat-kardan to make a motion, allude; بشارت aqabul-kardan to accept; بشارت shâdi-kardan to accept; قبول کردن shâdi-kardan to rejoice; قسادی کسردن shâdi-kardan to rejoice; نرفتن tan person; دررفتن dar-raftan to go in

 $<sup>^2</sup>$ همچو hamcho like; قرو افكندن  $\hat{a}r$ - for آور  $\hat{a}r$ - for آور  $\hat{a}var$ - فرو افكندن foru-afkan- dan to throw down.

#### CLASSICAL PERSIAN PROSE

مجثانید و خوردنی آنچه فرمایم پش او برید و اورا کوئید بخور تا زود فربه ثود.»
چنان کر دند که خواجه گفت. خوردنی میش او بردند و او نهی خورد. و بعد از آن، هرچه از اشربه و ادویه خواجه فرمودی بدو دادندی و گفتند که «نیک بخور که این گاورا نیک فربه کند» او بشودی و بخوردی بر آن امید که فربه ثود تا اورا بکشد آ
کند» او بشودی و بخوردی بر آن امید که فربه ثود تا اورا بکشد آ

مین اطبا دست بمعالبت او برکشادند چنانکه خواجه ابوعلی می فرمود. یک ماه را بصلاح آمد و صحّت یافت، و بهه ایل خرد دانند که اینچنین معالبت نتوان کرد الا بفضلی کامل و علمی عام و حدسی راست. آ

علمی عام و حدسی راست. آ

از «چهار مقاله» تالیف نظامی عروضی سمرقندی، در حدود ۵۵۰هه/۱۱۵۵م

أفرو (خواب) pahlu side; ماليدن (ماليدن khoftan/khâb- to lie down; ماليدن mâlidan to rub; ماليدن bovad see §88; ما و وه و bovad see §88; ما يدف (گشا) إثارة farbeh fat; علف (گشادن (گشا) goshâdan/ ومهمه to open, untie.

 $<sup>^2</sup>$ شنودن ;advie medicine ادویه  $dav\hat{a}$  pl دوا ashrebe potion اشربه advie medicine شنیدن shenudan=

a month; بوگشادن به be salâh âmadan to be cured; صحت يافتن sehhat-yâftan to recover; اهل خرد ahl-e kherad the wise; کامل ahl-e khorad the wise; کامل اهل خرد ahl-e khorad the wise; کامل اهل خرد hads guess.

# **English-Persian Vocabulary**

	·
able, be توانستن	همهم bothand
about (prep.) دربارهٔ; about to	box جعبه
تقریبًا، در حدود about, nearly	پسر boy
ماجرا adventure	break شکستن
afraid, be ترسیدن	همراه آوردن، آوردن bring
ago قبل	شکسته، خراب broken
airplane هواپيما	brother برادر
airport فرودگاه	build ساختن
Ali على	building ساختمان
all جمعًا; in all جمعًا	خریدن buy
almost تقريبًا	
always هميشه	ماشین car
آمریکائی American	بردن carry
amount مقدار	گیر افتادن caught, get
گوینده announcer	chair صندلی
answer (n.) جواب; answer (vb.)	chalk گچ
دادن	chance, by اتفاقا
دیگرنه anymore, not	ارزان cheap
م رسیدن arrive	child بچه
سؤال کردن to ask questions ;پرسید ِن ask	childish بچگانه
at all اصلا	city شهر m
	class کلاس
بد bad	clean تميز
be بودن	زرنگ clever
برای اینکه، چونکه because	ساعت clock
خوابيدن to go to bed ;تختخواب	close (adj.) نزدیک; to close (vb.)
before (adv.) قبلاً، پیش; before (conj.)	داothes لباس
before ;پیش از اینکه، قبل از اینکه	قهوه coffee
پیش از، قبل از (prep.)	سرد cold
بهتر better	to come back بازآمدن; to
بزرگ big	درآمدن come out
سیاه black	ادامه دادن به continue
plouse بلوز	درست correct
کتاب book	شمردن count

# ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

	avcent :-
country کشور	except جز expensive گران
شلوغ crowded	extinguish خاموش کردن
	حاموس تردن extiliguisii
دختر daughter	for
روز وُمْ	far cec
deliver رسانیدن	father پدر
دندانپزشکی dentistry	وند few ف ا ها
فروشگاه department store	فيلم film بالاخره finally
ميز desk	
مردن die	پیدا کردن find تاکید جند
فرق کردن difference, make a	تمام کردن finish
مشکل، سخت difficult	fire آتش
اشكال داشتن difficulty, have	نخست، اولین، اول first
dinner شام	غذا food
direction طرف	برای for
كثيف dirty	فراموش کردن forget
dish بشقاب	بخشودن forgive
ظرفشوئي dishwashing	پیش forward
فاصله distance	دوست friend
کار کردن do something	ميوه fruit
پزشک، دکتر doctor	
door در	garden باغ
شک doubt	gentleman اً قا
خور دن drink	get out (of vehicle) پیاده شدن
	براه افتادن، راه افتادن get under way
each هر کدام	برخاستن، بلند شدن get up
early ود	give دادن
easy آسان	glass ليوان
eat خوردن	رفتن go
else دیگر	خوب good
انگلیسی English	green سبز
وارد شدن enter	grow up بلند شدن
eraser پاککن	حدس زدن guess
even حتى	
واقعه، اتفاق event	half نصف، نیم
every همه، هر	hand دست
evil بد	اتفاق افتادن happen
example نمو نه	خوشحال happy
•	

hard سخت have المنت به المعنى: to have a good time المنت به المنيدن به المنيدن به المنيدن به المنيدن به المنايدن به المنايدن به المنايدن به المنايدن به المنايدن المنايد المن

important مهم income درامد interesting جالب Iran ایران Iranian ایران

job کار just about to نزدیک بودن

kilogram کیلوگرم kind, nice کیلوگرم kind, sort know (somebody) نوع دانستن (something)

lady خانم last, final :آخر last, past الأخر پارسال last year ديشب late :دير شدن (to be late (of time) دير to be late (of persons) دير كردن later (adv.) بعدًا ياد گرفتن اقلاً at least کمترین least ترک کردن leave چپ left کمتر less درس , lesson گذاشتن let نامه letter كتابخانه library زندگی، زندگانی life يراغ light دوست (to like (vb.) مثل (like (prep.) داشتن, خوش آمدن مايع liquid listen گوش کردن اittle کوچک a little bit کوچک زندگی کردن live دنال گشتن to look for ;نگاه کردن look گم کردن lose گم شذن lost, get بسیار، زیاد، خیلی Iot, a ىلندگو loudspeaker دوست داشتن love ناهار lunch

mad دیوانه

مرد mater, no مرچند، هرچه matter, no هرچند، هرچه minute

دقیقه money پول month ماه

ماه more بیشتر morning بیشتر morning مادر this morning مادر mother مادر mountain کوه much خیلی (with comparatives)

بمراتب

نام، اسم name

# ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

nearly نزدیک quarter بریم nearly so بهیچوجه (question بهیچوجه أوریباً question بهیچوجه اوریباً question و ازام اوران بارام اوران باران باریدن، باران باریدن، باران باریدن، باران باریدن، باران باران باریدن، باران بارانی تعیی و تعییل میچ چیزی، هیچ چیزی، هیچ چیزی، هیچ جیزی، هیچ حیزی، هیچ حیزی، هیچ حیزی، میخ دواندن به اوران باران باران بارانی تعییل میزان باران بارانی تعییل میزان باران بارانی باران بارانی تعییل میزان باران بارانی باران بارانی تعییل میزان باران بارانی باران ب
neighbor همسایه quiet ارام اوران باریدن، نوسایه اوران باریدن، نوسایه rain اوران باریدن، نوسایه to rain باران باریدن، نوسایه اوران باریدن، نوسایه اوران باریدن، نوسایه اوران باریدن، نوسایه اوران باران بارا
new news new paper جدید، تازه، نو rain باران باریدن، باران rain باران باریدن، باران to rain باران باریدن، باران امدن raincoat بارانی میچ چیزی، هیچ چیزی، هیچ چیزی، هیچ حیزی، هیچ حیزی و reach بارانی reach بخواندن reach جواندن
rain جدید، تازه، نو rain باران باریدن، باران to rain باران باریدن، باران to rain باران باریدن، باران to rain باران باریدن، باران تعنی تعنی المدن به raincoat میچ چیزی، هیچ raincoat حالا مین به nothing حیاد به reach حواندن به read خواندن
newspaper امدن روزنامه اnothing میچ چیزی، هیچ raincoat میل الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال
nothing هیچ چیزی، هیچ raincoat بارانی reach برسیدن به reach مسیدن به read خواندن
رسيدن به reach حالا read خواندن
دار التاديب reformatory تقديم كردن
نسبة relatively يير، كهنه، قديمي old
on روی return (v. int.) بر گشتن (v. trs.)
one (adj.) یک one (pron.) یک
همینجا right بحیح، درست right بخز only بخز
اطاق room دیگر
گرنه otherwise
فروشنده salesperson فروشنده
همان، همین same خود own
نمو نِه sample
حرفها say گذشته; to have something to say
داشتن پرداختن، قیمت دادن، دادن، دادن
هنوزنه scarcely
مدرسه school مردم
perfectly Low See See
نمودن، بنظر آمدن seem فارسى (language) ايراني
انتخاب کردن select کس، نفر person
وروختن sell برداشتن
فرستادن send
polite معاكمه كردن sentence
راه افتادن set out امکان to be possible ممکن
چند several
price قيمت shoes
probable, be احتمال داشتن show
بستن shut بشرطي كه
مریض to sick ; نهادن، گزاردن، گذاشتن put, place
ساده simple یوشیدن
خواهر sister پیژامه
شش six

فكر كارى بودن something دامن skirt خواسدن sleep ثالث، سُوم، سومين (third (ordinal کو چک small أمسال this year; این this زر نگ smart دور انداختن throw away , to have a ; بار، دفعه، مدت، ساعت to have a برف باریدن، برف to snow برف snow خوش گذشتن به good time حور اب socks ىراى، بە to کاری (act) چیزی (something (tangible) امروز today حائے , somewhere فردا tomorrow زیاد، خیلی too much ;نیز، هم too زود soon هنوز... نه sooner, no شهر town صحبت کردن، حرف زدن speak سعیٰ کر دن try spend (money) خرج کردن; to spend (time) برگشتن (int.) turn around روشن کردن turn on برخاستن، یا شدن stand up شروع كردن، شروع شدن start باور نکردنی unbelievable ماندن stay زيرييراهن undershirt جلو گرفتن، نگهداشتن (v. trs.) stop فهميدن understand دراز کشیدن stretch out دا نشگاه university گردش کردن stroll, take a مگر اینکه unless دانشحو student ىدىخت unlucky خواندن، درس خواندن study use of, make استفاده کردن از to be of use به درد خوردن، فابده داشتن تاستان summer معمولاً usually جراح surgeon يولور sweater سیار، خیلی very نزدیکی vicinity مېز table to take back ;گرفتن، بردن ده village یرواز (to take off (airplane) برگرداندن در آور دن (to take off (clothes) کر دن خواستن want جای tea شستن wash معلم teacher آب water تهران Tehran way , تعریف کردن از to tell about ; گفتر: ا ىو شىدن wear که (conj.) آن (that (adj., pron.) هو | weather

هفته week

what چه whatever هرچه

آنحا there

thing (tangible) چيز; (act or abstraction)

to think about doing فکر کر دن

### ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

when (interrogative) کی ; when (conj.)	winter زمستان
ے وقتی کہ	کاشکی، کاش wish, I
Where كجا	with به، با
wherever هرکجا	woman زن
which (interrogative) کدام (relative	word حرف
pronoun) ک	کار (vb.) to work ;کار، شغل (work (n.)
who (interrogative) کی (relative pronoun)	کردن کردن
که	write نوشتن
whoever هر که	_
چرا why	year پادسال; last year سال; this year
wife じ	امسال
window پنجره	yesterday ديروز

# Persian-English Vocabulary

Lessons in which vocabulary items are introduced are given in parentheses.

ī	a- pres. stem of آمدن	<u>آ</u> لو	âlu plum
آب	<b>âb</b> water (11); ~ آب زير کاه	آلوبالو	âlubâlu sour cherry
	zir-e kâh sly, sneaky; آبی ~i	آلومينيوم	âluminium aluminum
	light blue (4); ~ shodan to	آماده	âmâde ready (22)
	melt	آمدن	âmadan/ â- to come (7)
آبياري		آمرانه	âmerâne imperious
-	irrigate	آمرزيدن	âmorzidan to have mercy on
اتش	âtesh/âtash fire; ~-gereftan to	آمریکا	âmrikâ America; ہم آمریکائی
7	catch fire (24)	_	American
اجر	âjor baked brick, tile	آموختن	âmuz- <sub>to</sub> آموز/
اخر	antici pi ji uvanici iast,		learn (24)
	end (12); اواخر ماه <b>avâkher-</b> <b>e mâh</b> the last ten days of a	آموزش	
	month		~ vezârat-e اموزش و پرورش
آخند			o parvaresh Ministry of
آدم	âdam one (impersonal), hu-	. ī	Education
۲-,	man being, person	امیحتن آ	âmikhtan/آميز âmiz- to mix ân that; آنحا ~iâ there (2):
آ، ام	ârâm calm, quiet (8)	ال	
آرام آرد	ârd flour		<b>che</b> that which (23), «what; آنچه <b>-tawr</b> thus, like
٠رد آرنج	âranj elbow		rawr thus, fike مطور , that (19); آنقدر <b>~qadr</b> that
آر <u>ي</u> آري	âre indeed, yes		much, so much
َرِن آزار	âzâr annoyance; ~-dâdan to	آنتن	,
	annoy	آواز	
آزمایش	âzmâyesh experiment	J.J.	برور, بهرور,
آزمودن	âzmudan/آزما âzmâ- to try,		<b>khân</b> singer آوازخوان ;(22)
, ,	test	آورد <i>ن</i>	
آسان	âsân easy (8); مآسانی ∹i ease	*-	bring (6)
آستين	âstin sleeve	آويختن	<b>âviz-</b> to hang آويز/ <b>âviz-</b> to
آسيا	âsyâ Asia	آهای	<b>âhây</b> hey
آشيزخانه	âshpazkhâne kitchen (17)	آهن آهنگر	âhan iron
آشناً با	âshnâ bâ acquainted with (25)	آهنگر	âhangar blacksmith
آغاز	âqâz beginning; ~-kardan to	آهو	âhu deer, gazelle
_	begin	آينده	âyande coming, next, future
] فت		-	(14)
آفريدن	âfaridan/آفرين âfarin- to	آئين	O
	create	آئينه	âîne mirror
<u>آ</u> فتاب		,	
اقا	âqâ gentleman, sir, Mr. (4);	ابدًا	abadan (+ neg.) never, not at
	-jân term of respect آقاجانjân term		all
	ful address, especially of	أبر	abr cloud; foam rubber
	fathers		

ابرو	abru eyebrow		rest (24)
ابريشم	abrisham silk	استفاده	estefâde benefit; استفاده کردن
ابزآر ا	abzâr tool, instrument		-kardan az to make use از
ابله	ablah idiot, fool; ابلهانه ~âne		of (23)
•	foolish, stupid	استنتاج	estentâj conclusion
اتفاق	ettefâq chance, occurrence;	اسفناج	esfenâj spinach
•	-oftâdan to oc ~ اتفاق افتادن	استنتاج اسفناج اسم	esm pl اسامی asâmi name (5);
	cur, happen (18); اتفاقًا <b>~an</b>	1	ham~ namesake هماسم
	by chance (15)	اسير	asir prisoner, captive
اثر	asar pl آثار âsâr trace	اشارت	eshârat indication; ~-kardan
اجباري	<b>ejbâri</b> obligatory		be to indicate
احتمال	ehtemâl probability; احتمال	اشباح اشتباه	ashbâh ghosts, phantoms
	- <b>dâshtan</b> to be prob- داشتن	اشتبآه	eshtebâh mistake; ~-kardan
4	able (17)		to make a mistake
احتمالأ	ehtemâlan probably	اشتباهًا اشک	eshtebâhan by mistake
احتياط	ehtiât precaution; ~-kar dan	اشک	ashk tears
	to take precaution	اشكال	eshkâl -ât difficulty, problem;
احساس	ehsâs pl احساسات -ât feeling;		~-dâshtan to have a problem
	~-kardan to feel		(23)
احمق		اصرار	esrâr insistence; ~-kardan to
	<b>∼âne</b> stupid, silly		insist
اختيار	ekhtiâr choice; ~-kardan to	اصطلاح	estelâh idiom, technical term,
	-b <b>i~</b> invol بى اختيار	•	local expression; be ~ idio-
<i>"</i> .	untarily		matically
	akhgar spark	اصفهان	
ادامه	edâme continuation; ~-dâdan	اصلا	
	be to continue (trs.) (23); ~-		all (15)
	dâshtan to continue (intrs.)	اصلی	
ادبيات	adabiyât literature	اطاق	otâq room (13)
اذان	azân call to prayer	اطاقك	otâqak a small room, a mis-
اذيت	aziyat annoyance; ~-kardan		erable little room
	to annoy, vex	اطبا	- •
ار	ar poetic contraction of اگر		ettelâ' pl -ât information
اردک	ordak duck	<b>J</b> .	e'tebâr credit
ارزان	arzân cheap (14)	أعضا	
از	az from (5), among, of (parti-	اعلام	e'lâm making known; ~-kar-
	tive); از اینکه <b>· in-ke</b> be-	•	dan to make known
1 .1	cause, since	اعلان	e'lân announcement; ~-kar-
ازدحام	ezdehâm crowd		dan to announce
اسامي	asâmi pl of اسم	افتادن	oft- to fall, be-
اسب اسباب	asb horse		fall (18)
إسباب	asbâb belongings	افتتاح	eftetâh inauguration; ~-sho-
اسپ استاد	asp = اسب	•1	dan to be inaugurated
	_	افروختن افزودن	afrukhtan/افروز afruz- to
استخوان	ostokhân bone	•, •1	light, kindle
استراحت	esterâhat rest; ~-kardan to	افزودن	afzudan/افزا afzâ- to add

افسرده	afsorde dejected	انجير	anjir fig
افكندن	afkandan/افکن afkan- to	اند	
	throw, cast (16)	.ب. انداختن	
اقتصاد	eqtesâd economics	<i>Je</i> 1201	throw, cast
اقلا	aqallan at least (12)	اندازه ،	andâze measure, extent
اكنون	aknun now	اندر	andar in, on
اگر	ágar if (19): مهر اگرهم امار	اندک اندک	andak little (bit); اندکمابه
<i>J.</i> .	<b>ágar</b> if (19); اگرهم <b>~-ham</b> although, even though (22);		~mâye possessing little cap-
	اگُرنه ; <b>che</b> although اگرچه		ital, petty
	~na otherwise (23)	انقلاب	enqelâb -ât revolution;
الا	ellâ otherwise, or else	•	un- اُنقلابيون pl نمانقلابي
الاغ	olâq donkey, pack horse;		revolutionary
_	i donkey driver الأغي	انگِبين	angabin honey
الآن	al'ân now	انگشت	angosht finger
الحق	álhaqq in truth, truly	انگشتر	angoshtar finger ring
الهيات	elâhiyât divinity, theology	انگلیس	englis English, British
الياف	alyâf fibers	انگلیسی انگور	englisi English (language) (7)
اما	ámmâ but, nonetheless	انگور آ	angur grape
امام	a'emme leader ائمه	انگیختن	angikhtan/انگيز angiz- to stir
امان	amân safety		up
امتحان	emtehân examination, test; ~-	او	u he, she
	kardan to test	اواخِر	avâkher pl of آخر
امروز	emruz today (5)	اوركت	overkot peacoat
أمسال	emsâl this year (9)	اوقات	awqât pl of vaqt; اوقات تلخ
إمشب	emshab tonight (9)		~talkh irritated, in a bad
امضا	emzâ signature; ~-kardan to		talkhi~ اوقاتتلخي ;mood
	sign		bad mood
امكان	emkân possibility; ~-dâshtan	اول	avval first (12); اولين in first
	to be possible (16)	اهل	ahl people; native of, from (6)
امن	amn safety, security	ای ۱ ۱:	ay O (vocative particle)
اميد	omid hope (17); اميدوار ~vâr	ايران	irân Iran, Persia; ايراني ~i Iranian, Persian
. 1	hopeful (17)	ایستادگی	
امی <i>ن</i> ۱۰۱	amin trustee	ایستاد نی	istâdegi standing one's ground; ~-kardan to stand
انار	anâr pomegranate		one's ground
انبار	ambâr reservoir, storehouse entekhâb -ât election; ~-	ايستادن	istadan/ایست ist- to stop,
انتخاب	shodan to be elected, cho-	02000	stand, stand still; ایستاده
	sen; ~-kardan to elect.		istâde budan to be بودن
	choose (9)		standing (24)
انتظار	entezâr expectation; ~-e kas-	ایستگاه	istgâh station
J-2	i-râ keshidan to wait for	أيشان	ishân they
	someone	ایل	ât tribe - ایلات al pl
انتقال	enteqâl transfer; ~-dâdan to	این	in this
=	transfer, move	اينجا	injâ here (2)
انجام	anjâm end; ~-dâdan to ac-	اينطور	intawr thus, like this (19)
1 '	complish	اينقدر	inqadr so much, this much

	(14)		باغیه <b>~che</b> garden plot;
اىنك			-chebandi~ باغچەبندى شدن
ايوان	ayvân arched portico		shodan to be divided up into
J.	•		plots
ىا	bâ with (5), despite	باقالا	bâqâlâ fava bean
ىا آنكە	bâ ân-ke although	باقي	bâql remaining, left
بابا	bâbâ daddy; باباشمل ~-	بالا	bâlâ up, upstairs (23); سالاي ~-
• •	shamal ruffian, thug		ye over, on top of
باجناق	bâjenâq wife's sister's	بالاخره	bel'akhare finally, at last (16)
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	husband	بام	<b>bâm</b> roof
باختن	bâkhtan/باز bâz- to gamble,	بام بامیه بانگ	bâmie okra
•	lose (game, bet)	بانگ	bâng cry; ~-kardan to shout
باد	<b>bâd</b> wind	باور	bâvar belief; ~-kardan to be-
بادام	<b>bâdâm</b> almond		lieve (18)
بادنجان	bâdenjân eggplant	باهم	bâham together
بار	do~e again دوباره;	باهوش	bâhush intelligent
	(23), another time. ¶ bâr	بايد	<b>bấyad</b> must (16)
	load (12); ~-bordan to carry	بايست	bâyést (past of bâyad) must
	a load. ¶ bâr court; ~-dâdan	ببر	babr tiger
	to hold court	بته	bote bush, shrub
بارا <i>ن</i>	bârân rain (21); بارانی <b>~i</b>	بچگانگی	bacchegânegi childishness
	raincoat	بچگانه	bacchegâne childish
باربر	bârbar porter	ببر بته بچگانگی بچگانه بچه	gân child~ بچگان
باريدن	<b>bâridan</b> to rain down (21)		(2)
باریک		بخاری	
باز	bâz open (11); ~-kardan to	بخت	bakht luck, fortune
	open (11). ¶ bâz hawk.	بخش	
	¶ bâz again; yet, still; ~ âmadan to come again (11);	4	ment; ~ bar divided by
	mândan to lag behind;	بخشندگی بخشودن	bakhshandagi generosity
	-ham still, nonethe-بازهم	بخشودن	bakhshudan/بخشا bakhshâ-
	less (22). ¶ bâz- pres. stem	•	to forgive
	of باختن	بخشيدن	bakhshidan to give, bestow,
بازار	bâzâr bazaar, market		forgive (23)
بازرس	bâzres conductor (train)	بد	pad bad, evil, ill (1); بدم میآید -am miâyad az I dislike از
بازرگا <i>ن</i>	bâzargân merchant		• بد و بيراه گفتن به ;(17)
بازگُذاشترُ	bâz-gozâshtan to turn over		birâh goftan be to curse
بازگشتن	bâz-gashtan to come back	ىدن	badan pl ابدان abdân body
باز <u>و</u>	bâzu upper arm; بازوبند	بدون بدون	bedun-e without (25)
	~band bracelet	بدرت	bar (prep.) over, upon, at,
بازی	bâzi play; ~-kardan to play	بر	against (21). ¶ bar fruit.
باستان	bâstân ancient; باستانشناسی		J bar- pres. stem of بردن.
	~shenâsi archeology		بریدن <b>bor-</b> pres. stem of بریدن.
با <i>ش</i>	b <b>âsh</b> pres. stem of بودن	برابر	barâbar together; level,
باطل	bâtel useless, invalid, void	• • • •	equal; opposite (12)
باغ	bâq -ât garden, orchard (9);	برادر	barâdar brother (11)
_		•	

			_
براق	barrâq glittering	ىعد	ba'd after; بعداً ~an afterward
برآمدن برآمدن	bar-âmadan to turn out, come	•	(15); بعد از az after (prep.)
J. J.	through; to come/go up		(10); بعد از آنکه <b>az ân-ke</b>
برای			after (conj.) (22)
برای	in-ke because	بعضي '	ba'z-i some
	bartar superior; برتری ~i	بعداد	
برتر	superiority	بنا	baqal lap
1	bar-khâstan to rise up, stand	بعن	boqche sack, bundle
برخاستن	up (19)	بعید بغل بقچه بقراطی	bognêti Himpograti
24.	- ' '	بقراطی	boqrâti Hippocratic
برحوردن	bar-khordan be to meet, come across	بفیه	baqiye the rest
20.10		بلافاصله	• •
بردادن	bar-dâdan to yield (fruit)		straightaway
برداشتن	bar-dâshtan to pick up (7)	بلد	<i>O.</i> 1
بردن	bordan/ بر bar- to carry, take		budan to know, know about,
	(10); to win (22)		know how (+ subj., to) (20)
بررسی	barresi inventory	بلغور	balqur chatter; ~-kardan to
برشمردن	bar-shomodan to recount,		gobble, chatter
	count out	بلند	boland tall, high; loud (8)
برف	barf snow (21)	بلوز	boluz blouse
برق	barq electricity	بلوط	balut chestnut
برگ	barg leaf; برگ بو ~e bu bay	بله	bále yes (2)
	leaf	بلور	ballur crystal
برگرفتن	bar-gereftan to pick up	بليط	belit ticket
برگشتن	bar-gashtan to return (7)	بنا	
برگرفتن برگشتن برنامه	barnâme program	بند	band- pres. stem of بستن.
برنج برنج	berenj uncooked rice; brass	•	بند کفش ,¶ band tie, lace \$
برنج برنشستن	bar-neshastan to mount		e kafsh shoelace. I band-
برومند برومند	borumand worthy,		âmadan to come to an end,
· )).	prosperous		be blocked
د بدن	boridan to cut (24)	بنده	bande slave; euphemistic for
بر <u>.</u> د:	boz goat	•	"I"
بر دن گ	bozorg big (1); ~-shodan to	بودن	bâsh- to be (6) باش
برر ت	grow up (9); بزرگوار <b>~vâr</b>	.ر بوسیدن	busidan to kiss
	great	.ر. بوقلمو <i>ن</i>	buqalamun turkey
	bas enough, plenty, many a	بر بومشناسی	bumshenâsi ecology
<i>U</i>	(22)	برستای	be to, with, by (5). ¶ beh bet-
bl	besât carpet; بساط بریا کردن		ter. J beh quince. J به به bah
ع	~ bar pâ kardan to set up		bah exclamation of delight
	shop		(8)
بستگان	bastegân relatives	بها	bahâ price
		به بهار	bahâr spring
بسس	close, fasten, tie (11)	746	behtar better (8)
	bastan/بند band- to shut, close, fasten, tie (11) bastani ice cream	بهر	bohdôri public boolth
بستنی	harian rom much	بهداري	behdâri public health
	besyâr very, much	بهر بهداری بهم	beham together; م بهم خوردن ~
	boshqâb plate (15)		Kiloi dan to comuc, to mis
بطری	botri bottle		apart, to get jumbled

بهيچوجه	behichvajh in no way, (+	پدید	padid visible; ~-shodan, ~-
	neg.) not nearly so		âmadan to appear, come
بی	bi without; بي آنكه ~ <b>ân-ke</b>		into view (19)
•4.1	unless, without (20) biâbân wilderness	پدیدار	padidâr visible; ~-shodan to come into view
بيابان	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	٤L . i .	
بيچاره . <u>÷</u>	bichâre helpless, poor bikh bottom, root	پذیرائی	pazirâi reception; ~-kardan az to receive, entertain
بیخ بید	bid clothes moth	يذيرفتن	· ·
بید بیدار	bidâr awake; ~-shodan to	U-7. 4	cept, receive
بيدار	wake up (17)	ير	por full (24)
بيرون	birun outside (15)	پر پراکندگی	parâkandegi dispersal
بيررت	bist twenty	يراكنده	parâkande scattered
ىش	bish, بیشتر bishtar more (8)	يرتقال	portoqâl orange
بيةس	bayqule, biqule pit, hole	پرداخت	pardâkht payment; ~-kardan
 بيغوله بيمار	bimâr sick person, patient		to pay
بيمارستان	bimârestân hospital	يرداختن	pardâkhtan/پرداز pardâz- to
بيندرسدر	bayn-e between, among.		pay
<i>U</i>	دیدن <b>J bin-</b> pres. stem of	پررو	porru bold, insolent, cheeky;
بينوا	binavâ miserable		i-kardan to beمنانج پرروئی کردن
بیر بینی	bini nose		bold, to be insolent
.يى بيھودە	bihude futile	پرستاری	parastâri nursing
بيهوش بيهوش	bihush unconscious	پرستو پرستيدن	parastu swallow (bird)
<b>0 5</b> 0			parastidan to serve, worship
پا	pâ foot; ~-khordan to be trod	پرسیدن	porsidan to ask (az a person) (21)
	on;shodan to stand up	پرنده	
	ريا; (19) <b>bar ~</b> standing,	پردار پرواز	parvâz flight; ~-kardan to
	erect; پاورقی <b>~varaqi</b> bottom of a page, footnote; ياورچين	2.054	fly, take off
	پ ورچین ،varchin on tiptoes	پروانه	parvâne butterfly, moth
ياچه	pâche cuff (on trousers);	پروردن	parvar- to پرور/parvar
~ ~	varmâlide~ ياچەورماليدە		train, nourish
	impudent	پرهٔ بینی	pare-ye bini nostril
پارچە	pârche cloth	پريدن	paridan to fly away, soar
پارسال	pârsâl last year (9)	پریشان	parishân upset, confused
پاک	pâk clean, pure; ~-kardan to	پز	paz- pres. stem of پختن
	clean, erase; پاککن <b>~kon</b> eraser (1)	پزشک	پزشکی ;(4) pezeshk physician (4); ∼i the study of medicine
ماكت	pâket package, parcel, envel-		pas then, therefore (17); pas-e
ωţ	ope	پس	through; الماري على الماري على الماري على الماري على الماري الماري على الماري
يالتو	pâlto overcoat		az ~ يس ازآنكه ;(17) (prep.)
پانزده	pânzdah fifteen		ân-ke after (conj.) (22)
پ <sup>ا</sup> ئین	pâin down, downstairs (23)	يستان	pestân breast; پستاندار ~dâr
ب یں بختن	pokhtan/پز paz- to cook	·	mammal
٠ يخش	pakhsh-shodan to spread;	پسته	peste pistachio
	<b>√idan</b> to spread پخشی <i>دن</i>		pesar boy, son (3)
پدر	pedar father (5)	پسندیدن	pasandidan to approve of
-			

4			1101
	posht back; ~-e behind (25)	. 1.	~khâb nightshirt
پشت بام	posit-e pam roor	پیژامه	pizhâme pyjamas
پشم	posht-e bâm roof pashm wool pashe mosquito; پشه بند	پیش	pish forward; ~-e before, in
, un	پسه بند , band mosquito net	•	front of (17); <b>-e</b> ~ ago (19); مدن <b>~-âmadan</b> to
. <v.< td=""><td>pelâstik plastic</td><td></td><td>come up, happen (18); پیش</td></v.<>	pelâstik plastic		come up, happen (18); پیش
راک	nelk evelid		پیش م <b>az</b> before (prep.) (17);
راکان	nellekûn staircase		az in-ke be-
رانگ رانگ	nalang leonard		fore (conj.) (22); ل شي
پاد ت ىلم	pelk eyelid pellekân staircase palang leopard polaw rice steamed with meat		e pâ oftâde trivial: افتاده
<b>9</b> 4	and/or vegetables		~-raftan to progress, ad-
پنبه	pambe cotton	.1 .	vance (7)
٠٠ ينج	panj five	پیشانی مگنتا	pishâni forehead pishgoftâr preface pishnehâd suggestion (23) pishvâ leader
ينجاه	panjâh fifty	پیشخفتار	pisngottar preface
ينجره	panjare window (2)	پیشنهاد	pismenad suggestion (23)
يندار	pendâr notion	پیشوا	pishva leader
پنداشتن	panj five panjah fifty panjare window (2) pendâr notion pendâshtan/پندار pendâr- to	پيوستن	payvand- be پیوند/payvand- be
•	think, consider		to join
پنهان	penhân hidden; ~-kardan to	تا	tâ unit, counting word (12);
	hide; <b>~-shodan</b> to disappear	•	to, up to (25); so long as,
J = 4	panir cheese		until (22); in order that; than
پوچ پوشيدن	puch silly, nonsense		(8); تا آنجا که <b>ânjâ-ke</b> in-
پوشیدن	pushidan to cover, clothe; to		sofar as
	پوشیده بودن;(16) put on	تابستان	tâbestân summer (8)
	pushide budan to be wearing	تابش	tâbesh heat, warmth
بدار	wearing <b>pul</b> money (13); پولدار <b>~dâr</b>	تاخت	tâkht gallop; تاخت و تاز 🗸 o
پون	wealthy, rich		tâz galloping
يولور	pulover sweater	تاريخ	tavârikh تواريخ târikh pl
پورو پهلو	pahlu side	C 1º	date, history
پهر پهن	<del>-</del>	ناریک تازه	târik dark; تاریکی ~i darkness
پەق پھناور		<i>ن</i> اره	tâze fresh, novel, recent(ly); moreover, furthermore; تاز
پی	pay-e after, on the heels of		vâred newcomer وارد
ییادہ	piâde on foot, by foot (22); ~-	تاكسى	tâksi taxi
	shodan to get out/off (of a	تالیف	ta'lif composition
	vehicle)	ي <i>-</i> تبريز	tabriz Tabriz
پيادەرو	piâderaw sidewalk; pedes-	.ر.ر تبعید	tab'id exile; ~-kardan to
.1	trian		exile
پياز	piâz onion	تحمل	tahammol endurance;
پيازچە 	piâzche scallion	_	- <b>nâpazir</b> unen- تحمل ناپذیر
پیچیدن	pichidan to wrap, turn, twist	,	durable
پيدا	paydâ found, visible; obvious;		tahvil consignment
•	~-kardan to find (7) pir old (15)		takhtekhâb bed (17)
پیر مامدن	pir old (13) pirâmun environ		takhassos specialization
پيرامو <i>ن</i> ام	piramun environ pirahan shirt; پیراهنخواب	تخم	tokhm seed; تخم مرغ ~-e
پيراس	پيراهنحواب, با بسته بسب		

	morq egg		e shekâri shotgun شکاری
تخمة جشه	tokhme-ye cheshm eyeball tadbir management, plan tar wet tarâshidan to shave	تقديم	taqdim presentation; ~-kar-
تدىم ۲	tadbir management, plan	1 -	dan to present, offer (24)
تر.	tar wet	تقريبا	taqriban almost, nearly; ap-
تراشىدن	tarâshidan to shave		proximately (12)
ر يا تريحه	torobche radish	تقسيم	taqsim division; ~-kardan to
تربیت تربیت	tarbiat education; تربیت بدن	1	divide (25)
	~-e badan physical educa-	تكايو	takâpu search, quest
	tion	تكان	takân shake; ~-khordan to
ترحمه	tarjome translation		shake, move (intrs.); ~-dâ-
ر. ترحیح	tarjih preference; ~-dâdan to		dan to shake, move (trs.)
ر.ي	prefer	تكرار	tekrâr repetition; ~-kardan to
تردامن	tardâman scandalous		repeat
	tars fear; ترساندن ~ândan to	تکه	tekke piece; حمد تکه تکه کردن
	scare; ترسیدن از ~idan az to	_	kardan to chop to pieces
	fear, be afraid of (13)	تكيه	takye leaning; ~dâdan be to
ترش	torsh sour; ترشى ~i pickle	_	lean against
ترش ترک	tark abandonment; ~-kardan	تلخ	talkh bitter; تلخى i bitterness talaffoz pronunciation
•	to leave		
ترمز	tormoz brake	تماشا	tamâshâ show, spectacle; ~-
ترُن	tren train	4	kardan to watch (22)
تره	ye-~ ترهٔ فرنگی ;tare chives		tamâshâgar onlooker
	farangi leek	تمام	tamâm complete, perfect; ~-e all of; هرچه تمامتر -e harche
تسبيح	tasbih rosary, worry beads tashar battle ax		مدر ما الما الما الما الما الما الما الما
تشر	tashar battle ax		shodan to be finished; ~-
	teshne thirsty (24)		kardan to finish (21)
تصادف	tasâdof pl -ât accident; ~-kar-	تمبر	tambr stamp
_	dan to have an accident	تمدن	tamaddon civilization
تصميم	tasmim decision; ~-gereftan to decide	تميز	tamiz clean; ~-kardan to
1 <del></del>		<b>J.</b>	clean (23)
تصنیف تا ت	tasnif composition	تن	tan body, person
تطبیقی	tatbiqi comparative	تنبل	tambal lazy (3)
تعبير	ta'bir dream interpretation ta'ajjob astonishment	تند	tond fast, quick
	te'dâd number (12)	تنفس تنگ	tanaffos breathing
تعداد تعریف	ta'rif definition; ~-kardan az	تنگ	tang narrow, tight
تعریف	to tell about, relate; ~-kar-	تنها	tanhâ alone, only (19)
	dan to define (13)	تو	to you (sing.). ¶ tu(-ye) in,
تعصب	ta'assob fanaticism		inside
•	ta'mir repair; ~-kardan to	توالت	tuâlet toilet
J	repair	توانا	tavânâ capable, able; wealthy
تغيير	taqyir change; ~-dâdan to	توانستن	tavân- to be توان/tavân- to be
	change (trs.); ~-kardan to		able (16)
	change (intrs.) (16)	توبه	tawbe repentance
تفریق	tafriq subtraction	تو <i>پ</i>	با توپ و ;tup ball, cannonball -b <b>a ~ o tashar</b> vindictive
تفنگ	tofang gun, rifle; تفنگ		Da - O Mishai Villatotivo-

	ly	جراح	jarrâh surgeon; جراحی -i sur
توت	e توت فرنگی;tut berry		gery
	farangi strawberry		jari bold
توجه	tavajjoh attention; ~-dâshtan		<b>jarayân</b> flow
	be to pay attention to	جرئت	jor'at courage; ~dâshtan to
توری	turi net, screen		dare
توقف	tavaqqof stop, halt; ~-kardan to make a stop	- '	joz except; بجز اینکه (be) ~ in-ke unless, except that (19)
تولد	tavallod birth	جزيره	jazire pl جزاير jazâyer island
تومان	tomân 10 rials, toman	جستجو	jostoju search, hunt; ~-kar-
تو <i>ي</i>	tu-ye in, inside		dan to seek, search for (21)
تهديد	tahdid threat; ~-kardan to	جستن	jeh- to leap, jump.
	threaten		ju- to search for,
تهران	tehrân Tehran		seek (21)
تهی	tahi empty	جعبه	ja'be box (4)
تر	tir arrow, bullet; ~-	جعفري	<b>ja'fari</b> parsley
J#	andâkhtan to shoot an arrow	جغد	<b>joqd</b> owl
	or bullet; ~keshidan to tin-	جغرافيا	joqrâfiâ geography
	gle; تیراندازی <b>~andâzi</b>		joft pair, mate
	archery		jegar liver
تيز	tiz sharp		jalb attraction; ~kardan to attract
ثابت	sâbet proven; ~-kardan to	حاه	jalese session
•;•	prove	جلو	·
ثالث	sâles third	مجنو	chiz-i-râ gereftan to stop
ثانی	sâni second (adj.)		(trs.)
تانیه ثانیه	sanie pl ثوانى savâni second	حارتقه	jelitqe vest
عيد	(time) (12)		jamâ'at group
	(11110) (12)	•	jam' group; addition; ~-kar-
1_	<b>jâ</b> place (5)	جمع	dan to collect, gather; ~-bas-
	jarub broom; ~-shodan to be		tan to add
جاروب	swept	حمعا	jam'an in all, in toto (13)
حاري	jâri husband's brother's wife	جمعیت جمعیت	jam'iyat group
	jâleb nice, interesting (20)	جمعیت جمله	jomle sentence; totality
• •		•	jenn the djinn, demons; ~-
جامعه	j <b>âme'e</b> society; جامعهشناسی <b>~shenâsi</b> sociology	جن	gereftan to exorcise demons
جان	<b>jân</b> soul, life; dear (15)	جنازه	janâze funeral procession
جانفرسا	<b>jânfarsâ</b> debilitating	جُنگُل	jangal forest; جنگلداری ~dâri
جانور	jânvar animal; جانورشناسي	<u> </u>	forestry
•	~shenâsi zoology	جنوب	jonub south
جدا	jodâ separate; جدائی~i sepa-	جني	jenni pl اجنه ajenne genii,
Ť	ration; ~kardan to separate	•	djinn
جدول	jadval table, crisscross; جدول	جو	jaw barley. ¶ ju- pres. stem of
Ť	e kalemât-e~ كلمات متقاطع		جستن
	motaqâte' crossword puzzle	جواب	javâb -ât answer, response; ~-
جديد	jadid new (5)		dâdan to answer (10)

جوان	javân young, youth (2);	چکیدن	chekidan to drip
	-mard chivalrous, جوانمرد	چگونه	chegune how, in what manner
	noble	چلو	chelaw plain steamed rice
	javâher -ât jewel	چمدان	chamedân suitcase
جور	jur (colloq.) = tawr; آنجور	چنان	
	= ~in اينجور ;ân~ =	•	(16); چنانچه <b>~che</b> in case
	che~ = che- چجور		that
	tawr	چند	chand how many, how much
جوراب	jurâb socks; جوراب نايلن -e	•	(in) چندمین، چندم (14)
	nâylon stockings		what humber?; چندشنبه
جوهر	jawhar ink		~shambe what day of the
جهان	jahân world (25); جهانآ فرين		week?
	~afarin world-creator	چندان	chandân so much, so long
جهود	jahud Jew	چنگال	changâl fork (15)
جيب		چنين	chonin so, so much, such (16)
	pocket	چو	cho apocopated form of چون
		چوب	chub wood
چاپ	châp-shodan to be printed; ~-	چون	chon because, since (11);
• •	kardan to print	<b>J</b> *	when, if; like; چونکه ~- <b>ke</b>
چادر	châdor tent; veil		because, since
جاره	châre remedy, alternative	چه	<b>che</b> what (4); چهچه
چاق	châq fat; ~kardan to puff on	•	cheche whetheror
•	a waterpipe to get it going	چهار	gush~چهارگوش;chahâr four
چانه	châne chin	• • •	square
چای		جهارده	chahârdah fourteen
ڿۑۘ		چھل	chehel forty
چتر	chatr umbrella	چيز	
چتر چرا	chérâ why (2); yes in reply to	چینی	
3.4	a negative question (6)	<b>0</b> ,	
چراغ	cherâq light, lamp, flashlight	حاجت	hâjat pl حوائج havâ'ej need,
٧٠	(21)	•	necessity
جرخ	charkh wheel (14); دوخرخه	حادثه	havâdes حوادث havâdes
<b>.</b>	do~e bicycle		event, incident; از بد حادثه
چرک	cherk filth(y)		az bad-e ~ as bad luck would
چرم	charm leather		have it
جسبيدر	chasbidan be to stick to, cling	حاشيه	havâshi حواشي havâshi
•	to		edge, margin
چشم	cheshm/chashm eye;		hâzer present
, ,	<b>pezeshk</b> eye~ چشمپزشک	حال	hâl pl احوال ahvâl state, con-
	doctor		dition (21)
چشمبنا	cheshmbandi sleight-of-hand	حالا	hâlâ now, at present (11)
چشیدن	cheshidan to taste	حالت	hâlat pl حالات hâlât state,
چطور	chetawr how? (10)		condition
چغنڈر	choqondar sugar beet	حتما	hatman certainly, surely (14)
جقدر	cheqadr how much (14)	حتى	háttâ even, until (19)
چکمه	chakme boots	حدس	hads guess; ~-zadan to guess

	(18)		rat-e ~e Ministry of Foreign
حدود	hodud-e about, ca.		Affairs
حرام	haram sanctuary	خاستن	khâstan/خيز khiz- to rise
	harf -hâ word, what one says		khâssegi elite
	(10); pl حروف horuf letter		khâssiyat characteristic
	of the alphabet; ~-zadan to		khâter mind; خاطرجمع -jam
	speak (10)	,	relieved; be ~-e for the sake
حرکت	harakat pl حركات harakât		of; خاطره ~e pl -rât memory
	motion, movement; ~kar-	خاک	khâk earth, dust; خاک آلود
	dan to move (22)		~âlud dusty
حس,	hess feeling; ~-kardan to feel	خاكستر	khâkestar ash; نه خاکستری
	hesâb account, reckoning	<b>J</b>	grey
•	hasrat regret	خال	khâl tattoo, mole, beauty spot;
	hazrat pl حضرات hazarât ex-	J	~-kubidan to tattoo
	cellency, majesty (title)	خاله	khâle maternal aunt
حق	hoquq right; ~-		khâli empty, void (24)
U	dâshtan to be right, be in the	_	khâmush silent; ~kardan to
	right	0.5	turn out/off, silence (21)
حقوق	hoquq law	خاندان	khânedân family
	haqâyeq حقايق haqâyeq	خانم	
•	truth, reality	1	(4)
حكايت	hekâyat story, tale; ~-kardan	خانه اده	khânevâde family
•	to narrate, tell a story		khâne house, home (1)
حکیم	hokamâ wise حکما		خاورشناسی; khâvar orient
1 "	man, physician	35-	oriental studies
حل	hall solution; ~kardan to	خائىدن	khâidan to gnaw
	solve		khobs vileness
حلبي	halabi tinplate	•	akhbâr news اخبار
حلزون	halazun snail	عبر خدا	
حلق	halq throat		غداحافظی کردن با ;goodbye
حلقه	halqe ring		~hâfezi-kardan bâ to say
حماسه	hamâse epic		goodbye to (23)
حمام	hammâm bath(house)	خداوند	khodâvand lord
	hamle attack; ~kardan to	خداىگان	khodâyegân great lord
	attack		khedmat service; خدمت بجا
حنا	hennâ henna; ~-bastan to ap-		be jâ âvordan to آوردن
	ply henna		make an obeisance
حوائج	havâ'ej pl of حاجت	خر	khar donkey, ass. ¶ khar-
	hawsele patience		خریدن pres. stem of
•	hayât courtyard	خراب	kharâb broken, ruined (3);
_	hayf pity		bât ruin- خرابات e pl حزابه
- •	• • •	خربزه	kharboze Persian melon
خارج	khârej exterior, outside; ~ az	خرج	kharj expenditure; ~-kardan
- س	outside of; ~-shodan az to	_	to spend (money)
	go out of, leave; حارجه ~e	خرچنگ	kharchang crab
	foreign: وزارت خارجه vezâ-	خرد	ahl- اهل خرد ;ahl
	••	64	3 6
	2	u-r	

	e ~ wise people	خەب	khub good, well (1)
خردمند	kheradmand wise		khod self (11); خودرو ~ru
	khardal mustard		wild
	kheradmand wise	خودنمائي	khodnomâi self display; ~-
•	khers bear	_	kardan to display oneself
خرگوش	khargush rabbit	خوراک	khorâk foodstuff, food
ر ر <i>ن</i> خرما	khormâ date	خوردن	
خر و ح	khoruj exit, going out		drink (9); ~ be to hit, collide
	khorus rooster		with
	kharidan to buy (9)	خورش	khoresh stew
	khazande reptile	خوش	khosh good; سخوشم ميآيد از am miâyad az I like (17);
-	khazidan to crawl		am miâyad az I like (17);
	khazine treasury; خزينه دار		o besh chit- خوش و بش
~	~dâr treasurer	11 A ·	chat
خسته	khaste tired (24)		khoshhâl happy (3)
خشت	khesht brick	حوشكل	<b>khoshgel</b> pretty, handsome (13)
خشک	khoshk dry; خشكيدن~idan		khoshmaze delicious (9)
	to dry out		khuk pig
خصوصي	khosusi private	•	
خط	khatt pl خطوط khotut line,	حون	khun blood; خون راه انداختن râh-andâkhtan to start a
	handwriting		blood feud; خو نسرد ~sard
	khoffâsh bat		calm
	khâb- to sleep خواب/khab	خو ىش	khish self
-	khafif light	<b>-</b>	khiâbân avenue
	khalvat empty (24)		khiâr cucumber
	kham bent, bent over		khiâl thought, notion
خميازه	khamyâze yawn; ~-keshidan		khayr good(ness), charity
	to yawn		khire transfixed, dazzled; ~-
	khande laughter	7.	shodan to stare blankly
-	khandidan to laugh	خيز	خاستن khiz- pres. stem of
خو	khu habit, custom; ~-gereftan	خيس	khis wet
1. •	be to become accustomed to	خيلي	kháyli very, much, many (2)
حواب	خواباندن; (17) khâb sleep	_	
	<b>~ândan</b> to put to sleep, lay down; خوابیدن <b>~idan</b> to		dâkhel inside, interior
	sleep, go to sleep (17); ~-di-	داداش	dâdâsh brother, friend
	dan to dream	دادن	deh- to give (6)
خواستن	khâstan/خواه khâh- to want	دار	dâr- pres. stem of dâshtan;
	(6); to be about to (16)		o nadâr all one مدار و ندار
خوان	khân table, banquet table		has, possessions
خواندن	khândan/خوان khân- to read,	دارا	dârâ having, possessing
_	recite, sing (7)	دارالتاديب	
خواه	خواستن khâh- pres. stem of	دارچين	
خواهر	khâhar sister (11)	داستان	dâstân story
خواهش	khâhesh request; ~-kardan to	داشتن	dâr- to have,
	request		hold, keep (7)
	<b>^</b> .	65	

دا. ده ک	dâmporoshlri votorinod		C dealers due 1
دامپزشکی	dâmpezeshki veterinary med- icine	1 .	¶ derham drachma
داه	dâman skirt	دريا	daryâ sea; دریاچه <b>~che</b> lake; مانکی <b>~i</b> aquatic
_	dânâ -yân learned, wise	٠اه٠.	
	dânestan/دان dân- to know,	دريافتن	to comprehend
دانسس	realize (9)	3:3	dozd thief; دزدیدن ~idan to
داده.	dânesh knowledge; دانشجو	درد	rob, steal
ع. ص	دانشکده ;(3) climکده	دست	•
	~kade faculty, school;		~ bar-dâshtan az to stop,
	<b>eâh</b> university (3) دانشگاه		cease; ~-keshidan az to stop,
دانه	dâne seed, grain; unit (12)		cease; دست کم -e kam at
داير كردن	dâyer-kardan to run (a shop)		least
دائي	dâi maternal uncle	دستپاچه	dastpâche nervous, confused
دبيرستان	dabirestân high school	دستشوئي	dastshui washbasin
دختر	dokhtar girl, daughter (5)	دستكش	dastkesh glove
در ّ	dar in (2). ¶ dar door (1); ~	دستور	-ât order, دستورات dastur pl
_	zadan to knock (at a door)		rule; دستور زبان ~e zabân
دراز	darâz long (17); ~-keshidan		grammar
_	to stretch out (17)	دسته	daste group, set
	darâmad income	دشنام	doshnâm curse; ~-dâdan to
درآمدن	dar-âmadan to come out,	1 4	curse
	come in	دشوار	doshvår difficult
درآوردن		دعا	do'â prayer
	(clothes) (16); to take out	دعوا	da'vâ fight
دربارهٔ		دعوت	
	(3)	#Å A	invite (24)  daftar office
	daraje level, class	دفتر دفعه	
	derakht -ân tree	دوعه	daf'e pl دفعات dafa'ât time, instance (12)
	derakhshidan to shine	دفن	dafn burial; ~-kardan to bury
درد	dard pain (22); <b>kardan</b> to hurt; بدرد کسی خوردن <b>bee</b>	دقيق	daqiq precise; دقيقًا ~an
	kási khordan to be of use to	دليق	precisely
	s.o. (20)	دقيقه	daqâyeq دقايق daqâyeq
دررفتن	dar-raftan to run away (16)		minute (12)
0	darzi tailor	د کان	dakâkin د کا کین dakâkin
درس	-~ درس خواندن; dars lesson		shop (19)
0 4	khândan to study (7)	دكتر	doktor doctor
درست	dorost right, correct; ~-kar-	د کترا	doktorâ doctorate, Ph.D.
	dan to fix (15)		dokme button
	dorosht huge, rough		degar = دیگر
درميان	dar miân-e amidst	دل	del heart, stomach; ~ bar-
درم	deram drachma		dâshtan az to give up hope
	darvâze gate		of
دروغ	doruq lie		delpazir pleasant
درویش	darvish poor man, dervish		delâvar warrior, brave
درهم	darham confused, jumbled.	دلداری	deldâri consolation; ~-dâdan
,	26	_	

	to console		~kardan to be late (22)
دليل	dalil reason	ديروز	diruz yesterday (6)
دم	dam moment, breath	ديشب	dishab last night (9)
دماغ	damâq nose; brain	دیگر	digar other (6); (+ neg.) no
دمیائی	dampâi slippers		more (17)
دميدن دميدن	damidan to break (dawn)	ديوار	<b>divâr</b> wall
دنبال	dombâl-e after, on the heels	ديوانه	divâne mad, crazy (23)
	of; ~-e chiz-i gashtan to	ديه	dêh = ده deh
	look for something (20); ~-e		
	chiz-i gereftan to pick up	ذره	zarre particle, atom; ذره بين
	(where left off)		~bin magnifying glass
دندال	دندان پاک کن ;dandân tooth	ذغال	zoqâl coal, charcoal
	~pâkkon toothbrush;	ذوحياتين	zuhayâtayn amphibian
دنيا	epezeshk dentist دندانپزشک <b>pezeshk</b> dentist donyâ this world; be ~ âma-	ذهن	zehn mind
دىي	dan to be born		
دو		رابع	râbe' fourth
9-	¶ do two	راجع به	râje' be about, concerning
دوا	•	راحت	râhat comfortable
دوازده دوازده		راديو	râdyo radio
دوچرخه دوچرخه		راست	r <b>âst</b> right, true (25); راستى -i
دوختن	<del>-</del>	1/1	truth
0 3	sew	•	râstkâr honest
دور	dur far, distant (5); ~ andâkh-	راسو	râsu weasel
	tan to throw away (16)	ران <i>دن</i> اندگ	
دوران	dawrân period (of time)	رانندگی	rânandegi driving; ~-kardan to drive
دوره	dawre turn	بانندم	rânande driver
دوره گرد	dawregard street seller,	راه	râh way, road (5); (be) ~~
	hawker	ر.ن	oftâdan to get under way, set
دوست			out (18); ~-raftan to walk,
	love (15)		go, proceed; ~nemudan to
دوسره			guide; راهنما ~nemâ guide
دوغلو		رای	ra'y management, planning
دولت	0 3	ربع	rob' quarter (12)
	ing to the state, government-	رحمت	rahmat mercy; ~-kardan to
دويدن			have mercy
دويدن ده	dah ten. J deh pl دهات -ât	رخ	rokh cheek
-	village (9). ¶ deh- pres. stem	رخساره	rokhsâre cheek
	of دادن.	رخت	rakht clothes, clothing
دهاتی	dehâti villager	رختخواب	rakhtekhâb bedclothes
دهان	dahân mouth		(sheets, blankets, &c.)
ديار	diâr region		radif row
دیدن	didan/jee bin- to see (6)	رزرو	rezerv reservation; ~-kardan to reserve
دیده		رساندن	
دير	dir late; ~-shodan to get late;	•	rastan/وهrastan/وهrastan/وه
-		رستن	- manual of the to coompo.

	<b>J rostan/رو ru-</b> to grow		generally
رستوران	restorân restaurant	روئيدن	ruidan to grow
رسیدن به	residan be to arrive at, reach		riâziyât mathematics
	(11)	ريختن	rikhtan/ريز riz- to pour; to
رشته	reshte noodle; field of special-	, •	fall to pieces
	ization	ريز	riz tiny. I riz- pres. stem of
رشد	roshd growth, maturity; ~-		ريختن
	kardan to grow, mature	ریش	ریشتراشی کردن; rish beard
رشيد	rashid eldest, grown		~tarâshi-kardan to shave
رغبت	raqbat delight, desirousness		the beard
رفتار	raftar conduct	ريواس	rivâs rhubarb
رفتن	raw- to go (7).	ريه	rie lung
• =	rub- to sweep روب/rub-	1.	A 11 a.s.
رفصيدن	raqsidan to dance	زار	zâr bitter(ly), wretched(ly)
رگ		زان	$z\hat{a}n = az \hat{a}n \text{ (poet.)}$
رل		زانو	zânu -ân knee
رم	ram skittish, not tame; ~-kar-	زاویه	zavâyâ corner, زوایا
رن <i>گ</i>	dan to shy off	le! .	angle, recess
•	rang color (16)		zâ'el ceasing
رو	raw- pres. stem of رفتن. ¶ ru	زبان	zabân tongue, language (7)
	face, aspect. ¶ ru- pres. stem of رستن	زحمت	•
. مان	ravân soul; روانشناسي ~she-		keshidan to go to trouble;
رورت	nâsi psychology; روانکاوی		bi ~ "if it's no bother," please
	~kâvi psychiatry	<i>زدن</i>	•
روباه		ردن	(10)
رو. روبروی		زرد	zard yellow (4)
روپوش	<del>=</del>		zardâlu apricot
روح	- 1 1 1 A1 11	•	zardchube turmeric
Cu	un- رُوحانيون ani pl رُوحاني	زرشک زرشک	zereshk barberries
	cleric	زرنگ	zerang clever, smart, wily (3)
روده	rude bowel		za'farân saffron
روز	ruz day (8); روزگار <b>~gâr</b> time;	•	zoqâl charcoal
	nâme newspaper روزنامه		zamân time, era (25)
4	(7)		zemestân winter (8)
روز کار	ruzgâr time	زمين	zamin land, earth, floor (17);
روستا	rustâ village	0	shenâsi geology~ زمینشناسی
روسری	rusari headscarf	زن	zan woman, wife (3). ¶ zan-
روشن	rawshan light, bright, clear;		jres. stem of زدن
	~kardan to turn on (lights)	زنبور	zambur bee
	(21)	زنجبيل	zanjabil ginger
روعن	rawqan oil (21) ru-ye on (6)	* 2	zanjir chain
روی رویهم	ru-ye on (0)		zendegâni life (9)
رويهم	ruyeham jumbled; رويهم vâ-raftan to col-	زندگی	zendegi life; ~-kardan to live
	-va-rantan to cor رویهمرفته; lapse		(7)
	mpoo, sur yeegy runto	<b>زنده</b>	zende alive

زن <i>گ</i>	zang bell; ~-zadan to ring	ستاره	-she ستارهشناسی; setâre star
زوبين	zubin javelin; زوبينبازي <b>~bâzi</b>		nâsi astronomy
	fighting with javelins	ستدن	
زود	zud early; quick, fast (8)	*	away
زودباور	zudbâvar gullible	ستون	
زور	zur force	سحر	- · · ·
زه	zeh bravo!		early riser
زهر	zahr poison; زهر هجر ~-e hajr		sakht hard; very (8) sokhan speech
.1 •	pangs of separation		sar head; beginning, end; سر
زياد	ziâd much; (with neg.) not much, not too (13)	سر	مر ,dar-âvordan درآوردن از
زيبا	zibâ beautiful		az to understand; سردرد
			~dard headache (23); بسر
زیپ زیر	<b>zir-e</b> under (23); زير گرفتن		ا بردن <b>be ~ bordan</b> to live. ¶
رير	zir-gereftan to run over		sor slip; ~-khordan to slip
زيرا (كه)	zírâ (ke) because	سرا	sarâ public building, official
رير, رت.	zirpush underwear		residence, palace
زيرپيراهن	zirpirâhan undershirt	سرازير	sarâzir headed down, rolling
	zirzamin basement	-	down
زيرزمين			sarâstin cuff (shirt)
زیرہ زیست	zist life; زیستشناسی ~shenâsi	سراغ	sorâq trace; ~-e kas-i-râ
ريست	biology		gereftan to look for, search
زيستن			for someone; be ~-e kas-i
زيلو			âmadan to come looking for
ريو زين	zin saddle. ¶ zin = از این		someone sorb lead
ريين	J. J. J.	سرب	sard cold (adj.) (8)
ساختمان	sâkhtemân building (13)	سرد	sarshir cream
ساختن		سرشير	sarshenâs well-known
0.5	make (22)	سرشناس سرک	sarak-keshidan to poke the
ساده	• •	سرت	head out
ساعت	sâ'ât hour; ساعات	سرگرم	
	clock (12)	سو فوم	~i hobby, amusement
ساعد	sâ'ed forearm	سرما	sarmâ cold (n.); ~-khordan
ساق	sâq leg	•	to catch cold
سال		سرمهای	sormei dark blue (4)
سالاد		سرگذشت	sargozasht adventure
سالم	sâlem sound, healthy	سرنوشت	sarnevesht fate
سانتيمتر	sântimetr centimeter	سروصدا	sarosedâ noise; ~kardan to
سايه	sâye shadow, shade		make noise
سبز	sabz green (4)	سروكار	sarokâr-dâshtan bâ to asso-
سبق	sabaq lesson	<del>-</del>	ciate with, to have to do with
سبيل	sebil mustache	سريع السير	sari'ossayr express
سايه سبز سبق سبيل سپردن	separ- to en- سپار/separ-	سعی	sa'y effort, attempt; ~-kardan
- •	trust		to try (20)
سپس	sepas then, consequently	سفال	sofâl clay, pottery

سفر	safar journey		<b>∼band</b> bra
س.ق. ۱.	sefid white (4)		
سقط	saqat revilement	شاخه	shâkhe branch
سكو	saqat revilement saku platform sag dog sagak buckle	شاد	shâd joyful, happy; شادمان
سگ	sag dog	•	<b>∼emân</b> glad
سگک	sagak buckle	شانزده	shânzdah sixteen
سلام	salâm greeting; ~-kardan be	شاعر	sha'er pl شعرا sho'arâ poet
1	to greet (23)	شاعر شاگرد	shâgerd pupil, apprentice
سلامت	salâmat healthy; سلامتي~i	شال	shâl shawl; سال گردن—e gar-
	health		dan scarf
سلطان	salâtin سلاطين salâtin	شام	shâm evening (9); evening
	sultan	,	meal (22)
•	samâjat obstinacy	شانه	
-	samandar salamander		shâh -ân king
	sanjâb squirrel	شاهنامه	Shâhnâme the Book of Kings
	sanjâq pin		by Abu'l-Qasim Firdawsi
سنگ	in سنگين ;sang stone, rock		(completed A.D. 1010)
- 14	heavy	شاهنشاه	υ,
سنگک	sangak pebble		emperor
سوار	savâr horseman, riding (vehi-		shấyad maybe (16)
	cle); ~-shodan to mount, get	شايستن	shâyestan/شای shây- to be
	in/on (vehicle); سواری 😽		proper
11.	horseman ship		shab night
سؤال	so'al -ât question; ~-kardan to ask questions (10)	شبأنهروز	shabâneruz day, 24 hours (12)
	suz- to burn سوز/sukhtan	شباهت	shebâhat resemblance; ~-
سود	sud profit		dâshtan be to resemble
سوداوي	sawdâvi melancholic	شبت	shebbet dill
سوراخ	surâkh hole	شپش	shepesh lice
سوراخ سوز سوسک	سوختن suz- pres. stem of	شتر	shotor camel
سوسک	susk beetle	شترمرغ	shotormorq ostrich
سه	se three	شخص	shepesh lice shotor camel shotormorq ostrich shakhs pl اشخاص ashkhâs
سی	si thirty		person
سی سیاه	siâh black (4)		sheddat intensity
سيب	sib apple; سیب زمینی <b>zamini</b> potato	شدن	shaw- to become شو/shaw- to become (9); be possible (3rd sing.)
سير	sir garlic. ¶ sir seer, 75 grams	شديد	shadid severe, intense
سيزده	sizdah thirteen	شراب	sharâb wine
سا	sayl flood, torrent	ر . شربت	-ashrebe po اشربه sharbat pl
سل	sili slap; ~-khordan to get	••	tion, drink
G.	slapped; ~-zadan to slap	شرت	short briefs
سیل سیلی سیم سیمان	sim wire	شرح	sharh explanation; شرح حال
سيمان	simân cement	٠	~e hâl biography
سينما	sinemâ cinema, movie theater	شرط	
*	(20)		dition, qualification (19); ~-
سينه	sine breast, chest; سينه بند		bastan to make a bet; ~-kar-

	dan to stipulate; بشرطی که	شهباز	shahbâz falcon
	be ~ike provided that (19)	شهر	shahr city (2); شهربانی ~bâni
شرق	sharq east, orient	• •	police headquarters; شهردار
شروع	shoru'-kardan be (+ inf.) to		<b>∼dâr</b> mayor
C	begin, start (20)	شىء	shay' pl اشياء ashyâ' thing,
شستن	shu- to wash (20) شو/shostan	_	article
شش شصت	shesh six	شير	shir milk; lion; شيرى <b>~i</b>
شصت	shast sixty		unweaned
شعار	sho'âr motto, slogan, emblem	شيراز	shirâz Shiraz
شغال	shaqâl jackel	شيرين	shirin sweet; مثيريني ~i sweets
شغل	shoql work, occupation	شیرین شیشه شیطان	shishe glass
شعل شفیع شقیقه شک شکار شکر شکستن	shafi' intercessor	شيطان	shayâtin شياطين shayâtin
شقيقه	shaqiqe temple		devil
شک	shakk doubt	شیمی	shimi chemistry
شكار	shekâr hunt	شيهه	shihe-keshidan to neigh
شکر	shekar sugar. ¶ shokr thanks		
شكستن	shekan- to شکن/shekan	صاحب	sâheb owner, master
		صبح	sobh morning, dawn; صبح
شكم	shekam belly, stomach	_	e <b>sâdeq</b> true dawn حادق
شكم شكوه	shokuh splendor; باشكوه bâ~	صبحانه	sobhâne breakfast (22)
	splendid	صبحدم	sobhdam the break of dawn
شل	shol loose, flabby	صبحدم صحبت	sohbat-kardan to speak, talk
شلاق	shallâq switch, crop		(15)
شلغم	shalqam turnip	صحت	sehhat health; ~-yaftan to
شلغم شلوار	shalvar trousers, pants; شلوار		recover
	e kattâni blue jeans سکتانی	صحن	
شلوغ شما	sholuq crowded (24)	صحيح	
شمآ	shomâ you (pl.)	صد	sad hundred
شماره	shomâre number (12)	صدا	sedâ sound, voice (7); ~-kar-
شمال	shemâl north		dan to call out to
شمد	shamad thin white sheet	_	sandali chair (1)
شمردن	shomar- to شمار/shomar	صورت	در انصورت :surat face; case
•	count		در غير ;dar ân ~ in that case
شمشير	shamshir sword; ~-zadan to		<ul> <li>dar qayr-e in ~</li> <li>othorwise: - beston to an</li> </ul>
	strike with a sword;		otherwise; <b>~-bastan</b> to appear, seem; to be possible
	zani sword-play~ شمشيرزني		pear, seem, to be possible
شناختن	shenâs- to شناس/shenâs		zedd opposite
	know, recognize (10)	ضد	zarb beat, beating; multiplica-
شنبليله	shambalile fenugreek	صرب	tion; ~ dar multiplied by
شنودن	شنیدن = shenudan	م ده	zarbe stroke (of a clock)
شنيدن	shenaw- to hear شنو/shenaw	ضربه ضرورت	zarurat necessity
	(6)	ضرورت	zarih grating around a saint's
شو		صريح	tomb
	شستن shu- pres. stem of	ضعف	za'f weakness
شوهر	shawhar husband	-	za'if thin, skinny, weak
		ضعیف	za i um, samiy, weak

طاة	tâq arch	( .~c	ajab amazement; ~ âmadan
	tâlebi melon, cantaloupe	حبب	to be amazing
	tâvus peacock	عجب	ajib strange
	tebb medicine; طبی ~i		adad number, unit
حب	medical		adas lentils
طبقه	tabaqe -qât class, stratum	•	adl justice
	tabib pl اطبا atebbâ doctor	_	ozr pardon; ~khâstan to beg
	tabi'at nature; طبيعة ~an	عدر	pardon
طبيعت	naturally	ء ائض	arâ'ez pl of عريضه
طسعى	tabl'i natural	ر بن عرض	
<b>–</b>	tarz manner	0 7	humbly
	taraf direction; ~-e toward	عرضه	arze display; ~-dâshtan to
	(25)	•	display (wares)
طشت	tasht tub	عريضه	arâ'ez عرائض arâ'ez
طفل	tefl pl اطفال atfâl child;		petition
	<b>ak</b> poor kid~ طفلک		azâ mourning
طلا	talâ gold; طلائی →i golden	_	عاشق oshsh <b>âq</b> pl of
طلب			ashâyeri tribal
	dan to demand, ask for	عشق	eshq love
	atvâr manner اطوار tawr pl	عصب	a'sâb nerve اعصاب asab pl
		عصباني	asabâni angry; عصبانيت ~yat
	taw' willingness		anger
طول	tul length; ~-keshidan to last	عصر	asr late afternoon
		عضله	azalât mus- عضلات azalât mus-
ظاهر	zâher apparent; ~-shodan to		cle
	appear; ~kardan to make	عضو	
	apparent	1 ==	the body)
طرف	zarf dish, container (15); ~-e	عقاب	
1.	within	عقيده	aqâyed belief عقاید او
طهر	qabl az قبل از ظهر ;zohr noon	علاج	elâj treatment ellat pl علل elal malady
	~ A.M.; بعد از ظهر <b>ba'd az ~</b> P.M.	علت	ellat pi علل elal malady
	F.IVI.	علف	
ماء	fior incomple	علم	
	âjez incapable âdat pl عادات -dất custom,	علوم	olum science; علوم سياسيe
عادت	habit	ı	siâsi political science
عادا	âdel just		Ali Ali (5)
عادی	âdi ordinary	عليزاده	Alizâde Alizadeh (family
	asheq pl عشاق oshshaq lover,	- ا -	name)
عاسق	in love; ~-e kas-i shodan to	عمامه	amâme turban
	fall in love with s.o.	عمر	omr life, age
عالم	âlam world	عمل	amal pl اعمال a'mâl act,
عاميانه	âmmiâne common, colloquial		deed, job; ~-kardan be to act on
	abâ sleeveless cloak	عمله	amale pl عملجات -jât worker
عده،	obur-kardan to cross,		amu paternal uncle
حبور	traverse	عمو عدد	amme paternal aunt
	07/	عمه	amme paternar aunt

عنكبوت	ankabut spider	فتنه	fetne sedition; فتنه انگيز ~an-
عورات	awrât private parts, genitals		giz seditious
عوض	avaz-kardan to change (trs.)	فراخ	farâkh broad
•	(21)	فرار	farâr-kardan to run away
عهده	ohde responsibility; az ~ bar-	فراغت	
•	âmadan to accomplish	فراگرفتن	farâ-gereftan to seize, over-
عيب	ayb pl عيوب oyub fault, flaw		take
عينک	aynak eyeglasses; عينك	فراموش	farâmush forgetting; ~-kar-
-	ت <b>e dudi</b> dark glasses		dan to forget (13)
		فراموشكار	farâmushkâr forgetful
غارت	qârat plunder	فربه	farbeh fat, fatted
غاز	qâz goose	فرخ	farrokh splendid
	qobâr dust	فرد	afrâd individual افراد fard pl
غذا	qazâ food (16)	فربه فرخ فرد فردا	fardâ tomorrow, next day (10)
غرب	qarb west	فرستادن	ferest- to فرست/ferest
غرش	qorresh growling	_	send, dispatch (22)
غرق	qarq-shodan to sink, drown;	فرسن <i>گ</i>	farsang league, ca. 6 km.
	<b>e khâb</b> sound <b></b>	فر <i>ش</i>	farsh-kardan to furnish
	asleep	فرصت	forsat opportunity
غروب	qorub sunset	فرق	farq difference; ~-kardan to
غريب	qarib strange, stranger		make a difference; ~-dâsh-
غش	qash fainting; ~-kardan to		tan bâ to be different from
	faint		(20)
	qalt toss; ~-zadan to toss	فرما	
<del></del>	qaltidan to toss and turn	فرمان	
غم	qam grief; ~-khordan to		~bardâr obedient
	grieve (20); غمانگيز <b>~angiz</b>	فرمايش	ât فرمایشات farmâyesh pl
	tragic		order, command
غنيمت	qanimat good opportunity; ~- shomordan to make the	فرمود <i>ن</i>	farmudan/فرما farmâ- to or- der, command
	most of, take advantage of an	فرنگی	
	opportunity	• • •	foru down; ~-afkandan to
غہ	qu swan	فرو	throw down; ~-rikhtan to
غو، باغه	qurbâqe frog		sink; ~-kardan to shove
	qayr other (-e, az than)		down; ~-mandan to fail; to
حير	quy i omor ( ey un man)		be left behind
فارسي	fârsi Persian (language) (7)	فروختن	forukhtan/فروش forush- to
	fâreq free, unencumbered; ~-		sell (11)
فارغ	shodan az to get free of	فرودگاه	forudgâh airport (22)
فاصله	fâsele the distance between	فروشگاه	forushgâh department store
	any two things; X ~-dâshtan	فروشنده	forushande seller, salesperson
	bâ to be X distant from (13)	فرهن <i>گ</i>	farhang culture
فاضل	fazel pl فضلا fozalâ learned	فرياد	faryâd shout, cry; ~-zadan to
-	man		shout
فايده	favayed ad- فواید favayed	فشار	feshâr pressure; ~- âvordan
	vantage, benefit (20)		be to apply pressure to

فشردن	feshar- to فشار/feshar- to press		~ az in-ke before (conj.) (22); -e ~ ago
فد ا	fazl learning	1 5	
	fe'lan at present	قبول ق <i>د</i> ر	qadr amount, extent (14);
	faqat only (24)	<i>و</i> در ،	به ب
فقط	faqir pl فقرا foqarâ poor		an extent that (24)
فقير فكر	fekr pl افکار afkâr thought,	قدم	qadam pace; ~zadan to walk
فحر	idea (19); ~-kardan to think	1	about 244411 to walk
	(16)	قديم	qadim ancient
فلان	folân so-and-so	قديمٰي	qadimi old (1)
فلز	felez metal	قرار	qarâr stability; ~-dâshtan to
فلسفه	falsafe philosophy		be situated; ~-gereftan to
فلفل	felfel pepper		settle, be stable; ~-gozâshtan
فن	fonun skill, art فنون fann pl		to fix on a time, make a date;
فنجان	fenjân cup (15)	• ( *	az ~e at the rate of
فن ٔ فنجان فور	an im-فورًا ,fawr immediacy	قربا <b>ن</b>	qorbân sacrifice
	mediately; فورى immedi-	قرقاول قرقاول	qarqâvol pheasant
	ate, urgent	فرمز	qermez red (4)
فوق	fawq-e above; فوقش ~-esh at	قرینه قشن <i>گ</i>	qarine twin, matching
	e lisâns منوق ليسانس;most	قشنگ	qashang pretty, beautiful
	master's degree	قصاب	qassab butcher
فهرست	fehrest index	فسن <i>ت</i> قصا <i>ب</i> قضیه قضیه	<b>qesas</b> story قصص qesse pl
فهم	فهمیدن ;fahm understanding	قضيه	qaziye pl قضايا qazâyâ affair
, .	∼idan to understand (10)	فطار	qatâr train
فيزيک	fizik physics	قفل	qofi lock
فيل	fil elephant	قلب	qalb heart
فيلسوف	faylasuf pl فلاسفه falâsefe philosopher	قفل قلب قلع و قمع	qal'oqam'-kardan to exter- minate, wipe out
فيلم	film film, movie (20)	قلعى	qal'i tin
فينه	fine fez		aqlâm pen (1) اقلام
		قلم قلیا <i>ن</i>	qalyân water pipe, hookah
قابل ذكر	qâbel-e zekr worthy of	قنات	qanât canal
	mention	قند	qand lump sugar
قادر	qâder capable (bar of)	قوى	qavi strong, powerful (19)
قارچ	qârch mushroom	قهوه	gahve coffee (11); قهوهای
قاش	qâsh horn of a saddle		رنگ <b>~irang</b> coffee-colored,
قاشق	qâshoq spoon (15)		dark brown; قهوهخانه
قاطر	qâter mule	•, •	~khâne coffeehouse
قاعده	qava'ed rule; قواعد	قيافه	qiâfe face, mien
	be ~ according to rule, as it	قير قيلوله	qir tar
	should be		qaylule noontime nap
قبا	قبادراز ;qabâ coat, greatcoat	قيمت	qaymat/qimat price, value
1 7	~darâz wearing a long coat		(14)
قبل	qabl before; قبلا ~an before	/	Table 1 table 4.1 cm
	(adv.) (15); قبل از ~az be- fore (prep.) (10); قبل از اینکه	کار	kâr work, job; thing (7); ~-
	فبل از ایسه ۱۵۱۰ (۱۵۱۰) (۱۵۱۰ ا		kardan to work, to do some-

	* <b>be ب</b> ه کار بردن ;(7)	_	on hire
	bordan to use, employ (22)	كردن	-kon- "to do,"
كارت			forms compound verbs
	e'tebâr credit card	كرفس	karafs celery
كارخانه		0 /	karkas vulture
	factory	کرم	kerm worm; کرم شبتاب ~-e
کارد		•	shabtab firefly
کارگر	kârgar worker	کرہ	kare butter. ¶ korre colt
كاروان		کژُدم کس کساد	kazhdom scorpion
کاسب		کس'	kas person, one (13)
کاش	kâsh-ki would کاشکی,	كسآد	kasâd slow (market); کسادی
_	that		~i slump (in market)
کاشی	kâshi glazed tile	کش	
كاغذ	kâqaz paper; page		کشتن <b>kosh-</b> pres. stem of
كاغذبازى	kâqazbâzi paper-shuffling	كشت	kesht-shodan to be cultivated
كامل		كشتن	kâr- to plant.
_	املا <b>~an</b> completely, per-		kosh- to kill کش/kosh- to
	fectly (2)		(19)
کان	*	کشتی	keshti boat, ship keshmesh raisin
کاوش	kâvesh scraping; ~-kardan to	كشمش	keshmesh raisin
_	scrape	كشور	keshvar country (1) keshidan to draw, pull (17)
کاه	k <b>âh</b> straw; کاهگل <b>~gel</b> mud-	كشيدن	keshidan to draw, pull (17)
	brick	کف	kaff palm; کف زمین ~-e za-
كاهو			min floor
كباب	دکان; kabâb grilled meat		kaftår hyena
	dokkân-e ~pazi کبابپزی	كفش	kafsh shoe; حفش کتانی ~-e
	grill shop	_	kattâni sneakers
كبوتر		كفن	
كبود		كلاس	kelâs class, classroom (11);
کیل	kapal buttocks		sar-e ~ in class, to سر کلاس
کت	•		class (17)
كتاب			kelâsik classic, classical
كتابخانه			kalâq crow
کتان			kalâfe impatient, out of sorts
كته	•		kalântari police station
كثافت		كلاه	
كثافتكار	kasâfatkâr messy	كلفت	kolfat maid. ¶ koloft thick
كثيف	kasif dirty (23)	کلم پیچ	kalampich cabbage
کج	kaj crooked	تلمه	mât word- کلمات kaleme pl
كجا	kojâ where (2)	کلنگی	kolangi-kardan to crook
كجاوه	kajâve camel litter	كليد	kelid key, switch (22)
كدام	kodâm which? (8)	كليه	kolliye totality
كدو'	kadu squash	سلحی کلید کلیه کم	kam little; ~-dâdan to give
کج کجاوہ کجاوہ کدام کدو کراوات	kerâvât necktie	•	too little, to shortchange
كرايه	kerâye rent; ~-dâdan to rent		کم کم (14); <b>kam-kam</b> little by little; کمتر <b>-tar</b> less; sel-
	out; ~kardan to rent, take	75	oy nine; ممر <b>~tar</b> less; sei-
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		

	dom	گچ	gach chalk, piece of chalk (1);
كمر	kamar waist, back		plaster
	kamarband belt	گدا	-نه گدائی کردن ;gadâ beggar
کمک	komak help; ~-kardan to help	گذاشتن	kardan to beg gozâshtan/گذار gozâr- to put,
كممايه	kammâye petty, with little capital	گذر	place (10); let, allow (16) gozar passage; ~-kardan bar
كمند	kamand lasso; <b>~-andâkhtan</b> to throw a lasso; کمنداندازی	گذراندن	to pass by gozarândan to spend (time)
	~andâzi lasso-throwing		(14)
کن	کردن kon- pres. stem of	گذشتن	gozar- az to گذر/gozar-
كنآر	kenâr side, edge		pass by, go beyond (12)
كنج	konj corner	گِذشته	gozashte past, last (12)
كنجكاو	konj corner konjkâv curious	گراز	gorâz boar
کنگر	kangar cardoon konye nickname, patronymic kubidan to tap, pound kutâh short, low (8)	گرّان	
کنیه	konye nickname, patronymic		kharidan to pay خریدن
كوتيدن	kubidan to tap, pound	4	too much
كوتاه	kutâh short, low (8)	<b>گربه</b>	gorbe cat
كوچک	kuchek little, small (1)	گرد	gard- pres. stem of گشتن.
کو حه	kuche lane		¶ gard dust. ¶ gerd round,
کوچه کودک	kudak child		~e around (prep.), ~
کور کور	kur blind	۰ ا	âmadan to gather round
کوزہ	kuze jug, pitcher	کرداندن	gardândan to turn (trs.) gardan neck; گردنبند ~band
كوشش	kushesh attempt; ~kardan to	دردن	
حو سن	make an effort		necklace
كوشيدن		کردو ۔	gerdu walnut
	kub- to pound	گردیدن	
کوفتن کوکبه	kawkabe entourage		stitutes for shodan in com-
کوه ٔ	kuh mountain (1)	گر سنه	pounds gorosne hungry (24)
کوی	kuy lane		
که	ke that (conj.) (9); when; for	گر <sup>ّ</sup> فتار گرفتن	gereftan اگیر/gir- to take,
كهنه	kohne old (3)	ترفين	grasp, seize (6)
کی	kay when? (10). ¶ ki who (4)	گ گ	gorg wolf
كيلو	kilo kilogram	گھ	garm warm, hot (8). ¶ gram
كيلوگرم	kilogram kilogram	12	gram
کیلومتر ا	kilometr kilometer	گ ما	garmâ warmth, heat
كيف	kif bag; کیف دستی ~e dasti	گرما گرنه	garna otherwise (23)
- 4	handbag	گره	gereh knot; ~-zadan to tie a knot
گالثہ	gâlosh galoshes	گ هدار	gerehdâr knotted
گالش گاو گاومیش	gâv cow	گرستن	geristan/گری gery- to cry
گاه میش	gâvmish water buffalo	کریسس گ	gerye weeping; ~-kardan to
عاوسیس گاه	gâh time; گاه gâh gâḥ	تريه	cry (20)
80	from time to time; گاهی ~-i	٠٠٠٠ €	gorikhtan/گريز goriz- to flee
	occasionally, once	کری <del>ح</del> س گ.	gaz yard (measure)
	occupionary, once	نز	gaz yaru (measure)

گزاردن	gozârdan to put, place,		ceive, fool
. 4	submit	گِوناگو <i>ن</i>	gunâgun various gune cheek gij dizzy, spinning gir- pres. stem of گرفتن gir-oftâdan to get caught
كشاد	goshâd wide	<b>ِ</b> گونه	gune cheek
گشتن	gashtan/گرد/gard- to turn	گیج	gij dizzy, spinning
4	(int.)	ِگير	گرفتن gir- pres. stem of
گشنیز	_	گیر افتادن	gir-oftâdan to get caught
گشادن	goshâ- to گشا/gosha- to	گيلاس	gilâs cherry
. 4	open, untie		
كشودن	goshudan/گشا goshâ- to	لازم	lâzem necessary (16)
1.1	open, widen goftogu talk, dialogue goftan/گو gu- to say (9)	لاستيك	lâstik rubber
رهتکو	goitogu talk, dialogue	لاشه	lâshe corpse lâ'elâj with no alternative,
كفتن	goftan/گegu- to say (9) gel mud, clay. I gol flower,	لاعلاج	lâ'elâj with no alternative,
کل	gel mud, clay. I gol flower,	_	nothing to do but
	rose; للجين <b>~cnin</b> carefully,	لأغر	lâqar thin, skinny
	not: 41 2 Schane green-	لاك پشت	
	rose; گلچين <b>~chin</b> carefully, gingerly; گلدان <b>~dân</b> flower- pot; گلدان <b>~khâne</b> green- house; گل کلم <b>~kalam</b> cauli-	لای	lâ-ye in between
	flower	لب	lab lip
گلاد		لباس	lab lip lebâs clothes (16) lape split peas
کلابی گلگیر گلو گلیم گم	gelgir fender	لپه	lape split peas
گله	galu throat	لج	lajj obstinacy; -kardan to be
گلىم	gelim flat-woven rug		obstinate
گد	gom lost; ~shodan to get	لحظه	lahazât mo- لحظات lahazât
1	lost; ~-kardan to lose (15)		ment
گمان			larzidan to tremble, shake
	Industrial and the factor of the second disco	لطف	lotf kindness; interest
گناه	gonâh crime, sin		laklak stork
گنبد	gombad dome		lubiâ string bean
گنحشک	gonjeshk sparrow	-	law-dâdan to inform on
گو ُ	gu- pres. stem of گفتن	لوطي	luti tough, ruffian
گناه گنبد گنجشک گو گوارا گوچه	govârâ palatable	له	leh mashed, squashed; ~
گوچه	gawje green-gage plum; گوجههٔ		shodan to get mashed
		ليتر	litr liter
کور	gur grave; کورستان ~estân	ليز	liz slippery; ~-khordan to
	graveyard	,t t	slip, slide
_گو <b>ز</b>	gawz walnut		lisâns bachelor's degree
كِوساله	gusâle calf	بيحن	likan but, however
كُوسفند	gusfand sheep	ليمو	limu lemon; ليموسبز ~sabz lime
گوش	gush ear; ~dâdan to listen	ليوان	livân glass, tumbler (15)
گُوش	(10); <b>~kardan be</b> to listen	نيوات	ntan glass, tullioloi (13)
. 4	to	1.	mâ we, us
كوشت	gusht meat	من دا ـا	, ,
كوشواره	gushvâre earring	ماجرا مادر	
<u>گوشه</u>	gushe corner	مادر مادیا <i>ن</i>	
کول	gul deception; ~khordan to	مادیات	
	be deceived; ~-zadan to de-	مار	mar shake

٠			
مارمولک	mârmulak lizard		e defined period of محدوده
	mâst yoghurt		time
	mâshin car, automobile (21)	محصور	mahsur surrounded, enclosed
مال	mâl pl اموال amvâl property,	محض ,	
	o ~ مال و منال;possession	محفوظ	
11.11	manâl possessions	محكم	mohkam tight, fast, hard
	mâlikhulyâ melancholia	محل `	mahall place; محله ~e quarter
-	mâlidan to rub		of a city
مامور ما <i>ن</i>	ma'mur -in agent	محو	mahv obliteration; ~-shodan to be obliterated
من	m <b>ân-</b> pres. stem of ماندن. <b>J mân-</b> pres. stem of مانستن	ه حد طه	mohavvate enclosure
ماندن	mândan/مان mân- to remain,	محوطه محيط	mohit milieu
020	stay (10); (neg.) to cease to	مخيط	makhsusan especially
	exist	محصوصا	medâd pencil
مانستن به	mânestan/مان mân- be to	مداد	moddat period of time (24)
, <i>O</i>	resemble		madrase school; ~-raftan to
مانند	mânand-e like (prep.)	مدرسه	go to school, attend school
ماه	mâh moon, month (12)		(7)
ماهی	mâhi fish	مراجعه	• •
مايع	mâye' liquid	9	tion; ~-kardan be to consult
مايو مايو	mâyo bathing suit	مراقب	morâqeb watchful
مايه	mâye capital, base		
متأسف	mota'assef sorry; متاسفانه	مرتب	marâm goal morattab constant, continual
	~âne regrettably	ر. مرتبه	marâteb مراتب marâteb
متبرک	motabarrek blessed		be marâteb بمرأتب
متر	metr meter		much (with comparatives)
متروک	matruk abandoned	مرتكب	
متقاطع	motaqâte' intersecting		(crime, sin)
مثقال	mesqâl mithcal, a small	مرد	mard man (3)
	weight	مرداد	mordâd midsummer month
مثل	masal pl امثال amsâl likeness;	مردک	mardak fellow
	~an for example. ¶ mesl-e	مردم	mardom people (11);
	like (prep.) (13); مثل اینکه ~		-shenâsi anthro مردمشناسی
11.	e in-ke as though (20) majâl opportunity	۷., .	pology
- •		-	mardomak pupil (of the eye)
-	majâni free, gratis majbur obliged (25)	مردن	mir- to die (14)
مجبور	majalle -lât magazine	مرز	marz border; مرزبان <b>~bân</b> border guard
مجه	moch wrist, ankle	Δο.μ.Δ	marsum customary
سچ محافظ	mohâfez guardian, chaperone	1	maraz pl امراض amrâz dis-
محاکد محاکمه	mohâkeme judgment; ~-kar-	بمرض	ease, illness
المال حياة	dan to sentence	مرغ	morq chicken
محال	mohâl absurd, impossible	مرگ موگ	marg death; مرگ و مير ~ o
	mohâvere discussion	- )	mir death and dying
محبت	mahabbat affection, kindness	مرور	morur review
محدود	mahdud limited, delineated;	روو مریض	mariz sick (15)
,	279		

	maryam Maryam (5) mazra'e pl مزارع mazâre' farm		ma'lul diseased, afflected ma'lum known, of course; ~-
مزرغه	farm	معلوم	
	farm	1-	
			shodan to become known,
	mozmen chronic		be found out
		م. ا م	me'mâri architecture
مزه	maze taste		
	mozhe eyelash	•	ma'mulan usually (17)
مس	mes copper	معنى	ma'nâ or ma'ni pl معاني
مسآفر	mes copper mosâfer traveler		ma'âni meaning
	mosâferat travel; ~kardan to	معوج	mo'avvaj crooked
است عرب	travel	معيوب	ma'yub faulty
.ที			maqz brain
مساله	maså'el مسائل masâ'el		
	problem		mofâveze deliberation
مسجد	masjed mosque	مفصل	mofassal elaborate
مسخره	maskhare derisive; ~kardan	مفيد	mofid useful (3)
-	az to mock	مقايل	moqâbel opposite, facing
مسلک	maslak career	مقام مقام	maqâm -ât position
	mosallam certain	مقایسه مقایسه	moqâyese comparison; ~-kar-
		مفايسه	
مشت	mosht fist, fistful; ~-zadan to		dan to compare
_	zani boxing~ مشتزنی ;box	مقدار	•
مشترك	moshtarek in common	مقدمه	mât- مقدمات moqaddeme pl
مشتري	moshtari customer		preliminaries
مشغول	mashqul busy, occupied (20)	مقصود	maqsud intention, goal
	mashq practice; مشقى <b>~i</b> for		moqavvâ cardboard
	practice	مقوا مگر	<del>-</del>
1/.	practice	محر	mágar interrogative particle
	moshkel difficult, problematic		(23); except; perhaps; ~ in-
مشهور	mashhur famous, well-known	4	ke unless (19)
	(3); pl مشاهیر mashâhir	مگس	magas fly
	well-known person	مگسکش	magaskosh fly-swatter
مصلحت	maslahat pl مصابح masâleh	مل <i>ت</i>	melal nation ملل melat pl
	one's best interest, best	ما∸	malakh locust, grasshopper
	course of action, prudence;	مل <del>خ</del> ملک	malak al Chimaluk kina
	âmiz prudent مصلحتاً ميز	منک	
	mosibat catastrophe	•	¶ molk kingdom
***		ملي	melli national
مطلب	matlab pl مطالب matâleb	ممكن	momken possible (16)
	matter (17)	مملكت	ممالک mamlakat pl
مطمئن	motma'enn sure, certain (19)		mamâlek country
مطیع معاصر	moti' obedient	من	man I, me. ¶ man maund, 3
معاص	mo'âser contemporary	<i>3</i>	kilograms
-	ma'âlejat treatment	. 1	menâre minaret
س جب	me'de stomach		
معده	me de stomach		montazer waiting, expecting
معدرت	ma'zarat apology; ~-khâstan		mondarejât contents
4 -	to apologize	منزل	manâzel sta- منازل manâzel sta-
معر که گیر	ma'rekegir acrobat	-3	tion, residence
معروف به	ma'ruf be known as/for (25)	منطقه	manâteq مناطق manâteq
معظم	ma'ruf be known as/for (25) mo'azzam magnificent mo'allem -in teacher (4)		region
ستمتم	mo'allem -in teacher (A)	·	region man'-kardan to forbid
معتم	mo anem -m teacher (4)	منع درد <i>ن</i>	man -karuan to fordiu
	2	79	

منقل	manqal brazier	ناخير	nâkhon fingernail
مو	mu hair	نارنگی	nârangi tangerine
مۇثر	mo'asser influential	ناسدا	nâsazâ improper
موجود	mawjud existent, being		nâshenâs unfamiliar
ەر. مۇدب	mo'addab polite	نا <i>گھان</i>	nâgahân suddenly
مورچه	murche ant	نام ْ	_
موريانه	muriâne termite	نامزد	nâmzad fiancé(e)
موز	mawz banana	نامور	nâmvar renowned
موسير	musir shallot	نامه	nâme letter (8)
موسيقى	musiqi music	ناميدن	nâmidan to name
_	mush mouse		nân bread
	movaffaq successful	ناهار	nâhâr midday meal (22)
موفقيت	movaffaqiyat success	نتيجه	natije pl نتايج natâyej result,
موقع	mavâqe' مواقع mavâqe		conclusion; be ~ residan to
•	time, opportunity (25)		come to a conclusion
	mohr seal	نثر	
-	mehrbân kind	نخ	nakh thread; نخنما ~nomâ
مهم	mohemm important (11); pl		threadbare
• •	at important affairs مهمات	نخست	71 /
	mehmân guest	1	vazir prime minister ~ وزير
مهندس	مهندسی; mohandes engineer	ىخل 	nakhl date palm
	~i engineering	نحود	nokhud chickpea nokhudsabz green peas
	mahib frightful, terrifying		
میان	miân middle; ~e between, among	تحیر ندا	nákhayr no (2)
مانه	miâne midst	133	nedâ proclamation; ~dâdan to herald
		۱. م	narm soft
میخ م.خک	mikh nail, peg mikhak cloves	ترم نزدیک	nazdik close, near (5); نزدیکی
	maydân field, open space;	- 1-5-	~i vicinity; ~-budan (+
•	city square		subj.) to be on the verge of
مير	مردن mir- pres. stem of		(24)
ميز		نسبت	nesbat relationship; نسبت به
میگو	maygu shrimp		~ be relative to (25)
ميل	miz table, desk (1) maygu shrimp mayl inclination; ~-dâshtan		nesbatan relatively (3)
	to be inclined	نشان	neshân indication, trace; ~-
ميمون	maymun monkey		d <b>âdan</b> to show (14); نشانی
ميوه	mive -jât fruit (9)	Acrel As	~i description, address
		نشاندن	neshândan to make sit down; quench; quell (24)
نااميد	nâomid despondent, hopeless	نشانه	neshâne target; ~-gereftan to
ناپدید	nâpadid invisible; ~-shodan	-5 aa5	take aim at
	to disappear (19)	نشستن	neshastan/نشين neshin- to
ناجور	nâjur inappropriate, wrong,	<i></i>	neshaste bu- نشسته بودن;
ناجار	out of place		dan to be seated, to be sitting
ناچار	nâchâr helpless; بناچار be ~		(18)
	there was nothing to do but	نشيمن	neshiman home, nest

نصف	nesf half (12)		(15)
نظر	nazar sight, view; be ~ âma-	نوک	nuk beak
•	dan to seem (24); ~-kardan	نوكر	nawkar manservant
	to gaze; بنظر <b>be ~-e</b> in the		nawmidi hopelessness
	opinion of	نه	na no. آ نهنه nana nei-
نعره	na're shout; ~-zadan to cry		thernor. ¶ neh- pres. stem
	out		of نهادن. <b>¶ noh</b> nine
نعلين	na'layn sandals	نهادن	neh- to place, put
	na'nâ' mint	نهارِ	nahâr wasting away
	naft oil, kerosene	نهنگ	nahang alligator, crocodile
نفر	nafar person (12)	نيز	-niz too, also nayze spear; ~-andâkhtan to
نفس	nafas breath; ~keshidan to	نيزه	
	breathe		نیزه اندازی ;throw a spear
نقد	naqd cash		~andâzi spear-throwing
نقره	noqre silver	نيست	nist is not
نقطه	noqat dot, point نقط noqte pl	نيستي	nisti nonexistence
نقل	naql narration; ~-kardan to	نیک	نيکو = nik
. 4	relate, narrate	نيكمحضر	nikmahzar of good counsel
نگاشتن	negâshtan/نگار negâr- to re-	نيكو	niku good, well
.//	cord	نيم	nim half (12)
نگاه	negâh gaze, look; ~-kardan	نيمٰكت	nimkat bench
	to look (at) (11)		
نگران	negarân worried	_	-o/va- and
نکه	negah = نگاه; ~-dâshtan to	واجب	vâjeb urgent, necessary
1. 1.	stop, hold, keep (22)	وارد	vâred-shodan be to come in,
نگهداری 	negahdâri-shodan to be kept		enter (16)
ىمار	namâz ritual prayer; نماز خواندن <b>khândan</b> to pray	وارفتن	vâ-raftan to collapse vâ-sukhtan to burn out
24.1 :		وأسوختن	vâ-sukhtan to burn out
نمایا <i>ن</i> نمک	namak salt	واقعا	-
	nemudan/نا nemâ- to seem,	واقعه	vaqaye' وقايع
نمودن	appear; to represent (19)		event, occurrence (18)
41	nemune example, sample (14)	وأقف	
نمون	naw new (1)	وای	vây exclamation of woe (8)
نو نمانه	navâzesh caress; ~-kardan to	وجب	vajab handspan
<i>توارس</i>	caress; ~gar caressing	وجود	vojud existence; body; ~-
نہ ہے	nawbat turn		dâshtan to exist
توجه نوحه	nawhe wailing, lamentation;	وحشت	وحشت برم ;vahshat terror
~ 5	khândan to سوحه خواندن		bar-am dâsht I was gripped by terror; ~-kardan/
	wail		dâshtan az to be terrified by
نود	navad ninety		vadi'at deposit for
ر نور	nur light	وديعت	safekeeping
رر نوزده	nuzdah nineteen	•.*å a	var-raftan be to tinker, fiddle
نوشتن	nevis- to نویس/neveshtan	وررس	with
ار ن	write (7)	ورود	vorud entrance
نوع	naw' pl انواع anvâ' sort, kind	ورو۔ وزارت	vezârat ministry; وزارتخانه
ی	3		

	~khâne ministry	هفده	hivdah seventeen
وزرا		هل	hel cardamom
وزش	<u> </u>	هلو	holu peach
وزيدن		هم	
وزير		Y	also (6); ham- same; همان
•	vizier		~an that very, that same (11);
وسط	vasat middle		anjâ right there همانجا
	vasi' wide, broad, expansive		<b>antawr</b> just مما نطور ;(15)
وسيع وسيله	vasâyel وسايل vasâyel		like that; هما نطور که <b>-ân</b>
	means		tawrke just as (16); همين
وصله	vasle patch		~in this very, this same (11);
وضع وعده	awzâ' situation اوضاع vaz' pl		<b>-chonân</b> nonethe همچنان less
	va'de promise	A~ A	hamcho just like
وفات	vafât death	مبدیگر همدیگر	hamdigar each other (6)
وقت		هماه	hamrâh companion; ~e
	<b>ike</b> when وقتي که ;(13)	•	along with (16)
,	dar ~ at once در وقت;(11)	همسال	hamsâl contemporary, of the
ول		•	same age
1.	turn loose	همسايه	gân- همسایگان hamsâye pl
ولی وهله	váli but (2) vahle instance		neighbor (13)
_	vay (archaic and literary) he,	همسر	hamsar spouse
وی	she	همشيره	
			hamkelâsi classmate
هجده	hizhdah eighteen	همه	hame all, every; همه چيز
هجری	hejri of the Hegira		~chiz everything (8)
هجوم	hojum attack; ~- avordan be		hamishegi never-ending
15.5	to attack	هميشه	= : *
هدف	hadaf goal, target	همين	hamin this very, this same;
ھر	har every, each (8); هرچند		همينجا <b>~jâ</b> right here;
	~chand however (20) much;		همینکه ~ke as soon as;
	هرچه <b>~che</b> whatever (20);	هدا مانه	مينطور <b>~tawr j</b> ust so ا <b>hendavâne</b> watermelon
	هركجا <b>~kojâ</b> wherever (20);	هندوانه د.	
	هرکه <b>~ke</b> whoever (20);	هنر	honar art, skill; منرهای زیبا ye zibâ fine arts; هنرمند
	kodâm each one هركدام		~mand artful, skillful,
	(8); هروقت <b>~vaqt</b> whenever		artisan
هر گز	(20)	هنگام	hangâm time, moment; ~-e at
	hargez (+ neg.) never	1	the time of
هزار هزاریا	hezâr, hazâr thousand hazârpâ centipede	هنوز	hanuz still, yet (13)
• -	hasti existence	هوا	havâ air, atmosphere, weather
هستی هشت	hasht eight		(21)
هشتاد	hashtâd eighty	هواپيما هوس هول شدن	havâpaymâ airplane (22)
هفت	haft seven; هفت تير ~tir pistol	هوس	havas passion, fancy
هفتاد	haftâd seventy	هول شدن	hawl-shodan to be terrified,
	· ·		startled, flustered
هفته	hafte week (12)		

(19); ~-dâdan to teach; ~havu relationship of a second هو و gereftan to learn (19) wife to the first in a polyga-mous marriage vârabb O Lord! havij carrot hayâhu uproar, ado yâftan/باب yâb- to find (21) hich no, nothing (8); هيچکس **~kas** nobody (13); هينچو قت ~vaqt ever, (+ neg.) never ya'ni i.e., that is, that means (11)y**â** or (9) yek one (adj.); مكباره ~bâre all at once; یکدیگر **~digar** each other (6); یکسره **~sare** 

one-way; يكوڤت ~vaqt all at once; يكوڤت -i one (pronoun)

یافتن yâb- pres. stem of یاب yâd memory (19); be ~ âvordan to recall; سادم آمد ~am âmad I remembered (19); سادم رفت ~am raft I forgot

#### Index

-â (verbal adjective) §65.2 -che (diminutive suffix) §77 -â (vocative enclitic) §81 -chi (agent suffix) §65.4(2) Academic fields, p. 143 Chist §19 -âd (archaic optative) §80 Cho(n) §85 Âdam (impersonal pronoun) §58 Circumpositions §83 Adjectives, abstraction of §66; attribu-Clauses, absolute §53; relative §40 tive §8.1, §14; comparative §31; Clothing, articles of, p. 113 comparison of §31; compounds §67; Compounds. See Nouns, Verbs demonstrative §9, §25(c); demon-Conditional types §61, §87 strative, with d §79; in  $\hat{a}ne$  §68; Conjunctions, concessive §55.2(b): infinitival §74; order of §14.2, §6; coordinating §11; ke, temporal uses superlative §31.3; with nonspecific of §57; provision §55.2(b); with noun §8.1 comparatives §31.1, §31.6; tâ Adverbs §12; in -âne §68; in the ezâfe Appendix A; with ezâfe §14.3 §14.4 Consonants, p. xiv Agar, ellipsis of §61.3 Coordination §11 -ak (diminutive suffix) §77 Copulas. See Verbs. Counting words §38.1  $-\hat{a}m > -um$  (colloquial phonological change) §92.2  $-\hat{a}n > -un$  (colloquial phonological -d-, euphonic §79 change) §92.1 Dâshtan §27, §61.2 -ân (manner participle) §65.3 Dative usages §82 -ân (plural suffix) §32.1 Days of the week, Appendix B -ande (agent participle) §65.1 Diminutives §77 -andegi (abstraction of agent participle) §66  $\hat{e}$  (archaic vowel) §78 -e. See ezâfe. -âne (manner suffix) §68 Animals, p. 176 Ellipsis of agar §61.3, of parallel -ât (plural suffix) §32.2 verbs §33 Enclitics,  $-\hat{a}$  §81; -i §4, §5; indefinite be(d)- (preposition) §79 §4.2; relative -ke §40; emphasizing be-imperative prefix §45; subjunctive -ke §98; nonspecific -i §4; -o §11; marker §48; perfective aspect markpronominal §36, §99; -râ §25, §82, er §84 **§97** bi- (prefix) §67 -esh (verbal noun formative) §73 Body, parts of, p. 169 Ezâfe, noun-adjective §14; possessive Budan, archaic present §88 §21; with geographical names

§21.3(c)

Che §30

§21.3(b); with proper names

#### **INDEX**

Family relationships, p. 95 Foodstuffs, p. 102

-(g)âne (manner suffix) \$68 -gar (agent suffix) \$65.4 Gender \$3 -(g)i (abstracting suffix) \$66 Glides, p. xiii, \$78

-hâ (plural suffix) §7, §32 Hami §86 Hamze, p. xxx(5)

-i: abstracting suffix §66; nonspecific enclitic §4.2, §5; relative antecedent marker §40; classical past habitual suffix §87

Idioms: "as... as" §66; "as...as possible" §70; "the more... the more" §69; "scarcely" §41.1(c); "to dislike" §50.1; "to get sleepy" §50.3; "to have a good time" §50.2; "to like" §50.1

Impersonals §50, §52, §58
-in (plural suffix) §32.3
Infinitives. See Verbs.
Interrogative sentences §13
Interrogatives with mágar §69

-jât (plural suffix) §32

-kâr §67Ke, relative §40; emphasizing §98; temporal §57Kist §19Kodâm §30

Ma- (negative imperative prefix) §80
Mágar §69
Materials, p. 142
mí- (progressive prefix) §27, §35
Mishaps, p. 153
Months of the year, Appendix B
Moods. See Verbs, indicative, infinitive, imperative, irrealis, subjunctive

ná- (negative prefix) §45
nâ- (negative prefix) §74
Nouns, abstraction of §66; agent §65; compounds §67; diminutive §77; nonspecific plural §8; nonspecific, as direct objects §25(f); plurals §32; predicate §15; specific plural §7; state §4; vocative §20, §81; with numbers §38.1
Numbers, cardinal §38; ordinal §39
Numerical expressions §44

ô (archaic vowel) §78
 -om(in) (ordinal suffix) §39
 Order, adjectival §6; word §1, p. 38 note 2

Participial absolute §53
Participles, past §28; other §65
Plural suffixes §7, §32
Possession §21; pronominal §33, §36
Prefixes: bé- §48, §84; bi- §67; hami§86; má- §80; mí- §27, §35; ná- §45
Prepositions §21.3(a), §96; tâ Appendix A; colloquial §100; with comparatives §31.1; as classical postposition §83

Pronouns, -d- with \$79; demonstrative \$9; demonstrative as direct objects \$25(b); enclitic \$36, \$82, \$99; independent \$16; personal, as direct objects \$25(b); possessive \$33; reflexive \$25(e), \$37; relative, non-restrictive \$40.3; relative, restrictive \$40; with verbs \$24

Proper names as direct objects §25(a)

 -râ specific direct-object marker §25; dative/oblique marker §82
 Relative clauses §40
 Reported speech §54
 Resumptive sentences §46

Sense perception, verbs of §54 State, absolute §4.1; nonspecific §4.2

Stress, word p. xvii; sentence §2 Suffix, nonspecific plural §8; specific plural §7

Suffixes: -â §65.2; -ak §77; -ân §32.1, §65.3; -ande §65.1; -âne §68; -ât §32.2; -che §77; -chi §65.4(2); -esh §73; -gar §65.4; -jât §32; -hâ §7, §32; -i §66; -in §32.3; -kâr §67; -om §39; plural §32; -tar §31; -un §32.3 Syllabification, p. xvi

Tanvin, p. xxix(4)
-tar (comparative suffix) §31
-tarin (superlative suffix) §31
Tashdid, p. xxx(6)
Te-tammat (5), p. xxix(3)
Time, Appendix B; counting §38.1; temporal duration §63
Topic-comment sentences §46
Travel vocabulary, p. 161

-un (plural suffix) §32.3

Verbs, agreement with plural subjects §10; budan, archaic present stem §88; classical negative imperative §80; colloquial inflections §94; colloquial present and past progressive §96; colloquial stems §95; compound §26, §47; conditional §61; continuous §27; continuous and progressive §96; copulas, archaic negative §89; copulas, colloquial §93; copulas, present §17, §93; factitive §72; future tense §43; gnomic past §91; habitual §27; imperative

w§45; impersonal §52; impersonal constructions §50; infinitival adjectives §74; infinitives §23; infinitives. back-formed §56; infinitives, denominative §56; infinitives, uses of §60; irrealis §61; long copulas §22: negative §24.2; negative copulas §18; optative §48; participles §65: passive §75; past absolute §24; past habitual §87; past perfect narrative §42; past stem §24; past subjunctive §55; perfective aspect §84; present indicative §34; present perfect §29: present perfect, archaic §90; present stem §34; present subjunctive §48; remote past absolute §41; reported speech and sense perception §54; specific direct objects §25; subjunctive, adjectival clauses §59; subjunctive, adverbial clauses §64; subjunctive, complementary §49; subjunctive, uses of §49, §51, §59, §64; verbal nouns §73

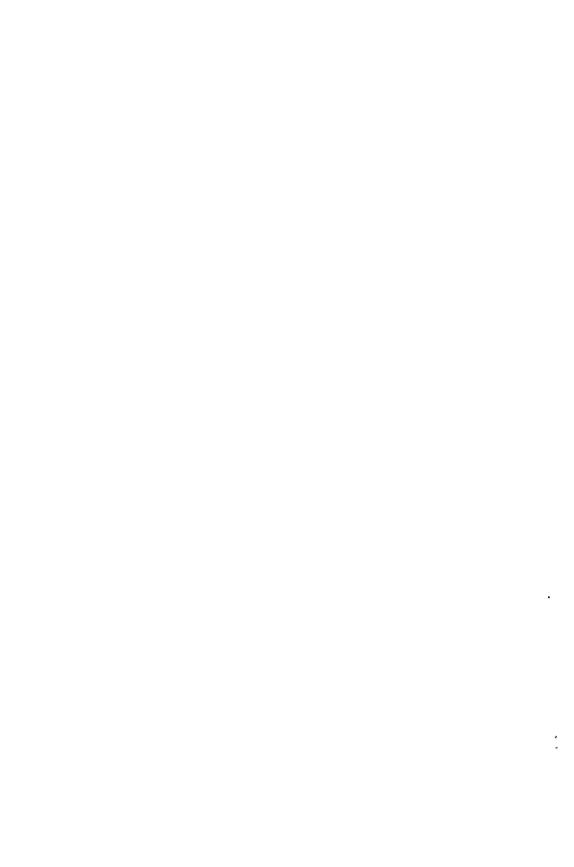
Vocative §20, §81

adjective) §65.2

Weights and measures, p. 81; as counting words §38.2

-y- §24.2(b), §45.1(c), §45.4, §65 -(y)â (vocative enclitic) §81; (verbal

- -(y)ân (plural suffix) §32.1; (manner participle) §65.3
- -(y)ande (agent participle) §65.1
- -(y)âne (manner suffix) §68
- -(y)esh (verbal noun formative) §73



# An Introduction to Persian 4th Revised Edition by W.M. Thackston

An Introduction to Persian is an introduction on the elementary level to the modern Persian language. Each lesson is provided with specific exercises and drills for the major grammatical and syntactical points introduced therein. The vocabulary included at the end of each lesson are intended for active acquisition. Specialized supplementary vocabulary lists are also scattered throughout the book. In part two the outstanding differences between modern and classical usage are given. In part three the distinguishing features of ordinary colloquial Persian are given.

This long-awaited text once more demonstrates ... Thackston's mastery over the Persian language and its intricacies, both in its modern and classical form. Thackston makes Persian grammar clear and understandable. His emphasis is on the spoken and written language in today's Iran, on the Persian which is taught in schools and spoken and understood by all the different ethnic groups in Iran.... This new edition is a major contribution for those involved in teaching the Persian language. It also makes the learning of Persian more accessible and enjoyable.

- Haleh Esfandiari, Princeton University. MESA Bulletin

Thackston's new edition—which it must be said is difficult to fault. It is both meticulous and systematic, without being idiosyncratic. ... a number of points that are a common source of error are well treated ... makes it the most useful for serious students of Persian as it is used outside Iran.

- Brian Spooner, University of Pennsylvania. AACAR Bulletin

... when compared with the very uneven and error-riddled courses otherwise available, this is probably the best for the serious student.

- John R. Perry, University Of Chicago. JAOS

When compared with Lambton's Persian Grammar, the only other important teaching grammar in print, Thackston's book meets current student needs more adequately.

- William Hanaway, University of Pennsylvania BRISMES Journal

Wheeler M. Thackston is Professor of Persian and other Near East Languages at Harvard University.

